

IF ONLY.....

Intro

PROLOGUE

.
. .

They say “ubuhle bendoda izinkomo zakhe” (a real man is judged by the size of his pockets) well I disagree cause I’ve seen women married to rich men living miserable lives I’ve seen slay queens dating rich guys who treated like them like shit and they stayed because of money so to me even if you work a 9 to 5 job and you can’t afford to buy me a Brazilian and Peruvian hair even if you can’t afford to take me to the most expensive restaurant or to Dubai or even Durban or Cape Town I’ll still love you..... as long as I don’t sleep hungry and you make me happy and try by all means to cater for me and you respect love and you are honest and faithful to me then I’ll treat you like a king.

So what im trying to say is there are still ladies out there who aren’t moved by material things and once you have her make sure you never lose her cause you’ll watch from a distance as another man makes her happy while you are married to a gold digger....remember glitter is not gold and the grass is not always green on the other side!

Anyway walk with me on this journey as I take you through the challenges a lady called Marang and her best friend Dineo face as they tackle life’s challenges and finding true love.

#IFONLY....

∞∞ INSERT 01 ∞∞

.
. .

You know some people wish they could just disappear from the face of earth cause everything just tends to get too much sometimes one mistake just one and then boom someone's life over...well her name is Marang Ndlovu and she's 22 years of age she was born and bread in a place called Ga-rankuwa (Pretoria) she's Sarah Ndlovu and the late Jonas Mokone 's daughter. Well speaking about her father Jonas the thing is he was married and had an affair with her mother and she's the product of that affair. Her being the product of an affair brought nothing but anguish in her life cause her "supposed " father never cared for her existence up until death visited him all he did was send maintenance money and never not even once visited her or asked to see her even for 5 minutes or let alone to call so he can talk to her well as for her mother she despises her and always reminds her that she's an abomination and she blames her for her unhappy life and suffering. She says if she wasn't conceived Jonas would still be alive and taking care of her but no she had to be born and now people label her as a whore and a home wrecker because of her.

It hurt her deeply to be labeled as a bastard and a daughter of a whore as if she asked to be born into all that mess but she always told herself that God has a great plan for her cause he wouldn't let her live even after her mother tried to

abort her . Anyway despite all the emotional abuse and anguish Marang get from her mother she made sure she goes to school and now she's doing her second year at TUT.....

Anyway now she's at some club in Midrand with her friend Dineo and its her first time there even though clubs taverns pubs and so on its not her cup of tea but she decided to tag along with Dineo just to clear her head. Three weeks ago she found out that her boyfriend Mazwi (now ex) slept with some girl on campus and that girl fell pregnant.

He said to her it was a mistake blah blah blah but you know what she didn't care about his stupid excuses cause she was broken and hurt this whole thing hit her so hard that she even attempted to commit suicide. She trusted him and gave him her love and her pride (virginity) and he just broke her just like that anyway enough about him and back to her going to a club with her crazy friend Dineo well her friend whispered to her that there's some handsome guy checking her out behind her and Marang turned to look only to be met by this handsome tall muscled dark man and she was immediately taken by his handsomeness. She quickly turned back when he smirked at her and her eyes popped out as she looked at Dineo who was amused by her reaction. She couldn't believe a guy as breath taking as he was was actually checking her out..... the guy was well build and just yummy even though he looked a bit older like on his mid or late 30s but she didn't care she just wanted to let

loose and have fun forgetting about her cheating ex-boyfriend mind you Mazwi was her first boyfriend and her virgin- breaker so she wasn't that experienced in the relationship and bedroom department. Anyway the guy kept on staring at her for some time until he decided to come to her then "boom" he whispered in her ear that he wanted her so bad and that they should go upstairs and have some fun. Even though Marang wanted to tell him to fuck off but something in her shut her up and she just found herself lusting over him and plus she was tipsy and his very deep voice whispering in her ear made her feel things down there. The truth is she has always been a good girl I mean she even lost her virginity in varsity but at that moment she just want to let loose and just have that guy fuck her brains out .

Even though she's never done this before she stood up and went with him to some office upstairs after she told her friend Dineo that she'll be back and Dineo said she should enjoy and forget about her troubles . They got in that office and as soon as they entered that office he just held her from behind and made her bend down and immediately she felt her short dress being pulled up and her thong being pushed to the side and she saw a condom wrapper falling the floor right then she knew she was gonna be fucked like a prostitute.

Before she could say anything the nikka slammed into her hard then he groaned out loud while Marang just gasped and closed her eyes as tears came out because it was painful as hell. The guy started moving in and out of her in a fast

pace while groaning out loud to the pleasure he was feeling both his hands tightened around her waist and he went in and out of her faster deeper and harder. He has never fucked any woman so tight and warm and that drove him to the edge that it made him not last longer than usual after sometime he slammed into her hard and he shot his juices inside that condom then he let out a loud groan and he pulled out then Marang stood up straight wiping her tears off and the mystery guy frowned while looking at her.

“this was consensual girly so don't go around crying rape”

He said that to her taking off the condom and wrapping it with a tissue and Marang was pulling her dress down

“ I know it was consensual ok its just you were rough and im not used to that”

She said that not even looking at him and she picked up her bag and attempted to limp her way out then the guy stopped her.

“wait “

He said that and Marang stopped and turned to look at him with tears in her eyes.

“Take it... it's for your services”

He said that holding a roll of money on his hand and Marang just frowned and fought off the tears that were trying to

come out.

“Im not a prostitute ok so keep your stupid money nx”

She clicked her tongue and limped her way out with a huge lump on her throat and she walked downstairs to look for her friend she found her and whispered to her that she wants to go home.

“ what happened she found her and whispered to her that she wants to go home.

“ what happened so how was it?”

She asked and Marang just looked away fighting off the tears.

“ Marang what happened...did that guy force himself on you?
“

She asked frowning and Marang continued to fight her tears back and she swallowed.

“ umm no....it was just different.... I wanna leave now Dineo that guy was just huge and im sore down there”

Dineo laughed and Marang just faked a smile.

“shame don't worry you'll heal....gape go nale di nkalakatha (there are gifted guys) out there and it looks like you just met one but its ok let's go”

They left the club and went home well Dineo just dropped her off and went back to the club. as for Marang she just threw herself on her bed and cried her eyes out.....she felt cheap she didn't even know the guy or his name and she just slept like him just like that.

The following morning it was a Sunday she woke up with a pounding headache from all the crying and she did her hygiene process and made something to eat then she drank some pain medication and she went back to bed her nana was still sore and it stung a bit whenever she peed....she regretted sleeping with that man so much that she wishes she could just turn back the hands of time. Anyway she woke to her phone ringing and it was her friend Dineo so she answered***

“Dee”

She said with a sleepy voice.

“wait why are you sleeping at this time...are you ok?”

Dineo asked with a concerned tone cause she knows Marang hardly sleeps during the day unless she's ill.

“yeah I just have a headache fela but I'll be alright....where are you khante?”

Dineo giggled.

“Yho babe I swear I’ve never been fuck like I was fucked last night before the guy knows his stuff shem and even now I can’t feel my pussy....yho hai shem ngwana batho is good in bed its true when they say the more matured the steak is the good it tastes cause yeer abuti o o monate (this brother is good) gape his dick game is on point and I think im in love with his dick shem”

Marang faked a giggled cause her own experience was horrible and it made her feel cheap.

“so you still at his house?”

“mmmmh he said he’ll drive me back home later on and his house babe damn....i think he’s loaded too”

She said sounding excited.

“just be careful babe you never know with these rich guys”

Marang said sounding worried.

“don’t worry I got this”

“ok so what’s his name and where does he stay for safety reasons”

Dineo laughed.

“yuh I forgot how you can be anyway his name ke Richard

Morapedi and he stays mo Centurion”

“ok then babe enjoy but not too much and don’t forget to use a rubber”

Marang said getting out of bed and Dineo laughed.

“yes Ma”

They both laughed.

“mxm wa phapha (you are too forward)...shap”
Marang said and Dineo continued to laugh.

“shap”

They ended the call and her phone rang again and she didn’t recognize the number but she answered anyway.

“hello”

She said with her sweet voice and the caller sighed.

“baby please don’t hang up”

“Mazwi?”

She asked with a disgusted look on her face.

“yeah...I miss you Marang I miss you so damn much please forgive me my love”

He begged her he sounded drunk.

“kgopela o satlo tlhapelwa mo nna wankutlwa (please go get drunk somewhere else) call your baby mama and leave me the hell alone”

She said getting angry.

“I love you Marang and not her”

“hei hei hei....dont piss me off wena didn't you love me when you fucked her where was your love for me when you decided to cheat on me....did you even think about me Mazwi?”

She said with a breaking voice.

“Marang come on first of all you are inexperienced in bed and you refuse to give a simple head...a simple head nje you don't even want me to muff you so what did you want me to do fuck you missionary style only cause even with doggy style you complain that it makes you feel uncomfortable and that it makes you feel like a slut “

She swallowed hard and tears ran down her cheeks.

“ look I love you Marang but no man can stay faithful to a woman who's boring in bed that's why I went out there but that doesn't mean I don't love you babe”

She sniffed feeling more heart broken by his words.

“ well I guess you didn't deserve to fuck me ka bo doggy style cause the guy that fucked me last night ka yona doggy style eo he fucked me good and I enjoyed it ”

She lied about the enjoying part.

“i was busy screaming out his name as he made me squirm and cum nx”

She continued talking trying to hurt him too.

“ what did you just say?...you did what....you....you cheated on me Marang!”

He said with an angry tone sounding sober now.

“ motho weeh we broke up I dumped your ass remember so whomever I sleep with from now on is none of your business nx”

She dropped the call and sat down crying cause his words about how she sucks in bed hurt her deep....Anyway after sometime she got up and went to prepare something to eat when out of the blue she heard a loud bang on the door.

“MARANG OPEN THIS FUCKEN DOOR I KNOW YOU ARE IN HERE...OPEN THIS FUCKEN DOOR NOW!”

She jumped in fear cause he sounded angry and he was busy

banging on the door hard.

“HOW DARE YOU CHEAT ON ME HOW DARE YOU FUCKEN GIVE ANOTHER NIGGA MY PUSSY? YOU ARE MINE MARANG AND I WANT HIS FUCKEN NAME...YOU ARE MINE AND I’LL SHOW YOU WHAT I DO TO SLUTS THAT DOUBLE CROSS ME NX”

She quickly called Dineo shaking cause Mazwi sounded deadly now....she now regretted saying all that to him she was scared no lies.

“ngwana papa”

They also call each other that cause both their fathers were absent in their lives and they are also dead.

“Mazwi is here Dineo and he’s busy banging on the door sounding angry he called earlier and out of anger I boosted to him about what I did last night and now he’s here”

She said with a shaky voice.

“shit ok bona under no circumstances should you open that door wankutlwa (you hear me)....im on my way....don’t open for him Marang”

“ok I wont... please hurry im scared Dineo I don’t wanna end up like VIWE DALINGOZI KARABO MOKOENA and many other women killed by their boyfriends or exes please”

She said crying.

“ im coming babe wena don’t open for him and you’ll be safe”

Dineo said panicking.

“ok”

They ended the call and Marang pushed the couch to the door to block it and the banging stopped.

“ IM NOT GOING ANYWHERE UNTIL YOU OPEN THIS FUCKEN DOOR MARANG UYANGIZWA (you hear me) UZONYA TODAY.....YOU FUCKEN CHEAT ON ME...ME MAZWI....UNGIJWAELA AMASIMBA NX”

She just sat down and cried.

#IFONLY....

INSERT.....02

.
. .

Dineo quickly got out of bed and she wore her clothes and grabbed her handbag and ran downstairs with her heart beating fast and she found Richard and his friend in the living room chatting away while drinking whiskey and ooh the “friend” is none other than the guy Marang had a one night

stand with at the club.

Dineo: im...im sorry to disturb but I need to leave Richard
She said with a breaking voice and Richard got up and rushed to her.

Richard: babe what's wrong

He asked with a concerned tone.

Dineo: my...my sister is in danger her ex is at her place and he's angry and stuff and she said he's busy banging on the door threatening her....i have to go

She said all that with tears running down her cheeks she was scared for Marang cause she knows how crazy Mazwi can get.....well she attempted to walk past him but he grabbed her arm.

Richard: I'll drive you lets go

Dineo: thank you

She rushed to the door and Richard grabbed his car keys.

Richard: you coming man

Friend: ummm no....i'll see you later

Richard: dude come on....from there we will go past the club and deal with that issue

The friend huffed and got up.

Friend: I'll follow you

Richard rushed out and so did his friend and they found Dineo waiting by Richards car.....The drive seemed long for Dineo as she kept on silently praying that Mazwi doesn't manage to enter their flat or that Marang doesn't open for him.....after what felt like forever they arrived and Marang quickly got out and she saw Mazwi sitting on his car bonnet smoking he looked angry and when he spotted Dineo he hopped off and rushed to her.

Mazwi: it's you isn't it it's you who taught Marang ubufebe

angithi (to whore around)

He said pointing at her and she moved back a bit and Richard pushed her behind him.

Richard: Mazwi?...heh san enklek wetsang (boy what do you think you are doing)

Mazwi: stay out of it man this is between me and this bitch....she teaching my girl ubufebe (to whore around)

Dineo: don't bore me Mazwi wankutlwa (you hear me)....Marang broke up with you and it's been three weeks!

Mazwi: voetsek sfebe (piss off bitch)...voetsek....Marang and I will never be over and what she did it's all your fault Marang is a good girl

Dineo: fuck you Mazwi....i see bofebe ba gao bo fetelletse ko tlhogong (your whoring ways has affected your brain)

The friend saw a commotion and he got out of the car and he saw Mazwi and Richard looking angry then he rushed to them.

Mazwi: what did you just say?

He said talking a step closer.

Richard: Mazwi stand down or I'll fucken make you!

He said with an angry tone.

Friend: Mazwi wenzani?(what are you doing Mazwi)

Mazwi looked at his uncle while breathing heavily.

Mazwi: stay out this uncle it doesn't concern you

Richard: Cole talk to this boy before I knock his teeth off

He said looking angry and Cole walked closer to Mazwi

Cole: ngithe wenzani? (I said what are you doing)

Mazwi swallowed hard and he took a step back he knows how his uncle Cole is....he's ruthless and doesn't take shit

Mazwi: she....she turned my girl into a whore....i hate this bitch she's the reason Marang is behaving the way she is not

Dineo laughed.

Cole: which girl?...aren't you married Mazwi.....didn't you send us to go pay lobola for the girl you impregnated?

Dineo: married....wow

She clapped her hands once and she laughed and Mazwi's face fell and he looked down.

Cole: you are here busy embarrassing yourself and ruining the family name for some girl while your wife is back home pregnant....yini ngawe Mazwi uyahlanya? (whats wrong with you Mazwi are you crazy)

He said looking angry and Mazwi took a step back cause he knows how his uncle is.

Mazwi: uncle i....

Cole interrupted him.

Cole: voetsek....now get in your car and fuck off from here or I'll fucken make you

He said taking a step closer to him and Mazwi moved back a bit again.

Cole: NOW!

Mazwi: you are not the boss of me Cole you are not my father so you won't tell me what to do

He didn't see it coming you are not my father so you won't tell me what to do

He didn't see it coming Cole punched him on his throat and Mazwi fell on the ground holding his throat struggling to breathe then Cole grabbed him by his arm roughly and he dragged him to his car and he roughly pushed him in and he also got in and drove away leaving people around including Dineo shocked.

Richard: babe let me go after them just to make sure he doesn't do worse than what he just did

Dineo: ummm sure I'll...I'll see you around

Richard chuckled looking at her.

Richard: and this wasn't a one night stand Dee....we will talk later

He kissed her forehead and he got in his car and drove away and Dineo sighed then she rushed inside the building.

Dineo: Marang open up its me....he's gone open up

Marang quickly got up and she moved the couch from the door and she opened the door and Dineo quickly hugged her and she just cried....after some time she calmed down and they closed the door and sat down.

Dineo: im glad you didn't open

Marang: the way I was scared Dineo yho I even thought he would kick the door open

Dineo sighed.

Dineo: can you believe he says im the one who taught you bofebe

Marang's eyes popped out.

Marang: im sure you told him shit nx....i only slept with one guy after we broke up and automatically ke sefebe wow (im a bitch wow)

Dineo: mxm and can you believe he even went to pay lobola for that bitch he impregnated

Marang: wh...what?

She said with her eyes popped out.

Dineo: mmmh.....askies chomi I know you still love him
Tears ran down her cheeks and Dineo comforted her.

Dineo: its ok chomi he's not worth your tears

Marang: I loved him Dineo....i still love him....i also gave him my all and he...he

She sobbed painfully.

Dineo: shhh its ok I know Marang I was here all along
remember....so I know how much you love him
She said brushing her back gently then Dineo sighed.
Dineo: there's something else you should know
Marang wiped her tears off and she looked at her.
Dineo: remember the guy you made out with at the club
Marang sighed and she looked down....how could she forget
him after he ripped her nana apart like that then he tossed
her with some cash like she's some prostitute.
Marang: ye..eah
Dineo: well apparently he's Mazwi's uncle
Marang got up with her eyes popped out.
Marang: o maaka (you are lying)
Dineo: im not....he's also Richard's best friend
Marang: ooh God.... ooh God
She said with her hands on top of her head.
Dineo: don't worry Mara im sure Cole wont say anything
cause im sure he knows how crazy his nephew is so relax
Marang swallowed hard and she sat down.
Dineo: and plus you didn't know gape you and Mazwi are
over so you dont have to feel like you cheated on him with
his uncle
Marang sighed.
Marang: you're right but already Mazwi is calling me a bitch
for sleeping with someone else imagine if he finds out that
that guy is his uncle
Dineo: he wont and why are you concerned about Mazwi's
reaction Marang....that dickhead cheated on you then he got
his whore pregnant then he also paid lobola for her
Marang sighed looking down.
Dineo: bona mo (look here)....fuck Mazwi....fuck his bitch....

and fuck his dick too and wena stop with this uMazwi uzothini syndrome (what will Mazwi say syndrome) you have going on and live your life

Marang sighed.

Dineo: wankutlwa ankere (I hope im making myself clear)

Marang: yeah...its just I still love him Dineo

Dineo: and its ok but that doesn't mean you should settle for less or be his doormat....Mazwi ke sefebe (is a manwhore)

Marang and you'll end up getting boHIV and other STDs o ntse stel (while you're sitting here being a good girlfriend)....have you forgotten gore you practically have no one so instead of living life for yourself o busy o kgotlella masepa a Mazwi (you're busy taking shit from Mazwi) for what mmmh.... we promised each other to study hard and get our degrees and to make it in life so we can show our parents gore they are not God and that they can go fuck themselves for all we care

Marang swallowed hard.

Dineo: sometimes love is not enough Marang....you love your mother even though she treats you like shit but you can't stay with her under the same roof and you can't take her ill treatment anymore but o batla go kgotlella masepa a Mazwi o pallwa ke go kgotlella a mmagao(you want to take in Mazwi's shit while you can't even take in your own mother's shit)....come on girl

Marang: I hear you Dineo

Dineo: good now don't worry as time goes on that love you have for him will fade away for now take it one step at a time..... who knows maybe your soulmate wants to ask you out but just because of lerete le bareng ke Mazwi (that dickhead called Mazwi) he has decided not to....tlogela go

jikisa your blessings mo tseleng because of bo Mazwi (stop turning your blessing away because of Mazwi) Marang eish

Marang: I guess he was a lesson in life to never give a man your all and to also leave room for disappointments

Dineo: good girl....and remember it's better to suffer now than later in life so soldier on and never bow down to anyone except for God and a good dick and know your worth

Marang

They both laughed.

Marang: thanks ngwanapapa...I love you

Dineo smiled and they hugged tight.

Dineo: I love you too boo

.
. .

****AT ZAKHELE AND VUYISWA ZULU'S RESIDENCE****

Cole got out of the car and he went to open the door for Mazwi and he dragged him out and he went to the main door and he knocked on the door then Mazwi's mother opened the door and she frowned looking from Cole to Mazwi then Cole pushed Mazwi to his mother.

Cole: im sick and tired of always cleaning up after this useless boy Vuyiswa!

He said with a pissed off tone.

Vuyiswa: what happened?

Cole: didn't he send us to pay ilobolo for that pregnant girl and now he's busy chasing after another girl and threatening her

Vuyiswa: what

She said looking at Mazwi who looked away

Cole: uthi nywat? (you are saying what) you and Zakhele have spoiled this boy and made him believe that he can get whatever he wants buka manje (look now)what if that girl called the cops on him... Zakhele's company is trying to get back to where it was because of that scandal of Mazwi being accused of murder and now this....this thing is ungrateful and im sick and tired of cleaning up after him

Mazwi swallowed hard cause his father's company is under a lot of strain because of his bad choices and now this.

Vuyiswa: Qophelo (Cole) will you calm down and come in so you can explain what's going on

Cole: nx nonsense....

He turned and walked to his car leaving them there...he got inside his car and drove out and Vuyiswa sighed. She closed the door and Mazwi went to the lounge and he sat down and he held his throat while he cleared his throat every now and then it was painful as hell.

Vuyiswa: is what Qophelo said true

She said sitting next to Mazwi.

Mazwi: yeah....i love her and there's nothing you or anyone can do about it

He said with no care whatsoever and his mother chuckled while shaking her head.

Vuyiswa: utheni? (what did you say)

Mazwi: you heard me mom.....look I don't love Buyi I love Marang ok

Vuyiswa: uphambene Mazwi?....uBuyi ukhulelwe umntwana wakho (are you crazy Mazwi....Buyi is pregnant with your child)

She said with a frown on her face.

Mazwi: so?....look mom I paid ilobolo for Buyi because of my

child cause she threatened to abort if I don't....she said she won't have a child out of wedlock so I had to do what I did to save my unborn child..... but my heart beats for Marang and only her

His mother laughed bitterly and she clapped her hands once not believing what she was hearing.

Vuyiswa: ndiqinisekile ukuba le ntombazana uMarang ingumlumbi....ndiqinisekile ukuba wakondla isondlo sothando (im sure this Marang girl is a witch...im sure she fed you a love potion)....Buyi is a good girl Mazwi and she loves you....

Mazwi: well I don't love her

His mother got up.

Vuyiswa: well tough cause uya kfundu ukumthanda (you'll learn to love her)....i wont let you toy with that girl's feelings like that she's pregnant for you and she's practically your wife now so the sooner you learn to love her the better for you!

Mazwi got up.

Mazwi: the sooner she learns to accept that my heart belongs to Marang the better for her

A hard slap landed on his cheek and he looked at his mother with his eyes popped out....as for Vuyiswa her hands started shaking as she couldn't believe she just slapped her only son.

Mazwi: wow my own mother slapped me because of a girl that trapped me with a baby.... heh wonders shall never end He then chuckled shaking his head and he walked away.

Vuyiswa: baby im sorry i....

He stopped walking and he turned and looked at her.

Mazwi: save it....first my uncle punched me on my throat and now my own mother slapped me....now i wonder what your husband will do but I never thought you of all people will lay

a hand on me

He then climbed the stairs and he went upstairs busy rubbing his cheek.

Mazwi: damn that hurt

Down stairs Vuyiswa sat down with tears running down her cheeks as she sobbed....she couldn't believe she slapped her own son like that.

.
. .

THREE DAYS LATER

Marang was taking a walk to a nearby mall she was going there to buy hers and Dineo's toiletries when a car parked next to her and Mazwi quickly got out.... her heart nearly stopped beating and she moved back a bit slowly with fear all over her face.

Mazwi: get in the car

He said with a serious tone and she shook her head repeatedly.

Mazwi: I SAID GET IN THE FUCKEN CAR MARANG!

Marang: please Mazwi leave me alone

Well her subconscious mind told her to run but her body felt stiff and frozen with fear.

Mazwi: o batla go bona Marang (what do you wanna see Marang)...o batla go nnyela (you wanna shit yourself).... I said get in the car manje (now)

She shook her head with her body shaking with fear then he roughly grabbed her and shoved her inside the car with her crying then he got in and started the car and he drove away....she kept on crying and it was making him angry by

the minute.

Mazwi: voetsek shut the hell up! nx did you cry when another man was busy fucking you....where you?

He said slapping her thigh hard and she flinched feeling pain and she continued to cry.

Mazwi: ngithe thula man! (I said shut up man) before I stop this car here and give you a beating of your life nx
She stopped making noise and she just sobbed quietly.

Mazwi: nx

Then he continued to drive looking angry.

Marang: where...where are you talking me Mazwi?

She asked him with a shaking voice.

Mazwi: voetsek! Did I say talk?

She just kept quiet and continued to sob quietly until she realized that he was taking a gravel road that led inside a thick bush and she started shaking.

Marang: Mazwi please...please don't do this

He slapped her with the back of his hand on her face and she cried covering her face.

Mazwi: who the fuck is he?

She just cried and he slapped her thigh hard.

Mazwi: you sleep around now Mara mmmmh?...you're a fucken whore now mmmmh

Marang: Mazwi please

Mazwi: well im gonna beat the whorenness out of you nx

She continued to cry with her body shaking then the car stopped and Mazwi got out of the car and Marang quickly got out of the car too and started running but then Mazwi got his gun out and shot in the sky and she stopped running with her hands held up.

Mazwi: get back here before another bullet ends at the back

of your head

She stood there shaking and pee ran down her legs.

INSERT..... 03

.
. .
. .

NARRATED

Mazwi: I said come back here!

She turned with her body shaking and tears all over her face and she walked to him slowly and when she got to him he slapped her hard on her cheek and she covered her face crying.

Mazwi: who the fuck is he!

She just cried and he pulled her hands from her face and slapped her again.

Mazwi: give me his name now!

She just cried.

Marang: Mazwi please im sorry....im sorry

He slapped her again.

Mazwi: his name Marang now!

Marang: i....the....please Mazwi

He slapped her over and over again and he let her go and she fell on the ground crying with a bleeding nose and lip.

Mazwi: why are you protecting him mmmmh...why don't you tell me his name or what you are in love with him is that

it...you in love with him!

He said getting angrier.

Marang: I....i lied...I didn't sleep with anyone i... I just wanted to hurt you im sorry Mazwi

She lied to him but he was too angry to even try to believe her just the thought of another man fucking her just made him lose his mind.

Mazwi: im gonna ask you for the fucken last time what is his name!

He said and started pacing up and down and she just cried and he kicked her on her back and she screamed then he grabbed her by her arm roughly and he pulled her up.

Mazwi: look at me

She did with her face covered in tears dirt and blood.

Mazwi: who is he?

Marang: i...I lied Mazwi please

Mazwi: look me in the eye and tell me the truth

Well she knows she's bad at lying and he would tell if she was lying so looking at him in the eyes and lying wasn't an option.

Mazwi: I SAID LOOK ME IN THE EYE AND TELL ME THE TRUTH!

He shouted at her and she jumped a bit and she looked away crying.

Mazwi: you can't can you we both know you're bad at lying
Then he chuckled.

Mazwi: you fucken bitch...who the fuck is he

Marang: Mazwi please

He slapped her hard across her face fuming with anger then he dragged her to the car and he pushed her to the car bonnet and he roughly turned her to face the windscreen with her crying and he grabbed her with her hair pulling her

head backwards.

Mazwi: did you scream or moan out loud when he was fucking you

She didn't say anything she just cried and he grabbed her neck.

Mazwi: I SAID DID YOU SCREAM OR MOAN!

She shook her head crying then he let her go and he bends her over roughly and ripped the back of her dress.

Marang: Mazwi please don't do this please...im sorry...please im sorry

He banged her head with the bonnet.

Mazwi: shut up!....uyisfebe wena manje angithi? (you are a bitch now right?) then me fucking you like the slut you are wont be a problem

She cried trying to fight him off and he banged her head again on the bonnet.

Mazwi: sit still!

Marang: Mazwi please....

Cole was busy with paper work in his office when he received a call.

Cole: talk to me

Caller: boss your nephew's car drove to some secluded area which looks like the woods

Cole: nx this boy is gonna give me grey hair I swear.....look just send me his location

Caller: ok

Then they ended the call and Cole took his business phone and called Mazwi but it rang unanswered three times....he

clicked his tongue and got up from his chair and a message came through then he took his car keys and phones and he walked out.....Once he joined the main road he dialed Richard.

Richie: buddy

Cole: eeh ndoda call your girl and ask her where her friend is

Richie: why...what's going on

Cole: I just have a feeling Mazwi has her that stupid boy just drove into the woods and he's not answering his stupid phone and we both know he's obsessed with that girl

Richie: eish ok let me ask her

They ended the call and seconds later Richards called him and he answered.

Richie: Dineo can't get ahold of her man

Cole: shit!

Richie: look im on my way

Cole: no you are not remember you have a meeting with those Chinese fools

Richie: shit...ok

Cole: don't worry I'll handle this

Richie: cool keep me posted

Cole: sure

Then they ended the call and Cole increased the speed hoping to get there in time cause he had a bad feeling with this whole "him driving into the woods" thing.

Mazwi was busy shoving his thing in and out of her roughly with Marang crying the pain she was feeling was indescribable...she was begging him to stop but he was

hearing none of it.

Marang: Mazwi please stop....please stop!

She begged him and he held her by her hair tight and he banged her head on the car bonnet.

Mazwi: Shut up! Shut the hell up!

He continued to force himself on her roughly with Marang crying until she couldn't take it anymore and she passed out....He went in and out of her roughly a couple of times until he realized that she wasn't crying or trying to fight him off anymore and her body felt lose like she had passed out or something then he stopped and he pulled out then he saw that his dick was covered in blood and she slid down and fell on the ground then he saw that she was covered in blood between her legs.

Mazwi: shit...Shit....Shit!

He pulled his jeans and boxers up and he went to her and he shook her.

Mazwi: Marang...Marang...baby?

She didn't move and he felt her pulse and it was there but weak then he sat on his butt looking at her with his eyes popped out.

Mazwi: shit...what have I done?...what have I done?

He said over and over then he got up and paced around panicking....then he stopped and he looked at her again and he swallowed hard.

Mazwi: it's your fault Marang you made me do this....you shouldn't have cheated....you shouldn't have!

Then he went to the car and went back to her holding a bottle full of petrol and a lighter and he put them down and sat down on the ground and he buried his head between his thighs.

Mazwi: look what you're making me do...i don't wanna do it but...but what if I take you to the hospital and you tell on me so....so it's better I let you....ooh fuck

He cried.

Mazwi: if I let you live my uncle will kill me this time and my dad will probably disown me....im sorry but....but I have to
He continued to cry until he calmed down and he sat in that position for some time until he heard a car driving towards them and his heart started beating fast and he got up....the sound was getting closer and closer so he knew burning her alive now wasn't an option anymore so he rushed to his car and he got in and started it and drove away quickly you made me do this....you shouldn't have cheated....you shouldn't have!

Then he went to the car and went back to her holding a bottle full of petrol and a lighter and he put them down and sat down on the ground and he buried his head between his thighs.

Mazwi: look what you're making me do...i don't wanna do it but...but what if I take you to the hospital and you tell on me so....so it's better I let you....ooh fuck

He cried.

Mazwi: if I let you live my uncle will kill me this time and my dad will probably disown me....im sorry but....but I have to
He continued to cry until he calmed down and he sat in that position for some time until he heard a car driving towards them and his heart started beating fast and he got up....the sound was getting closer and closer so he knew burning her alive now wasn't an option anymore so he rushed to his car and he got in and started it and drove away quickly he looked on his side mirror and it was his uncle's car right then he

knew he was screwed.

Cole saw Mazwi's car driving away deeper into the woods in high speed and he clicked his tongue and he parked the car got out and he rushed to Marang when he got closer to her he stopped and swallowed hard when he saw the state she's in.

Cole: fuck man Mazwi.....fuck!

He said rubbing his head roughly then he crouched next to her and he felt her pulse and it was there but it was weak.

Cole: shit!

He rushed to his car and opened the backseat door and he went to pick her up and he put her on the backseat and he went to the scene and he picked the bottle and the lighter and he poured it on Marang's bloodied underwear and some of the ripped cloths from her dress that are on the ground and he burned them and he went with the bottle and lighter to his car and got in and turned the car around and he drove out of the woods....on his way to the hospital he dialed his brother.

Zakhele: Qophelo

Cole: your...your son just raped that girl he was harassing the other day and he was just about to burn her alive when I got there

He said with a pained tone.

Zakhele: WHAT?

Cole: you know how I feel about rapists so im done cleaning up after him Zakhele im fucken done and if this girl makes it and she decides to lay charges against him just know that I'll

help her and even testify against him
He said with an angry voice this time.

Zakhele: wait Qophe.....

Tuu tuu tuu.....Cole dropped the call and he called Richard immediately.

Richie: you found her?

Cole: he raped her and im rushing her to the hospital

Richie: no no no...fuck no!

Cole: her pulse is weak so let's hope she makes it

Richie: shit...ok ummm let me call Dineo she has been calling me none stop since I called asking about Marang's whereabouts

Cole: ok shap

Richie: wait....are you good?

Cole swallowed hard and he glanced at a passed out Marang on the backseat.

Cole: I don't know

Richie: shit...ummm let me attend the Chinese then I'll come to you

Cole: shap

They ended the call and Cole glanced over at Marang through the rearview mirror.

Cole: hold on ntokazi im almost there

He said with a low voice and he hit the accelerator hard driving to the nearest private hospital.

HOURS LATER

Marang opened her eyes and the light became too much for

her eyes so she closed her eyes again and this time she opened them slowly and she blinked fast a couple times until her vision became clear and she ran her eyes around and she could see that she was in a hospital with a beeping sound from the hospital monitors filling the room....then that horrific scene with Mazwi flashed through her mind and she started hyperventilating and the machines started beeping fast and nurses rushed in and sedated her.

THE FOLLOWING DAY IN COLE'S OFFICE.

Richie: this boy is a piece of shit and he deserves a bullet in the head nx

He clicked his tongue and he gulped down his whiskey and he clenched his jaws as it burned his throat going down.

Richie: have they found him?

Cole shook his head and he continued to take sips of his own drink.

Cole: he exchanged his car with his friend's and also left his phone

Richie: what did the stupid friend say?

Cole: that he asked they exchange cars and he gave him some money as a thank you and left....and the worst part is the stupid friend's car doesn't have a tracker

Richie: I knew something like this would happen Dineo told me how obsessed he is with that Marang girl I mean he went crazy when he found out that she fucked someone else they broke up and he went crazy as if she cheated on him and on top of it he paid lobola for that girl he impregnated nx

Cole: you know I still can't believe that he did that

Richie: he's a spoiled brat who thinks he can get anything he wants and do anything he wishes to do without facing consequences

Cole: you know I warned Zakhele about spoiling him but he said "he's my only son blah blah blah" nx

Richie: and as for that two timing bitch Vuyiswa nx

Cole: don't even start with her im sure she'll help him get out of the country...nx

Richie: now im not gonna get some because of this nx

Cole looked at him and he chuckled.

Cole: she wouldn't....

Richie: you clearly don't know how close those two are.... buddy for the last three days all I've been hearing is insults directed to Mazwi....i don't know how many times she said the next time she sees him uzomdubula amasende (she will shoot his balls)

Cole laughed.

Cole: damn your girl is crazy

He continued to laugh and Richard joined him.

Richie: but seeing her face when I told her what happened to Marang killed me inside man

Cole sighed.

Richie: eish her cries still ring in my head man

Cole: im done protecting that boy...this time around if that girl presses charges against him I'll give a statement against him.....i don't tolerate rape man I don't and that boy just scratched hard on a wound that is still healing even though Shirley died 5 years ago

Richie sighed.

LATER IN THE AFTERNOON

Marang opened her eyes and she scanned the room looking for Dineo and her eyes landed on Cole instead he was looking at her and she swallowed hard getting scared.

Cole: your friend went to get cleaned up and also get you toiletries

She didn't say anything.

Cole: did you tell him?

She shook her head no with tears now coming out.....well she woke up before now and she found Dineo who looked horrible by her side and they cried together until she started hyperventilating again and they sedated her again and now she woke up to find Mazwi's uncle staring at her.

Cole: why?

She didn't say anything.

Cole: you should've told him maybe he would've let you go and came after me

Marang: I would be dead by now if I did cause you are his uncle

She said with a breaking voice and he kept quiet a bit.

Cole: you should report him

She kept quiet.

Cole: and don't worry no one will threaten you to drop the charges

Marang: where is he?

She asked with a low tone without looking at him.

Cole: he ran away but don't worry I'll find him

Then he turned and walked to the door.

Marang: why?

He stopped and turned to look at her but she wasn't even looking at him.

Marang: he's...he's your blood so...so why aren't you the one threatening me to.... to keep quietabout....about what he did

Cole: cause I hate rapists

Then he walked out and she closed her eyes and tears ran down her cheeks she couldn't believe that Mazwi did that to her as if he didn't just break her heart by cheating and also getting the girl pregnant then she also found out that he even paid lobola for her and now this..... he just broken her beyond repair.

INSERT..... 04

.
. .

AT ZAKHELE AND COLE'S HOME

Cole: you called for me Lindiwe

He said to his mother getting comfortable on the comfy couch.

Lindiwe: your brother here and his wife tell me you want to help that girl

Cole chuckled shaking his head.

Lindiwe: this is no laughing matter Qophelo Mazwi is your blood... your nephew for Gods sake!

Cole: so?

He said with a frown on his face.

Vuyi: so?...uthi so Qophelo?(you are saying so Qophelo?)

Cole: yeah

Vuyi: you are evil wena....you want to send my only son to jail
u ngendawo wena (you are evil)

Cole laughed.

Zakhele: man please don't do this

Cole: wow...wow Zakhele.... wakhuluma so ingathi awunazo
l'ngane (you talk as if you don't have kids)

Zakhele swallowed hard and he looked down with his jaws
clenched cause he knew what he really meant by that.

Lindiwe: and you don't have any so that's why you want to
send his only son to jail angithi? (right?)

Cole clenched his jaws and he looked at Vuyiswa who looked
down ashamed.

Cole: yebo I don't have kids cause lesfebe sibulele ingani
yam! (this bitch killed my baby)

Zakhele: Qophelo! Don't call my wife names!

Cole: or what mmmmh or what?

Lindiwe: stop it you two and wena Qophelo she didn't want
to carry your seed now get over it!

Cole laughed bitterly and he got up.

Lindiwe: ucabanga unguthi uyaphi (where do you think you
are going) ...sit down im still talking to you!

Cole: im not your puppet Lindiwe you don't say jump and I
ask how high like Zakhele does so don't use that tone with
me and don't ever order me around like that!

He said with an angry and intimidating voice and they all kept
quiet.

Cole: now listen here I know you hid that useless boy but its
all good cause I know I'll find him one of these days and

secondly you all should be ashamed of yourselves for supporting a rapist while you Zakhele have daughters
Zakhele's eyes popped out and Vuyiswa frowned looking at Cole and their mother frowned too looking at Cole.

Lindiwe: what do you mean daughters?

Cole: now don't ever involve me with anything that has to do with that rapist of yours nx

He said ignoring his mother's question and he walked to the door.

Lindiwe: QOPHELO!

He ignored her and he walked out and Vuyiswa turned to look at Zakhele who had his jaws clenched.

Vuyi: he said your daughters

Zakhele: yeah so?

Vuyi: so Zakhele?

Zakhele: yeah...look here I have a meeting I need to get to so excuse me

He got up and Vuyiswa also got up and she grabbed his arm.

Vuyi: do you have a child out of this marriage Zakhele?

She asked him with an angry tone and Zakhele got off her grip.

Zakhele: don't ever use that tone with me uyangizwa (you hear me)

Vuyiswa laughed bitterly.

Lindiwe: Zakhele what is Qophelo talking about?...you only have one son and one daughter so which other daughter is he talking about

Zakhele: excuse me I have to go

He walked to the door and Vuyiswa went after him.

Vuyi: Zakhele don't walk away when we are talking to you!

He ignored her and went to his car.

Vuyi: ZAKHELE!

He got inside the car and he locked the doors and he started the ignition with Vuyiswa trying to open the driver's door shouting at him and he drove out of the yard dialing his brother's numbers.

Cole: did she ask for divorce?

Zakhele: fuck you Cole!

He said with an angry voice and Cole laughed.

Cole: no fuck you Zakhele....you are weak and it's sickening
nx

Zakhele: don't insult me Qophelo

Cole: me insult you....no.....dude you are insulting yourself by continuously choosing to be Lindiwe and Vuyiswa's puppet....you have no fucken backbone and you have failed Bahle and Badanile as a father

Zakhele kept quiet breathing heavily.

Cole: those kids are gonna grow up hating you cause they think you care more about Mazwi no Vuyelwa

Zakhele: that's not true

Cole: how long have they asked you to introduce them to their siblings and more especially to their grandmother huh

Zakhele: and I told them I will just not now

Cole: why not now?

Zakhele: first of all Cole you are not married so you won't understand

Cole chuckled.

Cole: firstly it was the child thing with your mother and guess what im more of a father to your twin daughters than you ever will and yes im not married but I know ukuthi uvumela umkakho akudonse ngekhala (that you are allowing your wife to control you)

Zakhele: that's not true

Cole: then tell her about Bahle and Badanile

Zakhele kept quiet and Cole chuckled.

Cole: you are a shitty person Zakhele and I feel sorry for Bahle and Badanile for having you as their father nx

Zakhele: ooh stop it Qophelo we both know all you care about is hurting Vuyiswa for choosing me instead of you and now you are using my kids to settle a score

Cole: fuck you Zakhele first of all I don't give a shit about that cold bitch you call a wife and I'd rather eat shit than have her as a girlfriend wife or even a side chick or a maid for that matter and even if I had the time to plot against Vuyiswa I would rather use that rapist Mazwi than Bahle and Badanile asshole

Then he dropped the call fuming with anger and Zakhele looked at his phone and he clicked his tongue then he dialed Bahle's numbers and not Badanile's because she knows Badanile takes after her late mother with a sharp tongue.

Bahle: dad

Zakhele: hey unjani? (how are you)

Bahle: ngiright wena? (Im alright and you)

Then he kept quiet a bit.

Zakhele: Bahle you know that I love both you and your sister right

Bahle: I guess

She said with a bored tone.

Zakhele: what's that supposed to mean?

Bahle: baba...bab'mkhulu Qophelo is the one that comes to our parents meeting Badanile's soccer matches and he never forgets our birthday where else we have to remind you always....we know you have a wife and kids but all we ever

want is to be accepted fully by you and to be introduced to our siblings and grandmother but that's too much to ask from you right

Zakhele: baby that's not it the thing is it's complicated

Bahle: baba we are your kids and mama told us that you even did a DNA test to be sure so why is it so hard for you to acknowledge us as your children by not being ashamed to introduce us to your family

She said with a breaking voice and Zakhele swallowed hard cause what she was saying was breaking his heart.

Bahle: you know our therapist said we shouldn't hold our breath waiting for you to introduce us to your family she said we should concentrate on ourselves and appreciate that at least bab'mkhulu Qophelo is there for us.....she said kids grow up longing for a father's love and they end up falling out of the wagon and dating older men because they have daddy issues and they don't appreciate the love their good brothers uncles or even good stepfathers show them....she said we should appreciate who we have in our lives now and let whomever we pray to deal with the rest and Badanile and I are doing just that...bye dad

Then she ended the call and Zakhele parked on the side of the road and clenched his jaws with Bahle's words breaking his heart even more then he called Cole.

Cole: what?

Zakhele: did you know Bahle and Badanile are seeing a therapist?

Cole: yeah and im paying for it

Zakhele: you piece of shit....THEY ARE MY KIDS QOPHELO NOT YOURS!

Cole: THEN ACT LIKE THEIR FATHER AND STOP ACTING LIKE

LINDIWE AND VUYISWA'S BITCH YOU PIECE OF SHIT!

Then he dropped the call and Zakhele hit the steering wheel screaming.

AT THE HOSPITAL

Marang was staring into space with tears running down her cheeks when Dineo walked in she just had her session with a psychologist Cole got for her and speaking about what happened to her just broke her even more.... even though the psychologist told her in order for her to start with her healing process she need to talk about her tragic experience accept that it has happened to her and believe that the is nothing that she did that made it right for Mazwi to force himself on her or beat her like that and even though she hardly heard anything the psychologist was saying she also didn't believe anything the psychologist was saying to her cause she blames herself for what happened to her.

Anyway Dineo rushed to her and he she sat on the bed and pulled her in for a hug and she held her tight as she cried her lungs out with Dineo crying along with her until they both calmed down.

Dineo: it's gonna be ok Marang....it might not be now but some day it will be....just don't give up Mara please I need you

She pleaded with her.

Marang: it hurts sis...it hurts....why did he do that to me...why...

She said crying and Dineo held her tight.

Marang: what did I do so horrible for him to do that to me....i begged him sis I begged him to stop but he didn't....i said im sorry and begged him to stop but he didn't stop

She said crying with Dineo crying along with her not knowing that Cole was standing on the other side of the slightly opened door listening to them he then turned and walked away with his jaws clenched....he got inside his car and sat there with his eyes closed and flashes of his late girlfriend who committed suicide after she was gang raped played in his mind he then turned and walked away with his jaws clenched....he got inside his car and sat there with his eyes closed and flashes of his late girlfriend who committed suicide after she was gang raped played in his mind even though he killed all of them in the most cruel way but it didn't numb the pain or heal his heart.....he was too focused on finding the culprits that he forgot to be there for her emotionally and one day when he was busy torturing those guys he got a call from her sister and she told him that Shirley committed suicide by overdosing on pills.

Cole: fuck you Mazwi!

He said and he hit the steering wheel and he sat back with his eyes closed.

Marang was sleeping in the middle of the night when she felt someone holding her hand and she jumped a bit opening her eyes and she found Mazwi standing beside her bed.....her heart started beating so fast that she thought it was going to explode any second.

Mazwi: im....im sorry baby I messed up I know and im sorry....i just love you too much Marang and I let anger take over me

She just looked at him with a horrified look on her face and everything just started playing in slow motion even him talking was on slow motion and she couldn't make out what he was really saying.

Mazwi: look baby lets just forget about what happened and move on....i promise I'll never hurt you like that ever again....i promise sthandwa sam.....just don't press charges against me Marang I love you so damn much and I'll live the rest of my life making it up on you.....i promise you baby

She didn't say anything she just looked at him while shaking like leave....she tried to reach for the nurse-call-cord to press the button and he saw her then he grabbed her hand tight squeezing it.

Mazwi: don't make me angry Marang im here to apologize and fix us and wena you're trying to call for help!

Everything was still moving in slow motion and her heart was beating so fast that she was even sweating....he squeezed her hand tighter and she flinched but no sound came out of her mouth it was like she even lost her voice then a nurse walked in doing her normal routine check on her and she stopped on her tracks and frowned looking at him.

Nurse: who are you and how did you get in here?

Mazwi: shit!

He whispered and let Marang's hand go and he cleared his throat...but then the nurse saw the state Marang was in and she screamed for help and Mazwi ran passed her and out he went while the nurse rushed to Marang.

Cole woke up to his phone ringing and he pushed the girl that was resting her head on his chest off him and he reached for it and he answered it.

Cole: yah

Nurse: Mr Zulu there was an intruder inside Marang's room and he ran away when I asked who he is and how he got in

Cole: WHAT?....how is Marang?

Nurse: we sedated her she was in a state of shock

He got out of the bed.

Cole: shit! ok im on my way

Nurse: ok sir

They ended the call and he went to the shower and he took the shortest shower in the history of taking a shower and he quickly got dressed and he took his wallet and pulled out a couple of hundreds and put them on the side drawer for the girl and he took his things and walked out of the hostel rushing out....deep down he knew it was Mazwi who was there.

Cole sat there watching Marang as she was sleeping he watched over her for the rest of the night and now it was around 6 in the morning....he clenched his jaws and took out his phone and he dialed Zakhele.

Zakhele: what do you want?

Cole: your son was at the hospital last night and if the nurse didn't walk in during her routine check on Marang I don't know what he would've done to her

Zakhele: you're lying I talked to him and he promised that he will stay away from her

Cole chuckled getting angry.

Cole: well he was here and the nurse saw him and even described him so don't fucken tell me that im lying

Zakhele: look i...

He interrupted him.

Cole: you are a failure Zakhele and im even ashamed to call you my brotherbusy protecting a rapist psychopath....just know that I'll make sure she pressed charges against him and I'll even make sure he rots in jail

Then he dropped the call and clicked his tongue....Meanwhile Zakhele sat up on the bed and he sighed rubbing his head roughly then he turned and looked at Vuyiswa who was sleeping next to him and he clicked his tongue and got out of bed.

Marang opened her swollen eyes slowly and she scanned the room and her eyes landed on Cole and she started breathing heavily and Cole rushed to her.

Cole: hey it's ok...its ok he won't hurt you anymore....its ok breathe

She tried to calm down with him brushing her hair slowly as he looked straight into her eyes full of pain sadness hurt and brokenness.

Cole: you calm now?

He asked her after some time and she slowly nodded then he stopped touching her cause he knows rape survivors don't like being touched especially by male figures.

Cole: did he hurt you?

She nodded and touched her hand the one he squeezed it was still painful.

Cole: son of a bitch....its ok I'll let the nurse know and she's take care of it ok

She nodded slowly with tears all over her face.

Cole: do you feel safe here after what happened last night?

She didn't respond.

Cole: if you don't then respond so I can make sure I take you to a safe place where a doctor will come to you for your check ups

She nodded slowly.

Cole: you don't feel safe anymore?

She nodded and he also nodded and he called for the nurse and told her to call her doctor for him then he called Richard and told him to tell Dineo that he's moving Marang to a safe place because Mazwi showed up in the middle of the night in the hospital and ever since Marang woke up after being sedated she hasn't said a word to anyone.

INSERT..... 05

.

.

.

NARRATED

Dineo: you ok sis?

Marang nodded and Dineo sighed.

Dineo: tell me here do you trust this Cole guy I mean he's Mazwi's uncle

Marang sighed.

Marang: I don't but he saved me twice so.....

Dineo sighed.

Dineo: I guess you're right I mean he's Richard's best friend so maybe he's nothing like Mazwi

Marang didn't say anything she just stared into space and Cole walked in.

Cole: is this bedroom ok....there are three others you can choose from if it's not

He moved her to his main house cause the security there is good.

Dineo: nah this one is ok...right Mara

Marang just nodded.

Cole: good....lunch will be ready in 5 minutes

Dineo nodded and he walked out.

Dineo: I wonder why he's doing all this

AT COLE'S OFFICE THE FOLLOWING DAY

Cole was busy on his laptop going through some figures when the door opened and Vuyiswa walked in followed by one of Cole's bodyguards.

Man: boss

Cole: its ok I got this

The guard nodded and he walked out closing the door behind him.

Cole: what do you want?

Vuyi: that's no way to talk to a lady Qophelo

Cole: you're no lady Vuyiswa.... you're just a conniving vile bitch

She gasped.

Vuyi: you're hurting me Qophelo

Cole: you have no heart so why are you hurting

He said with no care in the world and Vuyiswa chuckled.

Vuyi: you really hate me neh?

Cole: what do you want?

He said ignoring her question.

She sat down.

Vuyi: it's about Mazwi

Cole: what about him

Vuyi: you can't give up on him Qophelo he's your nephew

Cole chuckled shaking his head.

Cole: really?

He said leaning back on his chair and he looked at her with a raised eyebrow.

Vuyi: he'll go to jail Qophelo doesn't that bother you

Cole: no

She looked at him.

Vuyi: look i know you probably hate me for what I did to you but....

Cole: whoah woman stop right there....first of all you are not all that and secondly I don't give a fuck anymore if your son goes to jail or not

Vuyi: you don't mean that

Cole: I do actually so get up and get the fuck out of here

He said with a serious tone.

Vuyi: Qophelo you can't choose a useless nobody over family

Cole: I just did now get out of my office and stay out

He said that with a more serious tone and Vuyiswa swallowed hard and she stood up

Vuyi: first of all that little bitch is not Shirley and secondly im a lawyer Cole and if that little bitch lays charges against my son tell her that i'll wipe the courtroom floor with her face I'll discredit her so bad that she'll end up committing suicide Cole stood up.

Cole: so you thought every time I cleaned up after your useless rapist I destroyed the evidence huh if that's what you thought then you're as dumb as you look....i can send that thing you call a son to jail for the fucken rest of his life so don't tempt me bitch

She looked at him with her eyes popped out.

Vuyi: this was all your plan right?

Cole: you can say I always want to have leverage over people who ask for my help especially if it's something illegal....people like your son

She looked at him with an angry look.

Vuyi: you bastard....if my son goes down you will go down with him remember you helped him

He chuckled.

Cole: I have nothing to lose Vuyiswa and remember prison is my second home so I can just make a deal with that white cop whose daughter was killed by your son..... cause his reason for living now is to bring justice for his little girl so imagine certain evidence landing on his desk

Vuyi: you wouldn't

She said with her heart beating fast and his face got hard.

Cole: try me!

She kept quiet looking at him and she looked away swallowing hard.

Cole: its either your son hands himself over to the police after Marang lays charges against him or I ruin his life for good

Vuyi: you are a piece of shit Cole and im glad I chose Zakhele over you

Cole laughed.

Cole: the same Zakhele who has two kids who are the same age as Vuyelwa.....the same Zakhele who would rather go to his mistress than to come home to you and your stupid son?

Vuyi: Zakhele loves me you're just a jealous son of a bitch

Cole: you know im glad you chose him...image being married to a thing like you and to have your toxic womb carry my seed...you did good by aborting you saved me a lot of headache

Vuyi: FUCK YOU COLE YOU HEAR ME FUCK YOU!

She said pointing at him looking hurt and angry.

Cole: get out of my office Vuyiswa

She clicked her tongue and walked out looking angry then Cole sighed shaking his head and he picked up his phone and dialed Marang's numbers and she answered on the third ring.

Marang: hello

She said with a low tone.

Cole: hey you good

Marang: yeah

Cole: I hope you're not giving your helper trouble

Marang: no

Cole: good...did you eat

Marang: yeah I did

Cole: ok I'll see you later

Marang: ok

Then they ended the call and Cole sighed....well he got her a

nurse/helper.

TWO WEEKS LATER AT RICHARD'S HOUSE

Dineo just came back from her lectures and she was exhausted things between her and Richard have been good to a point that he even gave her permission to come to his house whenever she feels like it she was falling for him hard and that scared her cause she felt like he is too good to be true....he treats her like glass and the sex is out of this world. Anyway she went upstairs with her bag and she heard voices coming from Richards main bedroom and she stopped by the closed door....the voices were that of Richard and a woman then her heart started beating fast she went closer to the door and leaned on it with her ear pressed against it eavesdropping cause the discussion seemed heated.

Richard: ma please not this again

“ooh it’s his mother” she thought.

Woman: bona mo Tirelo Mmabatho is your wife and what you are doing is not right....why can’t she come and stay with you here mmh....o tshabang? (what are you scared of)

Dineo froze.

Richard: I told you my reason why that can’t happen now....i want a second wife and I can’t get one with her here you know how she can get

Tears ran down Dineo’s face.

Woman: there are beautiful and intelligent maidens back home so why can’t you choose from any of them...you know I will never allow a commoner as a daughter in law

Richard: Ma please

Woman: Tirelo look I get why you want a second wife but son why don't you give your marriage with Mmabatho a chance first

Richard: I don't love her

Woman: that's because you haven't given yourself a chance to love her you left her back at home while you are here tell me how will you two fall in love if you are miles apart...let her come and stay with you at least for two months and if you still don't develop any feeling towards her then I'll back off and let you take a second wife in peace... tell me how the hell do you think she'll fall pregnant while you're miles apart... your father and I want grandchildren Tirelo

Then he kept quiet a bit.

Woman: just think about it

Richard: eish fine I'll think about it now can i get back to work Dineo quickly ran towards the stairs and she went downstairs and ran out of the house with tears all over her face bumping into the house helper who was walking inside the house.

Helper: Dineo

She ignored her and rushed to the gate wiping her falling tears....the helper wondered what happened... she turned and quickly stopped walking when she saw Richard walking down the stairs with his phone on his ear and she bowed her head a bit.

Helper: my prince

Richard: ooh yes ummm when Dineo gets here make sure she doesn't meet the queen and tell her she should come to my office immediately im trying to call her and she's not answering her phone

Helper: my prince she was just here

He stopped walking and he looked at her with his eyes popped out.

Richard: what?

Helper: yes my prince she just ran out crying im trying to call her and she's not answering her phone

Helper: my prince she was just here

He stopped walking and he looked at her with his eyes popped out.

Richard: what?

Helper: yes my prince she just ran out crying she came in and said she's going to lie down a bit cause she's tired then she just walked out crying

Richard: shit!

He ran out he knew deep down that she eavesdropped on him and his mother probably thinking he brought another woman home...Anyway he got inside his car and he drove out quickly then he saw a woman rushing towards the main road and he knew it was her and he drove fast towards her and he hit the brakes when he reached her which made her jump a bit thinking she was being hit by a car and he quickly got out.

Richard: baby

She ignored him and she continued to walk and he grabbed her arm.

Dineo: get your fucken hand off me!

She said without even looking at him but he didn't let her go.

Richard: let me explain what you heard Dee please

She turned and looked at him.

Dineo: are you married?

He clenched his jaws looking down.

Dineo: ARE YOU MARRIED YES OR NO RICHARD?

She said raising her voice a bit.

Richard: yes

She tried to pull away from his grip but he tightened it.

Dineo: get your hand off me Richard.

Richard: I can explain Dee...just let me

Dineo: what's there to explain Richard....you played me

Richard: no I didn't....i love you and that is the truth...look I know we just met and I should've been honest from the get go but I love you Dee I truly do...please let's go somewhere and talk

Dineo: let go of me Richard

Richard: Dineo please

Dineo: I said get your hand off me!

He looked at her and she had a serious look on her face and he sighed and let her go.

Dineo: now listen and listen well from now on you stay the hell away from me what we had it over

Richard: no

Dineo: im not asking you Richard im fucken telling you....stay the hell away from me

Richard: Im afraid i cant do that

He said shaking his head.

Dineo: then I'll make you....you are a married man Richard so concentrate on your wife and leave me alone

She attempted to walk away and he grabbed her arm again.

Richard: can you stop with this childish act and lets go somewhere and sit down so I can explain everything

Dineo: no...now let go of me

He chuckled shaking his head and he let her go and Tears ran down her cheeks as she walked away.

Richard: WE ARE NOT OVER DINEO IN FACT WE ARE FAR FROM IT!

He shouted and she showed him her middle finger without looking at him as she was walking towards the main road and Richard chuckled and he got inside his car and watched her as she stopped a taxi cab and got in.

Richard: fuck!

He started the car and drove away.

AT COLE'S OFFICE

Cole was having lunch when the door opened and Richard walked in.

Cole: and nou who died back home

Richard clicked his tongue and he sat down.

Richard: I need a drink man

Cole chuckled and he got up and poured him one and he put the glass in front of him and Richard took the glass and gulped it down in one go.

Cole: damn that bad?

Richard: Dineo heard my conversation with mom

Cole: ooh shit!

Richard: yeah you can say that again

Cole: so she knows that you're married and a prince

Richard: no only that im married and ka mo mom wants Mmabatho to come stay with me

Cole: well it was bound to happen man she's your wife

Richard got up and he went to pour himself another drink.

Richard: arranged marriage ya masepa nx....now I met someone who challenges me man who makes me happy and alive again and who also makes my heart melt when she's

around and guess what im fucken married to some robot woman who's from some fucken royal family

Cole laughed a bit.

Cole: I told you not to catch feelings man

Richard: well too late for that

He sighed.

Richard: Dineo man....eish Dineo mfowethu...why did I meet her heh?

Cole: just let her go man...you know how this whole shit will go down...you marrying a commoner is a no no....your mother will make life a living hell for Dineo so let her go

Richard kept quiet a bit.

Richard: my heart doesn't want me to man

Cole: ai asazi ke (ai we don't know then)

Richard: im fucked

Cole: unless you move back home

Richard: im not ready for that Cole....that place is fucken depressing and going to council meetings resolving disputes between neighbors concerning their livestock and all that shit is just too depressing for me man...im too young for that
Cole laughed.

Cole: once you're king that's gonna be your life

Richard: eish don't remind me

He sighed.

Richard: eish Dineo mfowethu

Cole laughed.

Cole: uk'phethe ngamasende neh (she has you by the balls neh)

Richard: fsek!

Cole laughed and Richard went to lie down on the couch and he covered his face with a cushion and he screamed which

made Cole to laugh some more.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Cole walked in and he put his keys and laptop bag on top of the table and he went to the lounge and found Marang reading a book with the TV on but it was on silent she was concentrating hard on the book and he smirked a bit he was glad she found something that kept her busy from thinking too much about what happened to her...He cleared his throat and she jumped a bit with fright and she calmed down when she saw that it was Cole.

Cole: sorry i startled you like that

She nodded and she looked down.

Cole: how was your day?

Marang: it was ok

Cole: mmmh

Then the nurse walked in holding her hand bag and she smiled shyly when she saw Cole.

Nurse: ummm its knock off time for me...ooh hi sir

Cole: hi

He said without any care in the world and her smile vanished as she stood there.

Nurse: ummm ok then bye Marang

Marang: bye

She said with a low tone and the nurse awkwardly walked away.

Cole: did she help you come downstairs or you did it by yourself

Marang: I did it by myself

Cole: then that means you don't need her anymore....I'll take you for your checkups and for your appointment with your therapist and the helper is here to cook and clean
She didn't say anything for a bit.

Marang: ok

Cole: good I don't like that nurse she's getting too comfortable for my liking

He then went to take his things and he went upstairs and Marang smiled a bit cause she could tell the nurse was smitten by Cole and the funny part is she was extra nice to Marang cause she thought Marang is Cole's younger sister...then Marang's phone rang it was Dineo.

Marang: sis

Dineo: waitsi Richard ke lesepa la motho mpya ya moghodoyi....letlakala fela...ke moeskond ya motho fucken shit...lentlwaela masepa lerete lele... (you know Richard is a shitty person a useless dog....a useless thing...he's an asshole fucken shit.... that dickhead doesn't know me)

Marang: whoah what did he do?

She asked with a low tone.

Dineo: mpya ele (that dog) is married Marang
Then she cried.

Marang: ooh my God nooo.....

She said with tears filling her eyes.

Dineo: o ntlwaela masepa msono ole....ke tlo mmontsha masepa (that cunt doesn't know me....shit is what im gonna show him)im going to find out who his father is and im going to fuck him so good that he ends up saying I should be his second wife and have Richard call me step mom

Marang kept quiet not knowing what to say with a shocked

expression on her face.

Marang: ummm....

Dineo: I can see ompala dikuranteng...im gonna show that fucken shit gore why kuku yaka e le monate so....a rapele papagae e be ele gore o nale sugar diabetes if not soon o tlo mpitsa step mom..... anyway shap I'll call you before I go to bed let me do some meditation to calm myself down before skopo saka se mpotsa gore ko fisa his house

(I can see he reads about me on papers...im gonna show that fucken shit why my vagina is this delicious....he should pray that his father is diabetic if not soon he's gonna call me stepmom....anyway bye I'll call you before I go to bed let me do some meditation to calm myself down before my head tell me to go burn down his house)

Then she dropped the call and Marang sighed shaking her head.

Cole: don't get involved Marang

She jumped a bit she didn't know he was standing behind her.

Cole: you have your own shit that you are dealing with so you don't need any setbacks....let Richard and your friend deal with their shit and concentrate on your own...I hope im making myself clear

Then he went to the kitchen.

INSERT..... 06

•
•

.

A WEEK LATER

Marang decided to go press charges against Mazwi and it has been chaos ever since Cole then anonymously tipped off the police about Mazwi's whereabouts and he's since been arrested... The white cop whose daughter was killed by Mazwi can't wait for the case to go to trial he's hell bend on making sure that Mazwi pays dearly even if it's not to pay for killing his daughter but he's willing to settle for him paying for raping and causing bodily harm to Marang. As for Marang her life has being one roller coaster ride since then others think she's lying while others believe her and Mazwi's mother grandmother and baby mama/wife aren't making it easy they have been painting Marang as being bitter that Mazwi chose his baby mama instead of her so now she's crying rape so it' been one hell of a week for her

Well with Dineo she has been ignoring Richard ever since he called and texted and even went to her place but she just won't even give him a second to explain himself she even threatened to get a restraining order against him if he doesn't back off and he decided to back off cause he's just not anyone he's a prince and a future king so bad publicity is not what he's looking for or else his parents will skin him alive....With Cole well he's been doing his best to be there for Marang but its been hard cause Vuyiswa went to social media and said things like Marang is a conniving bitter and desperate bitch who sleeps with both Uncle and nephew and now that she's done with the nephew she's now on to the uncle and you know how social media is and how people

always believe what they read so they have been attacking Marang left right and center that she even had to delete all her social media accounts....

She knew pressing charges against Mazwi would turn her life into a living hell cause his parents are well off and she's just a nobody she regretted listening to Dineo and her inner conscious cause things are bad and she's been telling Cole that its best she moved back with Dineo cause they are also dragging his name in the mud for allowing Marang " to play him like this" but he just won't hear none of it....Anyway right now she's in the kitchen staring out of the window with her mind all over the place she was thinking of going to the police station to drop the charges against Mazwi for peace to rein in her life but then everyone will truly believe Vuyiswa's lies about her that she's just bitter Mazwi left her for another girl that's why she's crying rape and on another hand her mother called her earlier today and she was spitting fire she insulted her over the phone saying Mazwi's grandmother called her and threatened her....she didn't even wanna hear Marang's side of the story all she said was Marang better drop those charges if she knows what's good for her cause she won't suffer because of her selfishness....she sniffed and wiped her tears with the back of her hand still staring out of the window it was early in the morning...then she stopped moving when she felt a heavy feeling on her shoulders then she completely wiped her tears off and remained in that position.

Cole: why are you crying?

She looked down.

Cole: I asked you a question Marang

Marang: my...my mother called

Cole: and?

Marang: she....

She sighed.

Marang: she said some nasty words to me....she said Mazwi's grandmother Lindiwe called her and threatened her

Cole: what?

He said frowning and he walked to her and he stood behind her leaning forward towering her with his buffed up body which made her swallow hard as she felt goose bumps all over her body.

Marang: she...she was furious and she also said I should drop...ummm drop the charges because she...she won't suffer because of me

She stuttered and Cole sighed then he boxed her inside his arms by holding the counter with both his hands and he leaned closer to her ear.

Cole: do you want to drop the charges against a boy that forced himself on you and also beat you up to a pulp and almost burned you alive?

She swallowed hard and her eyes filled with tear it was early in the morning...then she stopped moving when she felt a heavy feeling on her shoulders then she completely wiped her tears off and remained in that position.

Cole: why are you crying?

She looked down.

Cole: I asked you a question Marang

Marang: my...my mother called

Cole: and?

Marang: she....

She sighed.

Marang: she said some nasty words to me....she said Mazwi's grandmother Lindiwe called her and threatened her

Cole: what?

He said frowning and he walked to her and he stood behind her leaning forward towering her with his buffed up body which made her swallow hard as she felt goose bumps all over her body.

Marang: she...she was furious and she also said I should drop...ummm drop the charges because she...she won't suffer because of me

She stuttered and Cole sighed then he boxed her inside his arms by holding the counter with both his hands and he leaned closer to her ear.

Cole: do you want to drop the charges against a boy that forced himself on you and also beat you up to a pulp and almost burned you alive?

She swallowed hard and her eyes filled with tear she tried so hard to fight them back with her mind going back to that day.

Cole: mmmh ntokazi?

She shook her head no as tear ran down her cheeks.

Cole: good now don't worry about my mother and your mother I'll handle them while you concentrate on your books because your exams are starting in two weeks times and failing is not an option ok

She nodded then out of the blue he stood straight and turned her around then he pulled her into his hard chest and held her and she rested her head on his chest inhaling in his hypnotizing scent.

AT RICHARD'S HOUSE

He just finished getting dressed when the door opened and his wife walked in with a smile on her face.

Mmabatho: breakfast is ready babe

Then she paused and frowned.

Batho: a suit?..... I guess that means you're going to work huh

Richie: mmmmh

He said without even looking at her.

Batho: mara babe I thought you'll take a day off and we will spend today together bathong

Richie stopped what he was doing and he looked at her with a frown on his face.

Richie: why would I do that Batho?

Batho: what do you mean by that Tirelo.... I haven't seen you for two months and last night we made some sweet love so forgive me for thinking that my husband would want to spend the whole day with me

Richie chuckled shaking his head and he went back to wearing his tie.

Richie: I know you the one that put that silly thought of you moving here into mom's head so now you got what you wanted yippy for you but don't think i'll change my way of living just for you

Batho: Tirelo ka ne im your wife and a princess you know and just because I love you doesn't mean im some naïve illiterate woman who doesn't feel pain....i have a degree and a well-paying job back home and im human Tirelo

She said with an angry voice.

Richie: then what are you doing here?

He said looking at her.

Batho: because I wanna make this marriage work...cause I love you Tirelo even though this was an arranged marriage I want it to work

He sighed clenching his jaws and he turned back to the mirror and he fixed his tie.

Richie: I just think they made us get married too early Mmabatho im not ready to be a husband and now they are forcing us....me to give them a grandchild and I can't imagine myself bringing a baby in a loveless marriage

Batho: wow

Richie: it's the truth you may love me but I don't love you and now a child is expected from us and we don't even know each other that well.... it's just absurd

Batho: have you ever given yourself a chance to try to love me

Richie: maybe I don't want to have you thought about that....i remember begging you to help me convince our parents that they should give us some time to get to know each other before they get us married and you agreed cause you said you also want to enjoy your life before you get married and then you heard about Kubu dying in a plane crash.... you knew im the next one to be king and you bailed out on our agreement

Batho: I was worried ok I realized that you could fall in love with someone else or get some girl pregnant while we are getting to know each other that's why I bailed on our agreement

Richie: you're lying you changed your mind cause now im not just a prince but a future king that's why you changed your mind

She rolled her eyes.

Batho: ok fine.... but I did what any woman would have done
you need to grow up Tirelo baKubung don't need a weak king
who only thinks about himself only and living like a
commoner

Richie shook his head chuckling.

Richie: now I see why my mother chose you to be my wife
you two are birds of the same feathers...all you care about is
being in power and having control of everything

Batho: your mother is the best queen and that's why
baKubung kingdom is thriving so forgive me for wanting to be
like her when im the queen

Richie: and you wonder why I don't love you....you just a
robot princess under my mother's command.... being a queen
and demanding respect instead of earning it is all you care
about.....haven't you wondered why our people are not fond
of their queen

She stood there looking at him with an emotional face until
she spoke.

Batho: whatever my prince the main fact isim your wife
and a princess for that matter and it's not my fault that our
marriage was arranged and its definitely not my fault that we
are both royalty and you should stop being selfish and just
accept that you are a future king and not just an ordinary
man

Richie: I know im a future king but until im crowned one im
gonna enjoy pretending to be just an ordinary man because
some of us actually despise being royalty

He then took his things and left the house without even
eating breakfast prepared by Mmabatho with Mmabatho
calling after him.

THE FOLLOWING DAY AT THE ZULU RESIDENCE

Lindiwe and his male visitor were sitting in the lounge drinking and chatting away when there was a knock on the door and the house help went to open the door and Cole stood there with his hands in his pockets he greeted the helper and went inside.

Cole: this looks cozy

They looked at him and Mr Murphy cleared his throat as Cole's stare was too much for him to bear.

Lindiwe: son to what do I owe this surprise

Cole: does your wife know about your visit here

He said to Mr Murphy.

Lindiwe: Qophelo!

Cole: What Lindiwe we both know you two were cheating on both dad and Mrs Murphy and I guess dad found out and you had him killed meaning Mrs Murphy doesn't know about you two fucking that's why she's still alive right?

Mr Murphy swallowed hard while Lindiwe looked like she wanted to give Cole a hiding.

Mr.Murphy: don't go around saying things like that son you might get into trouble

Cole: im not your son your piece of shit

Lindiwe: Qophelo enough!

She said getting up and Cole chuckled.

Cole: remember the dead are always watching and waiting for the right time to avenge for their death so im gonna sit back and watch

He said with a smile on his face and Lindiwe and Murphy

looked at each other and Mr Murphy got up too.

Murphy: I should go Lindi I'll come see you some other time

Cole: don't leave because of me man im sure her late husband and your late friend enjoys watching you two fuck under his roof.... anyway Lindiwe I'll come back some other time to warn you to lay off Marang and her family or else you'll regret it

Lindiwe: I can't believe this.... you are here threatening me because of a useless girl

Cole: you are the one who's useless....you choose to support a rapist and a murderer but what am I even saying....you also have my father's blood in your hands so I guess Mazwi took after you

Lindiwe: how many times must I tell you that I didn't kill your father!

Cole: but you paid someone to do it you and this bastard paid someone to do it and I might not have enough proof of it but I know you did

Lindiwe sat down.

Lindiwe: when will you stop all this nonsense Qophelo....i get it you're still hurt by your father's passing but now you are getting out of hand

Cole chuckled.

Cole: remember what I said Lindiwe....the dead are always watching and listening

He smirked and walked out of the house.

Mr.Murphy: this boy needs to join his dead father...his getting too big for his boots

Lindiwe looked at him with a frown on her face.

INSERT..... 07

.
. .
.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Marang and Dineo are busy studying for their exams and it's been hours since they started.

Dineo: hai let's take 5 Mara nna my brain is tired now yho

Marang stretched her body and she yawned.

Marang: eish mine too

Dineo: order pizza then

Marang: wena order it mos

Dineo: dude you live in a mansion and I live in a two bedroom apartment

Marang frowned.

Marang: this is not my house Dee or my father's house

Dineo rolled her eyes.

Dineo: I never said that im just saying bae Cole is loaded while im boyfriendless....have some pity bathong

Marang: bae Cole?...really Dee

Dineo: what... are you jealous?

She said teasing Marang and Marang frowned.

Marang: jealous of what?

Dineo laughed.

Dineo: that he's bae and he's hot...and his voice mmmmh that Vin Diesel kinda voice....his buffed up body and those lazy bedroom eyes mmmmh ke ra those Jack Mabaso

bedroom eyes and his juicy light pink lips and im not gonna say anything about that area below the belt cause any woman can see gore nigga is gifted mmmh the way his trousers are on his zip shows gore hei di a bowa strong down there (that hey he's well packaged down there)...I've never seen him wearing sweatpants and I wonder why Marang's mouth hanged open as she looked at Dee and Dineo laughed.

Dineo: you have noticed right?

Marang cleared her throat as she thought about two days ago when he was standing behind her and his warm breath on her skin close to her ear.

Dineo: Mara?

She said waving her hand on her face and she snapped out of it and she looked down embarrassed and she got up taking her phone with her.

Dineo: are you ok?

Marang: yeah I just got a lot in my mind that's all...askies for zoning out like that

Dineo: ooh its ok I understand

She also got up and they went to the kitchen and Marang ordered pizza while Dineo was pouring drinks for them.

Marang: ummm so are you interested in ummm Cole?

Dineo: interested?

Marang: yeah like to date him

Dineo stopped what she was doing and looked at Marang with a raised eyebrow.

Dineo: the right question is are you interested in him?

Marang looked down and she swallowed clearing her throat.

Marang: me? umm no he's Mazwi's uncle and he's like a hundred years older than me and plus im not his type and im

not ready to be in a relationship I mean im still recovering from being ummm so I cant....

She stopped rumberling as Dineo was laughing.

Marang: what...why are you laughing?

Dineo: ooh my God you're into bae Cole....like really into him

Marang's eyes popped out.

Marang: what?...no im not

Dineo: yes you are....when did it start and did something happen between you two

Marang: im not into him like that Dineo ok now can we drop it

Dineo laughed out loud.

Dineo: jeez Mara I've never seen you like this before....bona mogirl its ok to fall for him I mean you would have to be blind not to when you living with him in the same house seeing all that hotness every single second I mean by now I would have fucked him and even be pregnant for him that's how hot he is

Marang: im not into him Dineo...now can we drop it

She said getting uncomfortable.

Dineo: well you are and im sure you'd hate me if I make a move on him right

Marang: i...I wouldn't

Dineo: o sure?

Marang: ummm yeah

She said looking away and she took her drink and took a sip and she breathed out and Dineo smiled looking at her.

Dineo: you are a bad liar Marang....jeez you like the guy and its ok mntase

Marang: I don't like him

Dineo: this is me Marang and I know you so stop lying to me

before onkwatisa (you make me mad)

Marang sighed.

Marang: can we stop talking about this cause its making me uncomfortable

Dineo: why? is it because you're living with the guy

Marang sighed.

Marang: im a rape victim Dee so I can't be thinking about dating again or his dick or touch or and he's Mazwi's uncle and he's older than me ok....he's just helping me out and I shouldn't misread that as him being interested in me...he's not

Dineo: what if he is

Marang: he's not trust me....i think he just sees me as his little sister and its ok cause I don't think I'll ever be ready to fall in love again or have sex or let alone let a man touch me again like that...I just....im cool with the way things are between us

Dineo sighed.

Dineo: well for your piece of mind im not interested in him....he's hot and whatever but my heart is with ramarete o bareng ke Richard (that dickhead called Richard) even though he's married

Marang sighed with relief.

Marang: you know I still can't believe he's married

Dineo: mxm....men are trash im telling you....pure trash nx

Marang: and to think I thought you two make a great couple
She shook her head.

Dineo: o lucky he can fuck pretty good and he treated me like an egg or else I would rock up at his house and ruin his stupid marriage....nx he's lucky im not a bitter person but yena the day I bump into him I swear ka papa wa go ntshabela ko mo

roga ka mmae (with my runaway father im going to swear at him with his mother)

Marang laughed lightly.

Marang: bathong Dineo

Dineo: keng? (what?)....that moerskond made me fall for him

Marang and I did....hard

She said with tears in her eyes and Marang hugged her and she sobbed on her shoulder until they heard the door

opening and they broke the hug and Dineo wiped her tears off and they went to see who it was and it was Cole and

Richard.

Dineo: mxm

She said rolling her eyes.

Dineo: I swear satan wangleka struu (satan is testing me)

She whispered to Marang.

Cole: ladies

Dineo: hey Cole

Marang: hi

Her eyes darted below Cole's belt and her breath hinged and she quickly looked away.

Richie: sweet Mara... you good ntokazi?

Cole gave him a death stare and he smirked.

Marang: yeah you?

Richie: I'll live

Then he looked at Dineo.

Richie: Dee

Dineo: mmm!

She said that giving him a nasty look and he smiled shaking his head looking down then Cole went to Marang and stood in front of her with his head tilted a bid to the side and his right hand inside his pocket.

Cole: you good?

She nodded like a small child and he touched her chin smirking at her with his left hand.

Cole: good...we will excuse you then

He turned and faced Dineo and Richie and they were now staring at each other.

Cole: lets go man

Richard cleared his throat and he looked at Cole.

Richie: yeah

Then they walked away going to his study.

Marang: wow that was intense

Dineo: I swear this guy ontshwaretse kotana.... gape banna ba Batswana ba loya goed (I swear this guy bewitched me...Batswana men practice witchcraft too much)

Marang: DINEO!

She said reprimanding her.

Dineo: I just froze Marang why did I freeze like that huh...I swear ontshwaretse kotana mpya ele (he's bewitching me that dog)...I wanted to swear at him and even bruise his stupid ego by saying o na le pipi enyanne (by saying he's got a small dick) mxm he's lucky shem

Marang: I give up shem...I just give up

She said raising her hands defeated and they went back to the kitchen.

Dineo: but damn he still looks good

She sighed.

Marang: mmmmh I see he even went for a hair cut

Dineo: mxm im sure he's trying to look good for sfebe sele sa gae (for that bitch of his)

Marang: ha'a Dineo the poor woman did nothing to you haw....remember Richard cheated on her with you so no she

did nothing to you

Dineo gave Marang a bored look.

Dineo: sam bora tuu (don't bore me please) don't you know you feel good about yourself when you hate on the woman instead of the guy ...ah ah ke one of the laws of nature

Marang laughed.

Marang: wena wa gafa straight (you are just crazy)

Dineo: mxm....mara eish I miss him shem

Marang: mmmmh and I can see

Dineo: Marang gape mpya ele o tshwere bazooka below his belt girl ko Klipgat where I come from re e bitsa thupa ya badimo (Marang that dog hold a bazooka below his belt girl at Klipgat where I come from we call it an ancestors' stick)

Marang laughed and she joined her.

Dineo: e le ge e go bethile gai one fela esklaar go fedile ka wena shem (that one if it hits you once you are done shame).... you become hooked for life

Marang continued to laugh.

Dineo: im telling you Mara....boRichie ga se bale bo Two Shades of Grey or whatever they call it....ke monna wa mo Africa....missionary style dog style or that one you put your legs oh his shoulders and he holds your waist tight and hit it hard...wa bona with those three styles mpya ele can make you sing ka tone ya soprano o opela;

“ ka mmatla mmatla gotlhe gotlhe
ka dikolloga gotlhe gotlhe
ka mo fumana Richie waka
a go na ya tshwanang naye”

(Im telling you Mara.....Richie is not one of those guys that will go all Two Shades of Grey on you or whatever they call it

.. he's an African man... Missionary style dog style or that one you put your legs on his shoulders and he holds your waist tight and hit it hard....you see with those three styles that dog can make you sing with a soprano tone to that song that says;

“ I searched for him everywhere
i turned everywhere
until I found my Richie
there's no other like him”)

Marang busted out with loud laughter with tears coming out of her eyes and Dineo joined her.

Marang: Dineo whoah stop please my tummy hurts

She said still laughing.

Dineo: Marang that moerskond o ja kuku monate shem (Marang that bastard can fuck pretty good shame).... mxm

Marang: you just killed me shem....im like dead and buried now...shooooo....i cant Dineo I just cant

She said continuing to laugh.

Dineo: I swear im sure God is punishing me for something I did....why did he have to make him get married to someone else instead of me

She said sulking and Marang stopped laughing and she wiped her tears off.

Marang: remember our slogan mntase....ITS BETTER TO SUFFER NOW THAN LATER IN LIFE...so im glad you found out now than later when you would have invested your all in him and your relationship

Dineo sighed.

Dineo: I guess

Marang: mmmmh

Dineo: and what about you?

Marang: what about me?

Dineo: the rape thing

Marang swallowed hard.

Marang: I guess it's better it happened now even though it shouldn't have happened in the first place

She sighed.

Marang: I mean imagine if I was married with kids.....my husband wont be able to touch me see me naked or even make love to me until im completely healed and as for the kids seeing their mom that broken and badly bruised
She shook her head getting emotional.

Marang:....the next thing he cheats cause he cant have sex with me and after some time I heal and we make our marriage work then the cheating thing comes out and I have to deal with that too.....so yah I guess its better to suffer now than later

Dineo: wow you have a wild imagination girl

She smiled weakly.

Dineo: something my therapist asked and I told her about our slogan and she said I should elaborate why im using our slogan on my current predicament and that's how I elaborated it and she said the exact same thing

She chuckled weakly and Dineo opened her arms.

Dineo: come to mama

Marang chuckled with tears in her eyes and they hugged tight and she sobbed in her arms until she calmed down and they broke the hug and she wiped her tears off.

Dineo: you know I asked around and someone told me she knows someone who knows someone who sells magadima (lightning)

They laughed.

Dineo: re no betha mpya e le e no kgwamoga once (we will just hit that dog and he'll die once) bloody rapist nx

Marang smiled with tears in her eyes.

Then the doorbell rang and they went to open for the delivery man and they paid him and went to the kitchen and they ate sitting on the barstools gossiping then Cole and Richie walked in.

Cole: I hope you two weren't gonna finish all the pizza without leaving some for us

He said brushing Marang's left upper arm gently and Marang felt goosebumps all over her body and she swallowed and she looked down then he took a slice of pizza and he took a large bite and Richie also took a slice and started eating.

Dineo: bathong ya'll didn't even wash your hands man

Cole: as if you two did before you ate

Richie laughed.

Richie: mmmmh batshele bafo (tell them bro)

Dineo: mxm....and o mongwe yena knows gore o rata go finger(a) and o no tshwara tshwara dijo without washing his hands nx (and someone knows he likes fingering and he just touches our food without washing his hands nx)

Cole and Marang busted out with laughter and Richards just chuckled shaking his head.

Richie: I guess that was directed to me huh?

He said looking at her and she gave him a bored look.

Richie: well then you would know about this fingers being inside a pussy right

Marang: nooo guys not now please...we are eating bathong
She said making a face and Cole laughed.

Dineo: o sa batlo mbora Richard assomblief (don't bore me

Richard)

Richard smiled at her with a loving smile.

Richard: can we talk in private..... please

She ignored him and Marang looked at Dineo.

Dineo: what?

She said looking at Marang making a face.

Marang: he's talking to you

Dineo: I don't talk to married men in private Marang

Cole chuckled shaking his head and he went to take a plate and he put four slices of pizza on it and he took two glasses and he whispered to Marang to take the drink and follow him and she did that.

Richie: I love you

Dineo looked away with tears filling her eyes.

Richie: I didn't tell you cause I wish I wasn't married.... I don't love her Dee

The he sighed.

Richie: she's not the type of woman or wife I prepare

Dineo: what she's fat?

He chuckled.

Richie: no...lets say she's like my mother

She looked at him and she blinked fast trying to fight back her tears.

Richie: she's power hungry and controlling and she's also my mother's puppet so yah....

He sighed again.

Richie: im....im royalty Dee...im a crowned prince and....and a future king of the BaKubung kingdom in the North West

She looked at him with her eyes popped out and her mouth hanging.

Dineo: huh?

He sighed and went closer to her and he cupped her face and stared into her confused and shocked eyes and he smiled and he bend a bit and perked her lips and he continued to stare into her eyes.

Richie: you so beautiful.... damn i wish I wasn't married

Dineo: you...you're a prince and a king to be?

He sighed and nodded.

Richie: that's why im married not because I love her and I want to build a family with her....it was arranged and fighting my elders is pointless cause they think they know it all and they also think they know a better future queen... fuck what I think or need...

He sighed.

Richie: perks of being royalty

He said and clenched his jaws then he let her go and he took a step back and put his hands inside his pockets

Richie: I love you so damn much its hurts just thinking about you and another man together....i have nightmares about it

Dineo

She sighed and she looked down feeling emotional.

Richie: I want to let you go but my heart cant....it doesn't want to and I don't think it ever will

Tears rolled down Dineo's face and he went closer to her and he made her stand up and he held her as she sobbed on his chest until she calmed down.

Dineo: I almost went to your place and burned your house and cars to the ground

She said chuckling while wiping her tears off and he smiled looking at her.

Richie: im glad you didn't

Dineo: I also swore at you....like I used all the South African

swear words there is using all eleven official languages
The both laughed.

Richie: I believe you trust me I do

Then they stopped laughing and they stared at each other.

Richie: I want you so bad....just one last time....i just wanna
fuck you so hard until we both pass out

He said with a serious face and she swallowed hard.

IN THE LOUNGE

Cole and Marang were watching Tv with Cole brushing Marang thumb slowly and gently with Marang trying to control her breathing....she didn't understand how he could make her feel like this she thought she will find it hard to feel anything for a man after what Mazwi did to her....she thought she will feel uncomfortable when Cole touched her even a tiny bit because of what she went through but her body fails her every time...she read somewhere that rape victims find it hard to connect with the opposite sex in the early days of their traumatic ordeals but with her it's like her body longs for Cole to touch it.....it worries her cause she feels like her body and mind are not in sync in her mind she remembers what she went through and she even has nightmares about it to a point that she would wake up visibly shaking from fear she's even scared to go outside on her own that's how traumatized she still is but her body whenever Cole is around just reacts differently and it betrays her and that worries her.

Cole: you ok?

He asked her with his face next to her ear and she swallowed spit and nodded with her face still facing the Tv with her heart beating fast.

Cole: you are sweating are you sure you're ok

She nodded again.

Marang: yeah....it's nothing

He continued to rub her thumb gently and she closed her eyes briefly and she opened them again and she exhaled slowly.

Marang: "Lord help me"

Is what she thought before her phone rang saving her and she quickly picked it and answered it.

Marang: he...hello

The person didn't say anything and she frowned.

Marang: hello

Voice: are you fucking him?

She froze and her body tensed.

Voice: was it him you fucked that time

Marang: Ma...Mazwi?

She said with a shaking voice.

Mazwi: ARE YOU FUCKING MY UNCLE MARANG!

Cole quickly grabbed the phone from a shaking Marang and he dropped the call and he pulled her closer and he held her tight with a scary look on his face and his jaws clenched...then Richards and Dineo walked passed them without even looking at them rushing towards the steps with Richard taking off his jacket and upstairs they went.

INSERT 08

.
. .

NARRATED

As soon as Richard closed the door they started kissing hungrily as they moved to the bed. They stopped kissing and took off each other's clothes fast and immediately Dineo saw two love bites on his neck she immediately got discouraged and she pushed him away.

Dineo: stop I can't do this

Richie: what...Dee don't do this to me please!

He said trying to touch her again but she moved back.

Dineo: I can't do this Richard you are married and those two love bites on your neck are a clear proof that I shouldn't do this

He sighed and brushed his head roughly and he looked at his bulge.

Richie: Dineo I love you Mmabatho means nothing to me trust me if I wasn't royalty I would be yours alone

Dineo: bona mo Richard my pussy doesn't belong to you anymore and I don't sleep with married men knowingly....im sorry things got to this point but we can't go any further

Richard shook his head repeatedly and he went closer to her and cupped her face.

Richie: don't do this to me Dineo please

He said looking into her eyes and she sighed and she looked away.

Dineo: if you leave now im sure your wife will be happy to

help you with that hard on
He frowned looking at her.

Richie: you think this is about sex Dineo is that what you think off me?

Dineo: you say you love me but you slept with her
She said with a lump stuck on her throat...she tried to swallow it but it just won't go down and Richard sighed and let her go and he took a step back and put his hands inside his pockets and looked at her.

Richie: the reason I slept with her is because our parents want a grandchild not because I love her!

Dineo: but you enjoyed her right

Richard sighed and he shook his head.

Richie: entlek what do you want from me Dineo

He said with a serious look on his face and Dineo frowned with attitude all over her face.

Dineo: for you to let me be Richard I also want to be like your wife.... I want to be called Mrs somebody I want to wear a huge diamond ring too on my finger or keng menwana ya ka e befile to a point that e ka se tshwanne ke a wedding ring? (or what my fingers are too ugly for me to wear a wedding ring?)

Richie: fine then marry me and be my second wife...you want marriage right then marry me!

Dineo: mxm o tsubile kao bona (you are high I see)

She said moving and she picked her shirt and wore it.

Richie: im serious Dineo marry me

Dineo: ontlwaetsa keng Richard heh? (what do you take me for?)....ke gore (is it that) when you look at me properly you think I look like one of those girls that will share a dick knowingly for the rest of their lives heh?

Richie: then what the fuck do you want me to do then
huh...isn't that me showing you that I love you and that this
is not just about sex

Dineo: yho Richard motho wa modimo e ya gae and let me be
tuu before lenna ke thoma go bolela ka bo fuck (Richard
God's person go home and let me be please before I also
start using fuck) and you'll say im disrespecting you

She said wearing her shoes and she went to the door but
Richard grabbed her and turned her roughly and he pushed
her back until he pinned her on the wall.

Richie: where do you think you are going we are still talking!

Dineo: let me go Richard

Richie: we still talking Dineo now stop all this and let's sit and
find a way forward

Dineo: bona mo abuti (look here bro) the only way forward
here is you divorcing your wife

He chuckled looking at her.

Richie: you kidding right?

Dineo: ge o ntebelletse ke sefatlhego sa go dlala se (when
you look at me do you think im kidding)

Richie: Dineo

Dineo: we both know you'll never do that so let go of me
before ke go raga mae e be oa tlhatsa ka molomo (before I
kick your balls and you'll end up vomiting them out)

Richie: is that how you talk to me now Dineo

He said with a serious look on his face.

Dineo: your dick doesn't belong to me anymore so ke tlare ke
go gorelang foro (so why should I lick your ass)

Richie: o tla nnyella Dineo wankutlwa....o tla bona mmao
soos nou o tla itshola ka mpama e one fela wankutlwa!(you'll
shit yourself Dineo you hear me....watch how you talk to me

you'll regret it by only one slap from me you hear me!)
He said with a deadly look on his face and she swallowed
scared.

Richie: talk to me like that ever again and you'll fucken regret
it you hear me?

She just looked away and he grabbed her by her jaws and
turned her face roughly.

Richie: I said wankutlwa? (I said you hear me)

He said tightening his grip on her jaws and she nodded with
tears in her eyes.

Richie: say it!

Dineo: yes...yes I hear you

Richie: nx

He clicked his tongue and let her go and he went to pick his
shirt and he wore it.

Dineo: whatever Richard.... from now on whenever you see
me don't even look my way even if you see me with another
man pretend like you don't know me and I'll do the same
She said with a breaking voice and Richard chuckled shaking
his head.

Richie: fotsek Dineo! entlek (piss off Dineo! actually) get the
fuck out of my face before I lose my cool!

He said with an angry voice.

Dineo: you too fotsek nx (you too piss off)

She opened the door and turned to look at him.

Dineo: le marete nx

Then she slammed the door and rushed down stairs and
Richard went after her looking angry.....Dineo got downstairs
and found Marang in Cole's arms.

Dineo: sorry to interrupt...Mara im leaving

She said taking her phone and Marang got out of Cole's arms

and she wiped her tears.

Marang: ummm why?

Richie: say what you said to my face!

He said walking towards Dineo and Cole quickly got up.

Cole: what's going on

Richie: stay out of this man!

Dineo: I said le marete a go shoshobana or keng wa belaela (I said your wrinkled balls or are you doubting your hearing abilities)

Marang: Dineo!

Richard rushed to Dineo and grabbed her by her neck and Cole quickly got between them.

Cole: Richard no!

Dineo: o tshwara nna byalo Richards (is that how you touch me Richard)

She said with her fist clenched ready for a fight.

Marang: Dineo didimala! (Dineo keep quiet)

She pleaded with her.

Richard: o tla nnyela Dineo wankutlwa o tla nnyella! (you'll shit yourself Dineo you hear me o tla nnyella! (you'll shit yourself Dineo you hear me you'll shit yourself!)

He said pointing at her.

Dineo: lwena o tla nnyela...I see o nagana gore ke Mmabatho nyana wa gao neh nna ke tla go thuba nko ka feish

Richard....ke tla o tlhakantscha le badimo ba ko geno....a ke tsube nyaope nna ke tla o bontsha masepa Richard

oskantlwaela blaen (you'll shit yourself too....i see you think im your Mmabatho I'll break your nose with a fist

Richard....I'll make you meet your ancestors.....i don't smoke Nyaope(drug) I'll show you shit Richard don't take me lightly)

Cole: DINEO!

She kept quiet still looking at Richard who looked deadly angry.

Cole: Richie take a walk!

Richard didn't move.

Cole: I SAID TAKE A WALK MAN!

Richard clicked his tongue and he pointed at Dineo.

Richard: wena....

Dineo gave him a nasty look and he walked away and Cole looked at Dineo and he clicked his tongue and grabbed Marang's hand.

Cole: you.....calm yourself down

He walked away with Marang and Dineo sat down and she tried to calm herself down and once she was calm tears ran down her cheeks....she was overwhelmed by different emotions but it was mostly hurt.

Cole: you ok?

Marang nodded and he kissed her forehead and pulled her closer and held her and she rested her head on his chest and wrapped her arms around his waist.

Marang: was he going to hurt her?

Cole sighed they were standing at the back veranda as the sun was setting.

Cole: I don't know but what I know is Richie is a prince and he grew up being respected and for Dineo to talk to him like that....

He shook his head.

Marang: well that's Dineo for you her defense mechanism is her sharp tongue

Cole: mmmmh I figured....but don't worry they gonna fuck and make up

She raised her head.

Marang: he's married Cole and Dineo doesn't sleep with married men

Cole: trust me she wont help it they love each other and there's nothing that will make them to stay away from each other

He said smiling and Marang frowned.

Marang: what about his wife

Cole: the day you meet her you'll understand why I don't give a fuck about her

He rested her head back on his chest.

Cole: like I said before don't get involved cause you'll end up hating Richard while she forgives him.... their love is forbidden but knowing Richard he won't let her go just like that

She didn't say anything she just listened to Cole's heart beat and she sighed and after some time Cole spoke.

Cole: he won't do anything to you ntokazi

She raised her head and looked at him with a frown.

Cole: trust me he wont

Marang: im scared Cole

Cole: with me around nothing should scare you ntokazi

She sighed and rested her head again.

Marang: he...he sounded angry

Cole: and that shouldn't bother you I'll handle him while you focus on yourself ok

She nodded.

Cole: good

He held her tight.

Richard walked in the lounge and found Dineo staring into space and he went and stood in front of her she looked up at him and he stretched his hand out to her and she looked at his hand.

Richie: let's go

Dineo frowned.

Dineo: go where?

Richie: don't ask me questions Dineo take my hand and let's go

She sighed.

Dineo: if you're going to beat me up then know that koko waka wa loya (my grandmother is a witch)

Richard kept on looking at her with a straight face.

Dineo: jeez fine

She took his hand and he pulled her up and he pulled her upstairs....they got upstairs and he locked the door and started taking off his shirt.

Richie: do you know what my father taught me about the one that will own my heart

She just looked at him with a frown on her face then she spoke as she saw him taking off the rest of his clothes.

Dineo: what are you doing?

Richie: he taught me to never lay a hand on a woman especially the one I love and today he would have been disappointed in me if Cole didn't stop me from choking the life out of you

He said ignoring her and she swallowed hard looking scared.

Richie: he always tells me the only way to punish your

stubborn and disrespectful woman is to fuck her hard until she sincerely apologizes and learns to respect me as her man She gasped looking at him as he stood there with his dick hardening.

Richie: get up!

She slowly got up she was now scared of him cause he had a bone chilling look on his face she has never seen before and it just terrified her.

Richie: aren't you gonna tell me to fuck off...huh?

She didn't say anything she just fixed her shirt looking down with her heart beating fast.

Richie: look at me when im talking to you Dineo!

He said with a firm tone and she looked up at him.

Richie: take off your clothes!

Dineo: huh?

She said with an innocent look on her face.

Richie: I said take off your clothes!

He said with a firm tone.

Dineo: Richard we talked about.....

Richie: I said take off your clothes Dineo I didn't say open your hosepipe!

He interrupted her and she shut her mouth looking scared.

Richie: don't make me take another step closer to you now!

Her heart started beating faster and she slowly took off her clothes and was left only with her bra and thong.

Richie: do you see me with my underwear on

She breathed out and she took them off.

Dineo: Richard don't do this please

Richie: turn around

Dineo: Rich....

Richie: now!

She turned with her heart beating fast and she then felt his hands on her waist and she could feel his hard dick poking her....he then kissed her neck and she moaned softly.

Dineo: Richie....

He then bend her upper body on the bed roughly and spread her legs.

Richie: you think im your mate huh?

He said now rubbing her clit from the back and she moaned.

Dineo: mmmh ooh gosh Richie...

Richie: I asked you a question Dineo!

She moaned and he stopped and he grabbed her wig and it immediately came off and he threw it on the floor and he also pulled off her cap and threw it away then he grabbed her natural hair tight pulling her head backwards and she winced.

Dineo: ahhh Richard wa mpolaya (you are hurting me)

Richie: when I ask you questions you answer wankutlwa!
(you hear me)

He said tightening his grip.

Dineo: ouch

He pulled her hair hard and she screamed.

Dineo: Richard wa nkgobatsa! (Richard you're hurting me)

Richie: what did I just say to you!

Dineo: ok ok ummm you asked if im you mate

Richie: good now answer me!

Dineo: no...no you're not

He then let her hair go and he grabbed his dick and positioned himself then he pushed himself in roughly and she screamed.

Richie: you swear at me any how you like huh?

He said pulling out and slamming into her again and she

screamed again.

Dineo: Richie....

Richie: you talk to me anyhow you like too Dineo heh?

He pulled half of it out and he slammed into her again and she screamed.

Richie: you fucken disrespected me Dineo more especially in front of your friend and Cole!

He said shouting at her.

Dineo: im sorry Richard...im sorry

She said with a breaking voice and he pulled out and he pulled her head back and whispered to her ear.

Richie: ooh no my love you haven't started to be sorry yet by the time im done with you you'll never disrespect me again He then rubbed his wet dick on her ass hole up and down a couple of time.

Dineo: Richie please don't...im still a virgin on that hole

She pleaded with him.

Richie: good but don't worry I'll try and be gentle just because I love you cause if I didn't I would tear this virgin ass up

He then slid in her and she gasped and clenched her jaws taking in all the pain while he groaned.

Dineo: ooh Gosh ooh Gosh

Richie: fuck....that feels good my love

OUTSIDE

Cole: let's go in its getting too cold out here

He said rubbing her upper arms and he kissed her forehead

and they went inside and closed the sliding door then they heard screaming upstairs.

Dineo: OOH GOSHYESSS.... FUCK YEAH...OOOH SHITTT!

She screamed out loud.

Richie: AAH FUCK...YES BABY MOVED THAT ASS

Then he kept quiet a bit.

Cole: we should get the hell out of here now

He said grabbing his car keys and Marang's hand and they walked to the door

Marang: ooh my God are they.....ummm

She said with a shocked face.

Richie: OOH SHIT.... OOH SHIT....FUCK MAN DINEO!

Then both Richard and Dineo screamed at the same time just as Cole was closing the door behind him.

Cole: nx he owes me another house

INSERT..... 09

.
. .
.

Cole: you ok

She nodded and breathed out.

Marang: what was he doing to her the way she was screaming gosh I hope she's ok

Cole laughed and she looked at him with a cute frown on her face.

Marang: this is not funny Cole

He continued to laugh.

Cole: it is actually

Marang: im worried here and wena you're laughing

He held her hand and brought it to his mouth and kissed the back of it.

Cole: relax she's ok they were just having some rough sex that's all

She gasped and looked out of the window and she pulled her hand from his grip and he looked at her briefly before he concentrated on the road.

Cole: what is it

Marang: nothing

She said with a low tone.

Cole: don't do that ntokazi you know I hate it when you do that

She sighed.

Marang: is...is rough sex enjoyable....i mean Mazwi was...ummm rough and you were rough as well and I didn't enjoy it.....that's why im worried about her

Cole kept quiet clenching his jaws he wasn't ready to talk about this...ever since he took her in he's been feeling guilty about their first time together...he cleared his throat.

Cole: first of all im sorry about what I did to you I thought you're like the girls I used to fuck they always flirted with me and when I told them we should go upstairs they would just like that and they never complained so I figured you're one of them...im sorry ntokazi

She swallowed hard still looking outside the window.

Marang: I bled for days

Cole sighed and he parked on the side of the road and he looked down.

Cole: im sorry ntokazi I wanted to stop but I couldn't...the moment I felt how tight you were I knew you weren't like all those girls but I just couldn't stop that's why I didn't even last long....look I know our first time together was horrible for you and im sorry ntokazi if only i could turn the hands of time but I cant

She chuckled bitterly.

Marang: you even threw money at me like im some prostitute

Cole sighed and he looked at her.

Cole: im sorry....i know I made you feel cheap but that wasn't my intention.... we just met at the wrong place and the wrong time Marang I was going through some things and I just wanted to release

Marang: its ok can we just go back im sure they are done by now

Cole looked at her.

Cole: you mad at me

She shook her head.

Cole: look at me

She did slowly.

Cole: im sorry I hurt you and made you feel cheap....you're not cheap and you'll never be in fact you're beautiful and kind and sexy and....

Then he cleared his throat and he smirked looking forward.

Cole: lets just go buy ice cream at Macdonald's and some takeaways and we'll go back home

She sighed.

Marang: ok

Cole: so we good?

She nodded.

Cole: you know I want you to say it

Marang: yeah we're cool

Cole: good

He started the car and they drove off...soon they parked outside MacD and he opened his door and got out and he went to open the door for Marang.

Marang: I'll wait in the car

Cole: not happening...come lets go

Marang: Cole...

Cole: how long are you gonna be afraid to show your face in public ntokazi

Marang: until I die

Cole gave her a warning look and she sighed.

Marang: fine

She got out of the car and they went inside.

Marang: tell me why we didn't just do a drive thru

Cole: cause im saving petrol

Marang: really now Cole

He chuckled....they got inside and stood on the line with Cole holding Marang from behind....the line moved and Marang caught some girls looking at her they whispered and giggled looking at her and she swallowed looking away it was clear they were gossiping about her.... she turned and looked at Cole.

Marang: can I go wait in the car

Cole: no...just ignore them

She sighed and looked forward.... then Cole bend and kissed her cheek and he whispered in her ear.

Cole: what did I say about stupid people who try to get at you?

She sighed.

Marang: fuck them

Cole: good

The moved with the line until it was their turn to buy and Cole did and they went to wait for their order by the chairs....Cole sat down and he pulled Marang to sit on his lap.

Marang: there are other chairs you know

Cole: I know I just want to feel your ass on my lap

Her eyes popped out and she looked at him.

Cole: what?

He said with a smirk on his face and she just smiled shaking her head then she saw the two ladies walking to them.

Girl1: hey sorry to interrupt but are you Marang Mazwi's ex who cried rape after he dumped you

They laughed and Marang huffed then she sighed.

Cole: what's your name?

They looked at him.

Cole: hey you mnyamane (blackie) im talking to you

The girl frowned looking at Cole.

Cole: and you with big eyes as if o segwagwa (you're a frog) what's your name

They both looked at Cole with their mouth's hanging.

Cole: what did you just say to Marang?

Girl1: ummm we...

Cole: ummm we what?

Girl2: look ok this bitch just ruined our girl's marriage by lying against her man

Cole made Marang to stand up and he also got up and he looked at the girls with a scary look on his face.

Cole: wena mnyamane (you blackie) you should be searching for a blesser to fund you to go do skin lightening and wena froggy you should be home doing frog jumps to lose all that

weight instead of standing there talking rubbish to a girl who was sexually violated and almost burned alive by a psychotic spoilt brat who thinks the world owes him something
People gasped giving the ladies nasty looks and Marang just looked down.

Girl1: well we think....

Cole: VOETSEK!

He roared and they stood there looking scared.

Cole: now get the fuck out of my face before I lose my cool and you start picking your ugly teeth one by one on the fucken floor

They looked at him still looking scared.

Cole: and before I forget always remember you are also women and the same shit that happened to her may happen to you or one of your family members and if that comes to pass remember to call them bitches too...now fuck off from here you deranged little rats

They looked around and people were still giving them nasty looks.

Lady1: I hate women like them nx

Lady2: women like them are a disgrace they should also get raped to feel what it's like to be violated nx

Lady3: nx they think rape its child play....as if they don't have vaginas...rubbish!

The two ladies who attacked Marang walked out with tears in their eyes with people yelling at them.

Cole: you ok

He asked Marang who was looking down cause people were giving her pity looks.

Marang: yeah....can I go wait in the car

She asked with a low tone.

Cole: no...now come

They sat down again and she buried her head on his shoulder and he held her tight and he could feel she was shaking.

Cole: relax ntokazi

Marang: I wanna go home Cole

He sighed.

Cole: its ok we'll go home after our order is called ok

She nodded...after a while their order was called and they took it and walked out.

They walked inside the house and it was quiet.

Cole: I guess they are done

They went to the lounge and put everything on top of the table and they sat down.

Cole: you good

She nodded and she took her ice cream and started eating....then they heard Richard groaning and Dineo calling out his name and cussing and Cole sighed.

Cole: nxa I can't believe this

He got up shaking his head.

Cole: take the food and let's go....we'll sleep at my apartment tonight cause I can see we won't get any sleep with those two horny rabbits fucking all night

Marang also got up and she sighed.

Marang: so he'll sleep here?

Cole: looks like it

He said as they walked to the door and they got out and Cole locked the door.

Marang: what about his wife

Cole: Richard loves Dineo Ntokazi and not even his crazy wife will make him stay away from her

They walked to the car and got in then Cole drove out.

Marang: why doesn't he just leave her if he loves Dineo?

Cole: he's royalty ntokazi and their marriage was arranged

Marang: oohh kana....shame I feel sorry for Dinny

Cole: if she's as tough as she looks then she'll be fine

Marang sighed and they drove in comfortable silence soon they drove into a complex and he drove in and parked.

Marang: ummm what are we doing here?

Cole: to sleep I have an apartment here

Marang: ooh

They got out and went in soon they were inside and Marang was mesmerized by the interior design.

Cole: you good?

She nodded and they sat down.

Cole: lets eat and go to bed tomorrow I have an early morning meeting

She nodded again and they ate while watching tv soon they were inside the bedroom.

Marang: ummm I'll use the couch since it's a one bedroom apartment

Cole: what for?

He said frowning at her.

Marang: ummm there's only one bed Cole

Cole: so?

She looked at him with her eyes popped out.

Cole: look I know what you've been through and I know you are not ready for anything sexual so relax I just want to cuddle

Marang: cu...cuddle?

Cole: Yeah will that be a problem

He said standing there with his hands in his pockets with a smirk on his face.

Cole: mmmmh?

Marang: ummm...i....we....

She sighed and she cleared her throat.

Marang: umm no

Cole: good cause I need my sleep so I can be fresh tomorrow morning and I can't let you sleep on the couch so we have to share the bed

Marang: sharing and cuddling are two different things

She said with a low voice walking to the door.

Cole: what was that?

He asked with an amused tone and Marang ignored him and she went to the bathroom.

Cole: usungo wami manje ntokazi igciwane lothando lwa se Gatsheni senlungibambe kakade (you're mine young-lady Gatsheni's love-bug virus has already caught me)

He chuckled and he started taking off his clothes and he was only left with his briefs and he got inside the covers and after a minute or so Marang walked in.

Marang: " ah ah this nigga is serious mos"

She thought.

Marang: " and he's not wearing a shirt or vest....what if he's naked...ooh God help me"

She continued to think.

Cole: is something wrong ntokazi

She cleared her throat.

Marang: I have nothing to wear I mean pjs or a shirt

Cole: the closet is that way you can choose a shirt

Marang: ohk

She went inside the closet and she looked for a shirt that will be big and long on her and she found a basketball shirt and she smiled and took off her clothes and wore it with her bra on and she went inside and Cole sighed disappointed.

Cole: couldn't you find a better shirt ntokazi

Marang: I like this one

She said getting inside the covers slowly and she lay far from Cole and he raised an eyebrow looking at her.

Marang: what?

Cole: I don't bite you know

She cleared her throat.

Marang: but you have something that bites

She said with almost a whisper but it was loud enough for Cole to hear her.

Cole: uthi I have what?

He said with a smile on his face.

Marang: ummm nothing

She said quickly and she fixed the covers and Cole chuckle shaking his head.

Cole: so I have something that bites huh?

Marang: I didn't say that

Cole: ooh yeah?

Marang: mmh

She said turning and facing away with her back facing Cole and he chuckled.

Marang: goodnight!

Then she felt him holding her from behind and she froze....he then pulled her closer and her heart started beating fast.

Cole: relax im a man of my word you're not ready even though I would give anything to bury my head between your thighs right now

He whispered to her ear and kissed her cheek and her breath hinged while her heart was beating way too fast.

Cole: relax ntokazi or you'll have a panic attack

She breathed out as if she's been holding in her breath for a while now and he held her closer and tight.

Cole: you good now?

She nodded slowly and Cole sighed.

Cole: turn around I want to see your face

She didn't move for a bit but then she finally turned but she didn't look at his face.

Cole: look at me

She did slowly.

Cole: do you trust me?

She nodded.

Cole: I want you to say it

She sighed.

Marang: yeah I do

Cole: good now please trust that I would never force myself on you no matter how turned on I am by you....if you tell me to stop I'll stop instantly right now I just want to hold you....to sleep with you in my arms ok

Marang: ok....i just....why?..... why don't I feel scared of your touch.....im supposed to feel uncomfortable when a man touches me but your touch....

She sighed and hid her face on his chest and he held her and kissed the top of her head.

Cole: cause this is your home ntokazi.....your safe place.... I believe Mazwi was a way for us to meet our worlds are far apart and even though we met that night but with the expression on your face after our session anyone would tell that you hated me for being rough like that and I hate

begging and apologizing in anyway so this wouldn't have happened

She looked up at him.

Cole: have you ever been deprived of air to breathe in anyway before

She looked down and nodded slowly.

Marang: Mazwi....he strangled me

He clenched his jaws then he breathed out and kissed her forehead.

Cole: how does it feel like....being deprived of air to breathe?

Marang: you literally can see your whole life flash before your eyes and you feel weak and powerless and all you want at that moment is for that person to let you go so you could breathe properly or for him/her to just make your death quick

Cole: look at me

She looked up and their eyes locked.

Cole: you are the air I breathe and every time im at work or anywhere else away from you I find it hard to breathe.....everyday im away the only time I breathe properly is when I enter through the main door of our home and see your face

She swallowed hard with her eyes popped out...he smiled and lowered his face and their lips touched and they kissed after some time they broke the kiss and he pulled her to his chest as he laid on his back and she rested her head on his hard chest.

Cole: ulale kahle (sleep tight)

She tried to say something back but words failed her...she didn't expect him to say that so she just closed her eyes.

#IFONLY

INSERT..... 10

.
. .

She opened her eyes when she felt his hands under the shirt she's wearing and she froze.

Cole: relax

He whispered to her and she swallowed hard....his hand went up on her back slowly and her breath hinged his hand kept on moving up slowly until it stopped on her bra hook and he unhooked it.

Cole: I heard is not wise to sleep with your bra on

He kissed her forehead and his warm hand moved down slowly sending shivers all over her body then his hand landed on her ass-cheek and he caressed it for some time then he squeezed it a bit and he moved to her thigh and pulled it up on and laid it on top of his hard dick then he kissed her forehead again....by this time Marang heart was beating fast and she was wet down there and she was even sweating a bit.

Cole: take it off ntokazi

She breathed out and took it off without taking her shirt off and she lay back on his chest and he held her tight and she closed her eyes.

Marang: "ooh God"

Is what she thought as her eyes where shut.....anyway the

following morning Marang woke up to something hard poking her butt and she moved then Cole pulled her closer again and he pushed his lower body pressing it to her body and he groaned.....she tried to move again but he tightened the grip around her.

Cole: don't move....please

He said and he moved his waist back then he pushed it forward and pressed himself on her butt again but hard this time.

Cole: fuck!

He said and kissed her shoulder.

Cole: I want you so bad ntokazi so fucken bad

He said pressing himself some more and he sighed while Marang just swallowed hard with her heart beating fast.

Cole: but I know you're not ready so....

He kissed her shoulder again and he let her lose and he got out of bed and she turned and looked at him and the bulge was bad that even his briefs were wet where the tip was.

Cole: I need to take care of this...I'll be back

He went to the bathroom and he opened the shower and he went to the toilet and he hand-serviced himself.

They were now back at the house and they found Dineo in the kitchen with a cup of coffee in front of her and her forehead on top of the counter.

Cole: let me go get ready for the meeting and don't worry about breakfast I'll eat something at the office

She nodded and he pushed her chin up and kissed her lips and looked into her eyes for some time then he let her go and went upstairs and she just stood there astonished of the way things have turned in the last 24hrs until Dineo cleared her throat.

Dineo: mmmh what was that?

Marang: ummm

She said moving to make herself some coffee.

Marang: what?

Dineo chuckled.

Dineo: don't play dumb Marang I saw the kiss and the way he looked at you.....wait why are you coming in now where were you two?

Marang sighed.

Marang: at his apartment and nothing happened

Dineo: ooh please

Marang: yes really and we only slept there because of you and Richard "Mr married man"

Dineo: sambora tuu (don't bore me please)

She said rolling her eyes.

Marang: entlek what did he do to you you were busy screaming and stuff

Dineo rolled her eyes.

Dineo: ne re etsa dilo tsa batho ba bagolo (we were doing grown up things)

Marang: you do realize he's married right?

Dineo: you do realize baeCole is Mazwi "your ex's" uncle right

Marang showed her the middle finger and Dineo looked at her shocked and she clapped her hands together once.

Dineo: so lerete la gae le monate to a point mo eleng gore o kgona le go etsa bofuck you? (so his dick is so good that now you can even show me the fuck you sign)

Marang looked at Dineo shocked.

Marang: DINEO!

Dineo: what.... it's just a simple question

Marang: we didn't have sex geez

Dineo: heh....a re geez (she's saying geez)

She said shouting and clapping her hands together.

Marang: bathong! will you just stop...please!

Dineo: fine so if you didn't fuck then what did you do

Cole: nothing that is any of your business

He said going to Marang and he stood in front of her looking down to her and she looked up.

Dineo: mxm

She said and drank her coffee.

Cole: I'll call you during the day ok

She nodded.

Cole: and no lazing around....you gonna use today to study remember you're writing in a few days' time

She nodded again and he kissed her forehead and looked into her eyes.

Cole: call me or Richard if you need anything

Dineo: why my man....you her man so she'll call you

Cole turned and looked at her with an eyebrow raised.

Cole: well the last time I checked he's not yours Dee...he's actually Mmabatho's

Dineo's face fell and she frowned looking at him.

Marang: that's not nice Cole

She said with a frown on her face.

Cole: Dee is not as fragile as you ntokazi she can retaliate any moment now.....just wait and listen

Dineo: fuck you Cole

Cole chuckled.

Cole: see I told you

He perked her lips and looked into her eyes for some time then he turned and walked then he stopped and turned.

Cole: he may legally be Mmabatho's man but you own his heart...take pride in that you crazy woman

Dineo smiled at him.

Cole: and you and "your man" owe me a new house

Then he walked out and Dineo laughed while Marang smiled shaking her head.

Dineo: lucky son of a bitch....ne ke le ready go mmitisa ramarete (I was ready to call him Mr dickhead)

The both laughed then she slowly got up and winced in pain.

Dineo: nx I own his heart my black ass that nigga ripped kuku ya ka apart (my pussy apart)

Marang laughed as she made breakfast for them.

Marang: where is he?

Dineo: oho mxm....he left ka bo 3 in the morning and he hasn't called as yet....well that's if he calls

She said walking to the kettle to boil water.

Marang: you really like the guy neh

Dineo sighed.

Dineo: o sa re like eehh....my sister already ke ko love stage mxm (you're busy saying like...my sister already im in the love stage mxm)

Marang: ao mara shem mntase

She said hugging her and Dineo winced in pain.

Dineo: ey careful man Marang

Marang: keng? (what)

Dineo: dai moeskond ompontshitse mmaka wa sfebe last night eish my whole body hurts (that bastard showed me my whore of a mother last night eish my whole body hurts)

Marang: bathong Dineo did you just call your mother that She asked shocked.

Dineo: ke sfebe vele o jele ke a married man and she gave

birth to sfebeline nyana.....its like I took the ranks from her and nna ka fetella I upped the ranks and ka ja ke a prince mmmmh a king in waiting and my child yena o ja ke the president himself... (yeah she's a whore she was fucked by a married man and she gave birth to a little whore.....its like I took the ranks from her and I went overboard I upped the ranks and I fucked a prince mmmmh a king in waiting and with my girl child she'll fuck the president himself)

Marang busted out with laughter.

Dineo: levels mogirl....levels.....from rramamina nyana wa foromane ko maeneng to a prince and my daughter o lata the president himself...levels (levels girlfriend....levels...from a snorty foreman from the mines to a prince and my daughter will go for the president...levels)

They laughed.

He walked inside the room and he stopped by the door and Cole smirked at him.

Mazwi: ehh vader take me back....i don't wanna talk to this backstabbing bastard

The guard pushed him in forcefully to a point that he almost fell but he regained his balance.

Guard: sit!

Mazwi looked at him and sat down with a bit of attitude plastered on his face and he looked at his uncle Cole.

Mazwi: I take it he's on your payroll huh

Cole: that's a serious accusation boy boy....be careful.... I'll leave and go home to my beautiful and kindhearted Marang while you go back with him to your cell and anything can

happen from here to your cell

Mazwi clenched his jaws.

Mazwi: so how does it feel eating my left overs huh Cole

Cole chuckled.

Cole: from what I know she dumped you so you are her left overs and don't think just because you raped her and she's damaged and shit.....uh uh

He shook his head.

Cole: she's not..... she's tight as fuck if you know what I mean and her lips mmmh

Mazwi: fuck you Cole you hear me fuck you....no wonder gogo loves my father more than you cause she knows she gave birth to a useless piece of shit

Cole laughed.

Cole: and I care about your gogo because?

Mazwi: I hate you unyangizwa I hate you and you're gonna pay for going after my woman and for turning against me....Marang is mine.....MINE!

Cole: uyislima if you think I ever cared about your weak and useless ass Mazwi.... and Marang is mine now and there's nothing you can do about it....you can insult her threaten her and all but at the end of the day she's mine

Mazwi: FUCK YOU!

He said banging the table hard looking angry.

Cole: you don't wanna mess with me boy threaten her and all but at the end of the day she's mine

Mazwi: FUCK YOU!

He said banging the table hard looking angry.

Cole: you don't wanna mess with me boy I have your future in my hands and call Marang or even Dineo again and I'll make sure the evidence against you about Shanice's death

lands in Shanice' father's hands so play nice or it will rain cats and dogs for you boy

Mazwi swallowed hard.

Cole: Marang is mine now and its better if you forget about her for your sake

Mazwi smiled coldly looking at him.

Mazwi: you think you have won neh

Cole: I don't count my chickens before they hatch boy you should know that about me by now

Mazwi: well "uncle" don't celebrate just yet im not yet sentenced and Marang is not yet your wife and Shanice father is now alive so what im trying to say is anything can happen from now until im sentenced and that's if im sentenced

Cole chuckled.

Cole: I guess the battle lines have been drawn

He said standing up still chuckling.

Cole: and I think it's high time you meet The Ghost

Mazwi: and who's that....one of your useless friends

He said chuckling too.

Cole: ask around and you'll find out

He walked to the door and stopped.

Cole: I hope you catch some sleep tonight

He said and whistled walking out.

Mazwi: what do you mean by that?

Cole was gone.

Mazwi: WHAT DO YOU MEAN BY THAT YOU BASTARD!

Guard: ey voetsek a se mo mmao mo jou moerskond...keep quiet! (ey piss off this is not your mother's place you bastard....keep quiet!)

Mazwi kept quiet and the guard roughly took him out of the

room and to his cell.

Mazwi: how much is he paying you?

Guard: I hate rapists so he doesn't have to pay me anything

Mazwi: what happened to innocent until proven guilty?

Guard: that rubbish im sure happens ko mmao but eseng mo

(to your mother not here)....you messed with The Ghost aka

Spoko mathambo so sleep with one eye opened

He laughed walking away and Mazwi swallowed hard and he

held on to the cold bars.

Guy1: and wena cheese boy o chunneng go kwatisa Spoko

mathambo? (and you cheese boy what did you do to piss off

The Ghost)

Mazwi ignored him.

Guy2: and ke utlwile ba re ke a board member ya di

28s....heh poi o mo masepeng so assomblief sa ova le nna a

ke batle ba re ke bra ya gao and ka bodisiwa ka default (and I

heard he's a board member of the 28 gang....hey boy you are

in deep shit so please don't talk to me cause they may think

im your friend and I end up getting killed by default)

Guy3: QUIET!

They all kept quiet and moved to the corner looking scared as

he got up and slowly walked to Mazwi.

Guy3: so cheese boy mo o kwatisitse Spoko mathambo (so

cheese boy here pissed off The Ghost)

Mazwi: look man I don't want trouble

The guy punched him hard on his face and he hit the cell bars

with his back with his right hand on his face.

Guy3: ke rile ova jou moerskond? (did I say talk you bastard?

)

Mazwi: no im sorry...im sorry

He begged looking scared.

Guy3: o sa bolela jou hond!(you're still talking you dog)
He said and punched him on his stomach and Mazwi fell down on the cold floor holding his stomach groaning with pain.

Guy3: o tseya tseyana le The Ghost wena jou takalani? (you're taking on The Ghost you fool?)

Mazwi just coughed and groaned in pain.

Guy3: o chunne jaive e groot blaen cheese boy..... ao jaje gore Spoko Mathambo ke mang or e re ke re ke eng neh....o denka ekare ke motho fela nje neh well e re ke go chaele cheese boy....o everywhen (you messed up bad cheese boy....you don't know who The Ghost is or let me say what he is huh.....you think he's just a person huh well let me tell you cheese boy.....he's everywhen)

Guy2: everywhere grootman e seng everywhen (everywhere big man not everywhen)

Grootman: VOETSEK...O MASTER YA CORRECTIONS NOU JOU DAMN IT! (piss off....are you a master of corrections now damn it!)

Guy2: so...sorry groot man...sorry

Grootman: voetsek a re ye etsa frog jump since o phapha go tshwana le sgwagwa (piss off....now do a frog jump since you are too forward like a frog)

Guy2: ahhh groot man harde....

Grootman: NOU! (now!)

The guy started doing frog jumps and "groot man" as they call him kicked Mazwi again.

Grootman: a re ye ka mangwele cheese boy (on your knees cheese boy)

Mazwi groaned and he kicked him again....harder this time and Mazwi cried out.

Grootman: ke rile on your nails cheese boy! (I said on your knees cheese boy)

Guy1 wanted to correct him but stopped himself and he continued to stand in the corner of the room quiet.....anyway Mazwi slowly sat up and he got on his knees.

Grootman: good boy now a re ye shapa Raetsho wa rena wa ko Legodimong before Spoko Mathambo a fitlha ke ra yena lesilo (good boy now do the Our father who art in Heaven before The Ghost comes)

Mazwi: wh...what?

The guy slapped him hard on his face and Mazwi cried out loud.

Grootman: pray jou fokon shit....pray (pray you fucken shit...pray)

Mazwi: ok....ok...Baba wethu osezulwini...

Grootman punched him hard on his face and Mazwi cried with blood coming out of his mouth.

Guy3: ke rile Raetsho wa rena wa ko Legodimong not masepa ao (I said Our Father who art in Heaven not that shit)

Mazwi: please man I don't know the Lord's Prayer in Setswana please

Grootman punched him again and Mazwi fell down flat on the floor crying.

Grootman: up...up cheese boy

Guy2: grootman a ke sa kgona....harde man...harde bosso ya dibosso (big man I can't do it anymore...im sorry man....im sorry boss)

He said clearly tired and in pain.

Grootman: shap mara onkolota di kwae (ok but you owe me cigarettes)

Guy2: sho...sho.... grootman (ok... ok)

Then he sat down rubbing his thighs.....then grootman grabbed Mazwi with his shirt and he made him stand up and spoke with his stinking mouth right on Mazwi's face.

Grootman: ke emetse fela Spoko Mathambo a mphe the going head and o nna sfebe saka cheese boy....ko go kheila sebono boy plus ke utlwile ba re o rata forcenyana mmmmh....oe tseya ka nkane (im waiting for The Ghost to give me the go ahead and you gonna be my bitch cheese boy....im going to tear your ass up boy plus I heard you love a bit of force mmmmh....you take it by force)

Mazwi just cried looking away trying not to vomit on this guy's face because of the rotten smell coming out of his mouth.

LATER DURING THE DAY

Vuyi: ooh my God what happened to you my boy...who did this to you?

She said to Mazwi in a hysterically tone as he slowly walked in and he slowly sat down and started crying.

Vuyi: ooh my baby....what did they do to you

She said with a breaking voice.

Mazwi: ma you need to get me out of here....please get me out of here...please

He said crying and Vuyiswa wiped her falling tears.

Vuyi: who did this to you?

Mazwi: someone I think Cole paid

Vuyi: what!

Guard: hey keep it down!

He said with a stern voice and Vuyiswa gave him a disgusted

look and she clicked her tongue.

Vuyi: heh Qophelo doesn't know me....that bastard thing doesn't know me!

Mazwi: they gonna do something to me tonight ma....please do something the guy....the guy said he's waiting for conformation from someone named The Ghost and he will make me his bitch tonight

He said with a breaking voice and the guard held a laugh when he heard that.

Vuyi: what?..... not my son....not my son!

She said looking angry.

Vuyi: let me go and see if they can't move you to another police holding cell....let me go make some calls.....its gonna be ok baby just hang in there for me

She said getting up.

Vuyi: I'll be back ok

Mazwi nodded slowly and she walked out clicking her tongue when she passed the guard.

Vuyi: useless....just fucken useless

Then she walked away and the guard roughly pulled Mazwi up.

Guard: remember The Ghost has eyes and ears everywhere.....there's nowhere to run or hide cheese boy.....the best way now is to end it

He made the hanging sign.

Guard: before it all starts.....even mommy won't save you
He laughed as he escorted him back to his cell with Mazwi shaking with fear.

Cole's phone rang as he was busy with a man who manages one of his clubs and he got bored instantly as he saw who was calling him but he answered anyway and the manager walked away giving him some privacy.

Cole: Vuyiswa

Vuyi: you son of a bitch....how dare you pay useless pieces of shits to torture my son.....who the fuck do you think you are Qophelo

She said fuming with anger.

Cole: is that why you called me

Vuyi: uyinja Qophelo....umghodoyi wenja nxa! (you are a dog Qophelo a useless dog)

Cole chuckled.

Cole: are you done ranting some of us have actual businesses to run....we are not gold diggers like you

Vuyi: I won't rest until you and that damaged whore pay for what you did and still doing to my son uyandiva (you hear me)

Cole: that's all you know to run your mouth....well it should be a lesson to you to always know who you open your legs for not everyone is as they seem....you may have slept with the devil himself and you don't even know it as long as Vuyiswa gets fucked and blessed with money then to hell with who she might be fucking right

Vuyi: fuck you Qophelo and what the hell do you mean by that?

Cole: don't ever call me and stay the fuck away from Marang or The Ghost will visit you too sooner than he intend to NX Then he dropped the call looking angry and he blocked her numbers and dialed Marang's numbers.

Marang: hey

Cole closed his eyes and he breathed out as if he's been hold it in for some time.

Marang: hello....Cole....hey are you there?

Cole: yeah I just wanted to hear your voice to calm down.....go back to studying I'll see you later

Then he ended the call and cleared his throat then he called the manager back.

#IFONLY

INSERT..... 11

.
. .

Mazwi: ma tell me they are about to move me somewhere else please

Vuyiswa swallowed hard and she looked down.

Mazwi: Ma?

Vuyi: ndiyaxolisa Mazwi (im sorry Mazwi)....i tried baby kodwa (but) they all dismissed me

She said with a low voice.

Mazwi: what...no no no....i told you im not safe in that cell Ma how can you disappoint me like this

Vuyi: Mazwi ndizamile torho (I tried)

Mazwi: YOU DIDN'T TRY ENOUGH OK....YOU DIDN'T TRY ENOUGH AND WHAT ABOUT DAD CANT HE TALK TO SOMEONE SO I GET THE HELL OUT OF THAT CELL!

He said shouting.

Guard: hey!!

He warned him and Mazwi clicked his tongue.

Vuyi: look your father also tried to call his contacts but they couldn't help him....apparently they can't betray Cole so....

Mazwi: what?

Vuyi: that bastard has more influence than I anticipated.... no one wants to help us

Mazwi rubbed his head roughly.

Mazwi: they gonna kill me ma...if not they gonna force themselves on me tonight....please do something I swear I won't survive it if I get raped please ma

Vuyiswa swallowed hard looking at his son desperately begging her.

Vuyi: andiyazi into enokuyenza kwakhona Mazwi (I don't know what to do again Mazwi)....i tried everything even your father tried everything but its like uCole told everyone not to help us....i even sent a complaint to the station commander and im still waiting for his reply but we both know I won't get an answer from him today

Mazwi just put his head on top of the table and he sobbed.

Mazwi: why does Cole hate me so much....what did I do to him huh...what?

Vuyiswa wiped her tears with the back of her hand.

Vuyi: I can't believe Cole would do this to me....i can't believe he would let my only son go to jail all because of that bitch

Mazwi: so this is about Marang.... they are really fucking?

He said raising his head and Vuyiswa nodded with a nasty look on her face.

Vuyi: he's even living with her

Mazwi: what?

She nodded and clicked her tongue.

Mazwi: why would Marang do this to me....my own fucken

uncle!

Vuyi: mxm and she had the nerve to report you just because you had some rough sex with her...rubbish!

Mazwi: so that day he came with his friend and he dragged me away like that he was..... he was the one that fucked her

Vuyi: I swear that girl is a witch....im sure utyisiwe uQophelo umtyisile loo mfolo (im sure she bewitched Qophelo she bewitched him that witch) he can't turn on his family just like that

Mazwi didn't say anything for a bit.

Mazwi: nah Marang is not like that....im sure Cole knew I was dating her and he wanted her for himself

Vuyi: I don't agree.... Qophelo would never go for a thing like her he likes classy women not boring and plain stupid girls....like I said that girl fed him love potion nx

Mazwi: not Marang ma I know her

Vuyi: did you ever think she'll get you arrested or even sleep with your uncle

Mazwi kept quiet.

Vuyi: that girl is dangerous my son and I fear for Cole cause im sure he doesn't even know who he's sleeping with

Mazwi: well that is not my main concern now....i can't go back to that cell ma you need to do something....just pay the night duty guard to protect me and im sure I'll get bail tomorrow

Vuyiswa sighed.

Vuyi: I'll see what to do baby I promise

Mazwi: good cause if you fail to get me out of that cell and they rape me I swear I'll never forgive you

He got up and walked to the door and Vuyiswa sighed.

Vuyi: fuck you Cole nx....and by the time im done with that

little slut of yours you'll come begging me for forgiveness
She said to herself.

AT COLE'S OFFICE

Cole was busy with paper work when the door opened and his brother walked in looking angry.

Zakhele: how could you Qophelo....how could you do this to my son your fucken nephew!

Cole sat back and he looked at Zakhele with a raised eyebrow.

Cole: what did I do to your son?

Zakhele: don't play dumb with me ok....i know you told all the contacts you know I have to not help Mazwi

Cole chuckled.

Cole: you mean the contacts I helped you acquire?

Zakhele chuckled.

Zakhele: you're a piece of shit you know that

Cole: nah im the whole shit not just a piece bro

Zakhele walked closer to the table pointing at him.

Zakhele: you son of a b....

Zakhele: he didn't finish what he wanted to say and he looked at Cole with an angry look on his face.

Cole: finish it....son of a bitch right

Zakhele didn't say anything he just looked at him breathing hard.

Cole: well you're right about that....i am a son of a bitch called Lindiwe

Zakhele: you think you're the shit right

Cole: I don't think so I know so

Zakhele chuckled.

Zakhele: well guess what.....your fucken arrogance is what Ma never showed you any love and why we are not close and why....

Cole: ooh shut it!

He interrupted him.

Cole: ucabanga unguthi ngiyakhathalela uma uLindiwe engithanda noma cha (you think I care if Lindiwe loves me or not)....i don't cause im not a mama's boy and gogo's love was enough to fill the void I had growing up to having a mother that treat you differently

He said standing up and Zakhele kept quiet.

Cole: and wena umdala ungaka Zakhele usa khuluma ngo "my mother's love" (at your age Zakhele you're still talking about "my mother's love").... mihlola (I cant believe this)

Zakhele: why huh?

Cole: why what?

Zakhele: why did you do that to my son?

Cole: I didn't force your son to rape an innocent girl and almost burn her alive

Zakhele: you know what I mean Qophelo

Cole: I hate rapists Zakhele and you know that

Zakhele: he's your nephew Qophelo...your fucken nephew!

Cole: how sure are you that he is?

Zakhele looked at him with a frown.

Zakhele: what do you mean by that?

Cole: ngiyazbuzela nje (im just asking)..... how sure are you he is?

Zakhele: what are you implying Qophelo

Cole: nothing.... just that some guy once claimed Mazwi as his

when Vuyiswa was still pregnant with him

Zakhele: and we did DNA test on Mazwi and the results showed that he's mine!

He said with an angry frown on his face while Cole was cool as a cucumber.

Cole: but she's the one that recommended the doctor

He said that and raised an eyebrow looking at Zakhele.

Zakhele: STOP OK...STOP! I SEE WHAT YOU'RE TRYING TO DO AND IT WONT WORK!

Cole chuckled.

Cole: look man if ukukhulisa umtwana womunye indoda (if to raise another man's child) that your wife once fucked while you were engaged is your thing then cool so let's drop the topic

Zakhele stood there not knowing what to say and he looked at Cole breathing hard.

Cole: imagine raising another man's child and on thee other hand you neglected your own blood twins...nc nc nc

He shook his head.

Zakhele: entlek you think im weak neh

Cole: wrong little bro.....you're not weak you just don't have a back bone and you care more about what your wife and mother think about you.....look at this Marang and Mazwi shit you have three little girls but you're here supporting a rapist and on top of it you don't even know who your girls hang out with or if they are safe where they are

Zakhele: you will not guilt trip me for supporting my son

Cole.....first of all you don't fucken know how its like to watch your son being escorted by the police as he cried for you to not let them take him cause you don't fucken have a child!

Cole: I WOULD IF THAT BITCH DIDN'T ABORT MY CHILD!

Zakhele chuckled.

Zakhele: I see...so this is all about Vuyiswa right

Cole: ooh please man...just don't

Zakhele: it is.....you still angry at her and you still want her
angithi (right)

Cole looked at Zakhele and he laughed out loud until he
calmed down.

Cole: me want Vuyiswa....eeh mfowethu ungazongihlekisa
please (don't make me laugh)

He sat down.

Zakhele: yes.... and it if not that then why the fuck are you
still hang up on her huh....why do you care about hurting
Mazwi kangaka (this much) and why do you suddenly wants
to help some random bitch over your own blood

Cole: a random bitch unyoko uyangizwa! (is your mother you
hear me)

He said with an angry look on his face.

Zakhele: uthini?

Cole: you fucken heard me!

He roared and Zakhele chuckled not believing what he just
heard.

Zakhele: did you just insult uMa Qophelo

Cole gave him a death stare.

Cole: uyabona wena there's no hope for you none
whatsoever....uzohlala ungu mama's boy (you'll always be a
mama's boy).... and for the fucken record that jezebel of
yours angimfuni in fact uyanginyanyisa nje (I don't want her
in fact she makes me sick) and I've rather eat shit than want
her back into my life.... I think God no okhokho (ancestors)
saved me by making her fall and chose you imagine waking
up with that thing next to me for the fucken rest of my life.....

so little bro do me a favour and uphumphele la (get out of here) before shit gets real!

He said with a threatening tone that made Zakhele to have chills run down his spine.

Zakhele: you're kicking me out of your office Qophelo because of ikhekhe nje (a mere pussy)

Cole: yebo ikhekhe elimnandi hai that graveyard your wife has and futhi im sure linuka igazi lomntwana wambulala and lied about it (yes a tasty pussy and not that graveyard your wife has and also im sure it smells of the blood of that unborn baby she killed and lied about it)

Zakhele: don't talk about my wife like that....you can say any shit to me and about me but not about my wife!

Cole: then you shouldn't have come here....now leave Zakhele with your pride still intact

Zakhele looked at Cole with an angry look on his face and he clicked his tongue and walked out slamming the door on his way out.

Cole: weak ass motherfucker nx

AT SOME RESTAURANT

Dineo convinced Marang that they should take a break from studying and go out for lunch and she agreed cause her mind was tired from all the studying they did so going out to refresh their minds was what they needed.

Marang: ok now im worried

Dineo frowned looking at her.

Dineo: worried about what

Marang: you....you're too quiet Dineo and you have that "hurt" look on your face

Dineo sighed.

Dineo: Richard hasn't called

Marang sighed too.

Marang: wena did you call him

She shook her head no.

Marang: why not

Dineo: I told him I cant continue to fuck a married man and maybe he took me seriously and he decided to stay away from me

Marang: took you seriously?....Dineo I thought you had a rule that is against you sleeping or dating a married man

Dineo: you won't understand ok o sale ngwana man Marang (you're still a child)

Marang looked at her shocked and Dineo laughed then

Marang joined her.

Marang: ke sa le ngwana? (im still a child?)

Dineo: eish a se nna ke stress....eish sa nyesa yho...shem se mpontsha masepa (its not me its stress....its messing me up.....shame its showing me flames)

Marang laughed.

Marang: shame askies ngwanapapa

Dineo: ya ne Richard ke moloi shem (Richard is a wizard shame)....the last time I fell in love like this for a guy it was with Collins

Marang smiled.

Marang: eish kana.....yeeer that guy loved you Dineo....i remember he used to do anything for you

Dineo: then mmae wa moloi happened nx (his witch of a mother happened nx)

Marang: atleast you own an apartment and a car so she can go to hell

They laughed.

Dineo: you know sometimes I wonder if he'll ever come back in the country

Marang: mmmmh I wonder too

Dineo: maybe he's married to some Zambian chick and ba ne le ngwana (they have a child)

Marang: yeah maybe

Then Dineo's phone rang and she frowned cause she didn't recognize the numbers but she answered anyway.

Dineo: hello

Voice: so you are the whore that is cheating with my husband huh

Dineo: askies?

Voice: you heard me you stupid bitch....now listen here and listen good stay the....

Dineo interrupted her.

Dineo: hei hei hei bona mo wena..... oskare lenyalo le go bontsha mmao wa tlo nnyela wankutlwa(hey hey hey look here..... just because your marriage is showing you flames doesn't mean you should come and shit on me)

Voice: STAY THE HELL AWAY FROM MY MAN!

Dineo: o sa batla go nnyela assomblief ke tshwere ke tsa ka so I don't need your nonsense ...and le gona o bolela ka tonki e bareng ke mang before re tlwaelana blaen (don't piss me off please im dealing with my own things so I don't need your nonsense.... and which donkey are you talking about before we step on each other toes)

Voice: you know im talking about Richard so oseke wang actela wangkutlwa (so stop with your acting)

Dineo chuckled.

Dineo: bona mogul kuku ya gao le marete a Richard and call me ever again and ke tlo ntshetsa stress mo wena wankutlwa nx fokon shit (look here girl fuck you and Richard and call me ever again and I'll take out all my stress on you nx you fucken shit)

Then she dropped the call and clicked her tongue again then she found Marang looking at her shocked.

Dineo: keng e kare o bonetse moloi so (why do you look shocked)

Marang: was that?

Dineo sighed and she nodded then she dialed Richard's numbers and he didn't pick up.....she tried again and this time he answered.

Richard: my love

Dineo: bona mo wena tonki ke wena.....stay the hell away from me and o botse sfebonyana se bareng ke mosadi wa gao gore if she ever calls me again ke tlo mmontsha gore ke mang wankutlwa (look here you donkey....stay away from me and tell that bitch you call your wife that if she ever calls me again I'll show her who I am you hear me)

Richard: heh?

Dineo: wa bona wena Richard you are a weak ass bastard and from now on stay the hell away from me and ke go utlwe ompitsa o re Dineo Dineo ke tlo go roga ka mmao wa se tshepe nx (and if I hear you saying Dineo Dineo I'll insult you with your mother and you won't believe it nx)

Then she dropped the call and clicked her tongue.

Marang: wow

Dineo: I swear satan is testing me

Marang: mmmmh and too much

She said holding her smile.

Dineo: nx

Then her phone rang again and she dropped the call and she blocked his numbers.....then Marang's phone rang.

Marang: ummm its him

Dineo: give it to me

She did and Dineo answered.

Dineo: what?

Richard: Dineo?

Dineo: o batlang? (what do you want)

Richard: where are you?

Dineo: nare o susu (are you deaf) these days I said stay away from me!

Richard: look I don't know how Mmabatho got your numbers but don't worry I'll handle her just....

She interrupted him.

Dineo: Richard weeeh I said stay away from me....concentrate on your wife and leave me alone...I don't want drama in my life please so leave me the hell alone

Richard: that will never happen and you fucken know it!

Dineo: fine.....I see you think im kidding right then ke tlo ithuta boloi ka wena (I'll practice witchcraft using you)

Richard: what the hell do you mean by that!

Dineo: I'll go look for muti that will make you stay away from me nx

Richard: just stop acting crazy and tell me where the hell you are.....you know what its fine I'll find you

Then he dropped the call.

Dineo: ka nnete satan wangleka shem (im telling you satan is testing me)

INSERT..... 12

.
. .
.

Dineo: let's go

She said standing up

Marang: why?

Dineo: tonki e bareng ke Richard is on his way here (that donkey called Richard is on his way here)

Marang sighed.

Marang: ok let's go

Marang paid and they left....soon they arrived at Cole's house and they went in.

Marang: I hope Richard won't punish you again for calling him tonki (a donkey)

Dineo: a ka nnyela this time (I'll deal with him this time)

Marang laughed.

Marang: eish let's get back to studying gape tomorrow we're writing so I need to have an early night

Dineo: me too even though im sure tonki ele (that donkey) will bother me mxm

Marang laughed.

Marang: ai wena le tonki ya gao (you and your donkey)

They both laughed..... soon a car drove in and Dineo went to peep out of the window and she saw Richard getting out of the car wearing a perfectly tailored suit looking yummy and she bit her lower lip then she sighed and went to sit down.

Marang: is it him?

She nodded then soon the door opened and he walked in closing the door behind him.

Richie: ladies

Marang: hey Richie

Dineo just kept quiet ignoring him and he stood there looking at her with his hands inside his pockets with a serious look on his face then Marang cleared her throat standing up.

Marang: ummm I'll give you two some privacy

Dineo: sit down Mara im sure abuti mo (this brother here) is not here for me

Marang: ummm Dee you two need to talk bathong

Dineo: Marang I said nna fatshe tuu (sit down please) and lets continue with our studying....some of us are still chasing that degree while others ba na le di Masters le di Phd

Richard kept on looking at her and he wondered where she has been all his life.... he loved how she challenges him how she's raw like that and how she has a heart of gold underneath all that craziness.

Richie: don't mind her sweet Mara please excuse us

Marang: mmmmh

She quickly got up and went upstairs and Dineo looked at Richard with a bored look on her face with her arms folded across her chest.

Richie: you look cute with that look on your face you know

Dineo: mbore gape Richard (bore me again Richard)

He chuckled and he took off his hands inside his pockets and a visible bulge was there.

Richie: do you see how hard you make me

She looked at it then she swallowed and frowned looking at his face.

Dineo: what do you want Richard?

Richie: you!

Dineo rolled her eyes and she looked away.

Richard: I don't know how she got your numbers but don't worry I'll handle her

He said sitting next to her.

Dineo: you have nothing to handle wena just stay away from me and all our problems will be solved

Richard: and we both know that will never happen Dee
Dineo sighed.

Dineo: Richard assomblief tog (Richard please)

Richard: Dineo I love you....you made me fall in love with you and now you want to leave me...no my love it doesn't work like that

Dineo: askies..... o re I made you to fall in love with me?

Richard: mmmmh

He said with a smirk on his face.

Dineo: first of all I don't remember ke ya ko mmalepona and ka yo nyakela moratisi Richard (going to a witchdoctor to look for a love potion Richard)

Richard laughed.

Dineo: im serious

Richard: who said im not serious too huh

She sighed.

Dineo: it will never work Richard so let's stop all this before someone gets really hurt please tog

Richard: bona agree to be my wife and all will be well

Dineo: never!

She said standing up.

Richard: just think about it please

Dineo: there's nothing to think about Richard....wena just stay away from me and I'll eventually get over you and I'll

meet someone and...

Richard: and that someone will die a slow painful and most cruel death

She looked at him with a frown.

Richard: I know im being selfish but we're talking about you here Dineo you stole my heart and that shit has never happened to me before so deal with it my love

She sighed and sat down.

Dineo: Richie understand please

Richard: you expect me to understand were you coming from but you fail to understand were im coming from

Dineo: you are married Richard and now your wife has my numbers and she called me insulting me....i don't want drama please....just stay away

He huffed.

Richard: and I told you I'll handle her and im not staying away

Dineo: Richard....

Richie: im not letting you go so its best you make peace with it....its either you become my side chick for the rest of our lives or you agree to be my second wife....your choice

Dineo: you call that a choice

She said with a pissed off tone.

Richard: you decided to be perfect and make me fall hard for you so suck it up and decide

He said getting up and he stood in front of her.

Richard: I have to go but we will talk later before you go to bed

She didn't say anything she just looked up at him and he pulled her up and she stood in front of him.

Richard: I love you Dineo and I really want to let you go because I believe you don't deserve to be in my fucked up life

but the heart wants what it wants....as much as Cole can't stay away from Marang even though he knows she's Mazwi's ex I also can't stay away from you even though im married...im sorry that's the way things are
She just looked away.

Richard: I didn't chose a wife for myself and I wasn't ready for marriage but I had to agree cause im a prince and shit but now im choosing you as my second wife and im ready to be married to you

Dineo: im not a princess Richie

He sighed and he pulled her closer and perked her lips.....she loves how good he always smell it just drives her crazy.

Richard: and im glad you aren't

Dineo: really now?

He chuckled.

Richard: im just telling you the truth.... so?

Dineo: my answer is still no

He chuckled shaking his head.

Richard: well motho waka trust me when I say you will be my wife and you even gonna give me beautiful kids

Dineo: kgopela o stope go borana le nna tuu (please stop boring me)

She said rolling her eyes and she got off his hold.

Richard: you rolling your big eyes at me now

He said with a raised eye brow and she didn't say anything.

Richard: you gonna pay for that just so you know

He kissed her forehead and he walked to the door and he opened it.

Dineo: im sure o nagana gore kao tshaba le pipi e monate mxm (im sure he thinks im afraid of him with a delicious dick)

Richard: I heard that le kuku e monate (with a delicious pussy)

He got out and closed the door chuckling while shaking his head....he loved her and every day the love he feels for her grows bigger and bigger.

Dineo: mxm fokon shit....im sure wa loya o (mxm fucken shit...im sure he's a wizard this one)

AT RICHARD AND MMABATHO'S HOUSE

They were sitting on the dining room table eating quietly well Richard was trying to eat but he hated sushi as for Mmabatho she was busy poking her food with a fork hitting it a bit loud on her plate and that was annoying Richard to the core..... the worst part is she cant even use chopsticks but she ordered sushi for supper.

Richard: will you stop that!

Mmabatho: stop what?

Richard: don't piss me off Mmabatho

She clicked her tongue and put her fork down and she looked at Richard with a face full of attitude.

Mmabatho: what's her name?

Richard: who?

Mmabatho: you fucken know who im talking about Tirelo.... the bitch that you are fucking im sure she fucken called you after I did

Richard chuckled and he looked at her.

Richard: well im not fucking any bitch so I don't know who you're talking about

Mmabatho: I FOUND HER NUMBERS ON YOU FUCKEN PHONE SO STOP LYING!

She said hitting the table with her open hand and Richard just looked at her with a straight look on his face trying by all means not to punch her on her face.

Mmabatho: YOU HAVE NO SHAME TIRELO.... YOU'RE A FUCKEN PRINCE FOR FUCKS SAKE NOW STOP ACTING LIKE A PEASANT YOU GO AROUND SLEEPING WITH USELESS WHORES BUSY SHAMING YOUR FAMILY NAME....DO YOU EVEN KNOW WHAT THAT WHORE SAID TO ME?

Richard: are you done disrespecting me or you still have other things to vomit out of your mouth!

He said getting angry.

Mmabatho: how could you do this to me Tirelo?

She said with a breaking voice.

Richard: do what huh....you fucken talk to me any fucken how you like and then you start shedding crocodile tears and im supposed to feel bad right?

She just looked at him with an emotional face.

Richard: if you're not disrespecting me you're treating mmeBoitshoko (house help) like shit and she's old enough to be your mother you make her wash you stupid dirty undies as if she's your mateeven in the bedroom you control everything how I should fuck you and where I should fuck and not forgetting how I should rub your clit how fast I should go or how slow I should go....how I should grab your breast and which style we should use that night.....you fucken want to control everything!

Mmabatho: are you indirectly calling me a control freak!

She said wiping her tears off.

Richard: that's what you are..... even now we're eating raw

fish wrapped around a half cooked rice....im an African man who loves pap and skop chakalaka dumbling and stew chicken feet tripe and many other African food not this rubbish but you don't care right

Mmabatho: you're a prince Tirelo only peasants eat that rubbish!

Richard chuckled.

Richard: really?

She didn't say anything.

Richard: mmeBoitshoko knows what I eat why didn't you leave her to cook my favorite food while you eat your rubbish food huh

Mmabatho: im your wife Tirelo and im supposed to be the one cooking for you and not that old hag

Richard: you call this nonsense food?....this half cooked rice wrapped with raw fish and this green shit that looks like some kind of poison and this black liquid that we dip in that looks like moroto wa tonki (a donkey's pee) and this pink shit that looks like the inside of a vagina.....you call this food!

She looked at him not believing that he just called her favorite dish all those names.

Richard: even in restaurants I've rather order a plate full of meat that to eat their fancy name dishes....bo chicken a la masepa mpsa (Chicken a la dogs shit) so I don't expect to eat this rubbish at home!

Mmabatho: you are ungrateful Richard.... an ungrateful bastard is what you are !

Richard: repeat what you just said and see what I'll do to you...I dare you!

He said getting up and she sat there not saying anything.

Richard: well since you don't have the balls to repeat what

you just said then listen here....from now on mmeBoitshoko will cook for me and you'll start washing your own damn undies....and since im married to a man who likes to control everything even how I should fuck her and which styles I should use then braMmabatho as you wish.... as long as I give BaKweneng an heir

Mmabatho: so I should tolerate being fucked missionary style even though I think it's boring useless and unsatisfying huh....i should fake moans even though im not enjoying is that it and as for my food well then my prince continue eating your peasant unhealthy food and gain weight and become like all those fat useless kings and as for Boitshoko well she's the maid and maids do what their employers tells them to do and if I say she should hand wash my expensive victoria secret lingerie then she will wash them

Richard chuckled shaking his head not believing what he was hearing.

Richard: well Mrs fake moaner i guess this is a better time to tell you that the same "bitch" that I know dealt with you accordingly on the phone when you called her is actual the woman I will take as my second wife and guess what...im in love with her in fact she owns my heart something you'll never do..... so continue being Queen Motlalepula Kweneng 10.0 in peace!

Queen Motlalepula Kweneng is his mother.

Mmabatho: WHAT?....OVER MY DEAD BODY!

Richard: and that can be arranged dear wife

Then he walked away with Mmabatho calling after him.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Marang was in bed and Cole hasn't come back home she waited for him until she fell asleep feeling sad even though he send her a message saying that she shouldn't wait for him cause he'll come home late...as for Dineo she left in the afternoon. Anyway Cole walked in wearing all black and he opened the covers and Marang jumped frightened.

Cole: hey relax ntokazi it's me

She breathed out relieved.

Marang: what are you doing...where are you taking me?

Cole: to our bedroom...from now on that's where you'll sleep and you should also move your clothes there

He said picking her up and he went to his bedroom and he put her under the covers gently and he perked her forehead.

Cole: let me go take a shower I'll be back ok

She nodded slowly and he went to the en-suit and she swallowed hard cause this was another step they are taking and she wasn't 100% sure she was ready...Anyway she pulled the covers to her neck and she turned and faced the other way and she breathed out....After some time Cole walked out of the en-suit with a towel wrapped around his waist and he took off the towel and put it on the side drawer and he got in bed behind Marang and he pulled her closer kissing her neck...she felt his dick poking her and her heart started beating fast.

Cole: did you miss me?

She just nodded trying to control her breathing.

Cole: im sure not as much as I missed you

He said kissing her neck again....then he gently turned her so

she lays on her back and he got between her legs and perked her lips and looked into her eyes for some time without saying anything.

Cole: what are you doing to me Marang mmmh?

Marang: huh?

She asked confused.

Cole: why am I feeling like this about you huh?

She kept quiet as she didn't know what to say to him.

Cole: im way older than you you know that right?

She nodded slowly.

Cole: and im Mazwi's uncle

She swallowed hard and bit her lower lip.

Cole: don't do that....don't bite your lower lip like that

He said with a sexy turned on voice and Marang stopped biting her lower lip and he chuckled.

Cole: I love how innocent you are ntokazi....it fucken turns me on

He said and kissed her lips for some time until they pulled out of the kiss and his hand went to her inner thighs and he pulled her right thigh high and he pushed his hard dick on her and it pressed on her nana on top of her pyjama short and her breath hinged while her underwear soaked wet instantly.

Cole: you like that?

He asked her and she didn't say anything then he pushed his dick again and a sweet low moan escaped her mouth and he smirked and he went down and he kissed her.....the kissing got heated and Cole pulled her upper body up and he took off her pyjama top and he felt her tense up and he whispered to her.

Cole: relax sthandwa sam...trust me I'll never hurt you or let anyone hurt you ok

She nodded and he sucked on her neck and a moan escaped her mouth and that made him happy cause that means she was enjoying what he was doing to her....he then went to her breasts and he sucked on them which made her moaned some more....he was caressing them squeezing them and sucking....after some time he went to her face and they kissed hungrily with him rubbing her nana on top of her pyjama pants...

He then took off her pyjama pants along with her soaking underwear and she froze and closed her legs coming to her senses.

Cole: open up ntokazi

Marang: i...Cole I cant do....this....i sorry im.... im not....i cant

He opened her legs and quickly got between them and he perked her lips.

Cole: do you trust me?

She didn't answer him.

Cole: ntokazi do you?

She nodded....their faces were closer and he was breathing heavily.

Cole: then trust that im not Mazwi and I'll never hurt you like that or any other way....like I told you you are the air I

breathe ntokazi

She just swallowed hard and he went down and ended up between her legs with his face staring at her pussy.

Cole: fuck it looks good and appetizing

He licked his lips.

Marang: Co...Cole

Cole: trust me sthandwa sam...trust me ok

He then went down and licked it and she moved cause it

tickled luckily she shaved two days back so she didn't have a bush down there..... he then used his tongue to nibble her clit and she moaned moving back but then Cole held her in place and started eating her pussy like a pro....

He went on and on until she squirted all over his face.....he massaged her clit as she continued squirting luckily he stopped muffing her as soon as she started screaming or else she would have squirted inside his mouth.

Cole: a squitter huh?

He said with a smile on his face and he reached for the towel and wiped his face and he went to her face and she was covering it with her hands....he removed them still with a smile on his face and perked her lips.

Cole: why are you hiding yourself huh

She didn't say anything she just bit her lower lip and he groaned.

Cole: what did I say about biting your lower lip ntokazi

She stopped quickly then she felt him rubbing his dick on her entrance and her heart started beating fast.

Cole: remember trust me and don't think about him ok

She nodded even though she wanted to tell him to stop cause she was scared.... Anyway he tried to push himself in and the way she was tight it was an impossible task.... as for Marang felt a bit of pain and she moved back a bit then Cole pulled her back in place and he went to her face and kissed her.

Cole: don't close your eyes ok

Marang: it hurts

She said with tears in her eyes.

Cole: it will at first but as time goes by the pain will subside

just trust me sthandwa sam ok

She nodded then he pushed his dick in again and she closed her eyes.

Cole: hey open your eyes and look at me

She did and she pushed in some more and only the tip went in then Cole perked her lips.

Cole: trust me ok....and don't concentrate on the pain ok

She nodded then he pushed half of it inside and she screamed a bit with pain.

Cole: look at me...hey look at me

She did and tears were now coming out.

Cole: should I stop?

She didn't reply for a bit then she shook her head no.

Cole: you sure?

She nodded then he perked her lips and wiped her tears.

Cole: ok now I want you to look into my eyes and don't concentrate on him or the pain but on me ok

She nodded then he pushed half of it in and he moved in a snail pace and she closed her eyes biting her lower lip while moaning.

Cole: look at me...don't close your eyes

He whispered to her and she opened her eyes and looked at him and he had an expression on his face she couldn't explain.

Cole: shit!.....ummm are you ok?

She nodded then he bend and kissed her lips still moving slowly with his dick slowly pushing in deeper.

Cole: fuck you're tight ntokazi

He said that and perked her lips...she was still moaning with a " im in pain" expression on her face.

Cole: move for me ntokazi....move underneath me

Marang: huh?

Cole: move your waist underneath me any how you can

She did too slowly but it wasn't in sync with Cole's moves.

Cole: let your moves be in sync with mine...come on you can do it sthandwa sam

She then found the sync and Cole groaned increasing his pace a little....he then bend and kissed her again.

Cole: concentrate on the synchronization and not the pain ok

Marang: mmmmh

She said moaning and he increased his pace a little more and he moaned....it took everything in him not to fuck her brains out with the way her pussy was tight and warm.

Cole: now grab my butt and squeeze it while still moving beneath me ntokazi

She did as told while moaning cause now she was feeling more of the pleasure and less of the pain and he groaned and increased his pace.

Cole: fuck.... grab it tighter

She did moaning and he increased his pace and he picked her leg up and she moaned louder as he went in and out of her....he was making sure he doesn't lose control at all....he then dropped her leg and he rested his body on top of hers .

Cole: open your legs wider

She did and he wrapped his arms around her and started moving which made her moan out loud....he started of slowly and he kept on increasing his pace as he kept on thrusting her....her moans sounded like a sweet melody on his ears and they were making him go crazy.

Cole: fuck moan louder sthandwa sam

He said and he went deeper and she moaned louder holding him tight as he began fucking her fast.

Cole: louder ntokazi!

He said giving her a hard fuck which drove Marang crazy.

Marang: fuck.....ooh Cole!

Cole: call my name again!

He said going faster.

Marang: COLE YESSSS!

Cole: LOUDER!

Marang: SHIT.....FUC.....OOOH SHIT COLE YESSSSS.....AHHHHH

She said as an orgasm hit her and Cole didn't stop cause his own happy ending wasn't that far....her body shook and Cole kept fucking her fast and hard with his hands still wrapped around her.

Marang: SHIT COLE....FUCK BABY....YES...YES....YES....YES
BABY....FUCK YES

She said losing her mind cause what she was feeling was pure pleasure but what she didn't know was that her dirty talk and moaning were driving Cole absolutely insane.....nigga went hard and then his hold around her got tighter and he went faster.

Cole: YEAH....AHHHH AH HH.... AH HH FUCK IM....IM CUMING
BABY....AHHHH AH HH AH HH SHITTTT..... FUCKKKKKK!

He shouted and he slammed into her hard and he offloaded his cumshot inside her pussy and he groaned still pushing in hard and hard and hard.

Cole: FUCK!

INSERT..... 13

.

.

.

They stayed like that for some time until Cole let go of her and he raise his head and he looked at her with a smile on his face.

Cole: you ok?

She nodded.

Cole: you know I want you to say it ntokazi

Marang: yeah

Cole: you sure?

Marang: yeah

He bends and kisses her lips chin the tip of her nose and her forehead.

Cole: your pussy is so good that it even made me scream like a bitch.... and im not even gonna start talking about your sweet moans.....damn even Mageba (nickname of his dick) is getting hard again

Marang shyly looked away while biting her lower lips.

Cole: don't do that or else the next round I'll leave your legs paralyzed

She stopped biting her lower lip and he chuckled and kissed her neck.

Cole: thank you for trusting me ok

She nodded...she was happy he was complimenting her pussy and all cause she thought after what Mazwi did to her her pussy was now loose and she was damaged inside her pussy walls....she thought Cole wasn't gonna enjoy her but the way he screamed and the way he's smiling and complimenting it makes her feel good....even though she wasn't ready for anything sexual with Cole or any other man but she's glad she let him go on cause those orgasms felt too damn good

and now even her body feels lighter.... Cole pulled out slowly and his dick was hard.

Cole: uyabona....i don't think siyolala at all tonight....

He said smirking while holding his thick and long hard dick licking his lips and she swallowed hard cause her pussy was super sore and nigga was speaking of them not sleeping tonight..... He took the towel and started cleaning the both of them up and he lay on his back and pulled her to him and he held her and kissed the top of her head.... As for Marang she wondered how that thing fit into her and if it didn't damage her uterus or any other organs inside.

Cole: you sure you're ok

Marang: ye...yeah

She wanted to ask why his dick was this big cause that size wasn't average at all but she knew she didn't have the guts to ask so she just kept quiet.

Cole: I wasn't rough right?

She shook her head no and he tightened his hold around her and kissed the top of her head again.

Cole: good cause we have three more round to go

Marang: askies?

She said raising her head shocked looking at him and Cole laughed.

Cole: khethile khethile ntokazi (there's no going back)....mina ngithanda ikhekhe sthandwa sam (I love pussy my love) and now that I have started I cant stop ngiyolidla lize likhale lithi pruu pruu pruu(im going to fuck it until it makes the pruu pruu pruu sound).... ngiyolishaya blaen (im gonna hit it good) to a point that it will cream inkomasi (sour milk) I'll fuck you in the kitchen the lounge the toilet the balcony the pool house inside the pool in the garage inside

the car in a parking lot in my office even in the laundry room....just everywhere nje

She swallowed hard.

Marang: you're kidding right?

Cole: angidlali ntokazi when it comes to ikhekhe lam (I don't play around when it comes to my cookie)..... and since lakho ikhekhe line icing sugar decorations and whatnots then yeses kuzonyiwa...

He whistled.

Cole: ngizolidla until likhulume lithi “ woah sengizwile Mageba.....hao baba iba nomusa bo ngiyakcela bandla”(im going to fuck it until it talks and says “ woah im good now Mageba (clan name).... daddy have mercy im begging please)

Marang couldn't hold herself she just busted out with laughter and Cole joined her.....that's what he wanted to see.... seeing her laughing like this just brought peace and content with his soul.

AT THE POLICE STATION

Mazwi was sleeping when he felt a hand covering his mouth he tried to fight but the person was stronger.....then he was dragged to floor then the person removed their hand and a hard punch landed on his face and he screamed covering his face....the next thing the person put his foot on Mazwi's chest and he removed his arms that were covering his face and held them with one hand while the other hand backslapped him and he cried like a small child begging him to stop....the next thing the person pulled a gun out and put it on his forehead and he indicated that he should keep quiet

and Mazwi just peed on himself shaking with fear the figure was wearing a ghost mask and he was wearing all black with black gloves....as for Mazwi his face was covered with blood and he had a broken nose....then the masked man looked at one of the cell mates and the guy walked to them shaking too he had a paper on his hand and he read from the paper.

Guy: “you...you shouldn’t have raped her he had a paper on his hand and he read from the paper.

Guy: “you...you shouldn’t have raped her the ghost hates rapists and any piece of shit that lays their hands on defenseless women and children. The ghost punishes the perpe....the perpetrators with the same crime they committed and since you raped that innocent girl beat her up and almost burned her to death then that will be your judgment

He continued.

Guy: “THE GHOST HAS RENDERED HIS JUDGMENT AND YOU ALL KNOW WHAT YOU NEED TO DO. MAKE SURE HE SCREAMS LIKE SHE DID MAKE SURE HE BEGS LIKE SHE DID AND MAKE SURE THE GHOST HEARS HIS SCREAMS FROM ACROSS THE PASSAGE OR HIS JUDGMENT WILL FALL ON ALL OF YOU IF YOU FAIL TO DO YOUR MISSION LASTLY DON’T KILL HIM THE GHOST HAS OTHER PLANS FOR HIM....ENJOY COMRADES!

SALUTE COMRADES OHOI! ”

Then he stepped back and Grootman walked closer.

Grootman: salute the envansable one....spoko mathambo....lesilo....bosso ya dibosso....wena ba reng boda wa re fosek julle fokon pupholes dit is nie my tyt man bana ba baloi....wena wa go tlhoka morithi....wena wa go tsena mo go sa tsenewing....salute my bass! (salute the invisible

one...the mighty ghost....boss amongst bosses.... you they said die and you said piss off you fucken assholes this is not my time you children of witches....you who doesn't have a shadow.... you who enters where people don't enter.....salute my boss!)

He did their salutation sign then Ghost walked out and he locked the cell and the lights went off.

Mazwi: please man....please don't do this...please I have money I can pay you...don't do this please

He said shaking with extreme fear then grootman kicked him on his face and his two front teeth fell on the floor.

Grootman: shut up the hell!

He meant to say "shut the hell up"anyway he looked at the other guys.

Grootman: a re yeng borotwe.....marago a shi ejang! (go ahead rats.....here is some ass now eat up!)

Mazwi: guys please....grootman please don't do this....im begging you....

He said crying.

Grootman: le nshiyeleng nyana..... jy weet gore moja morago ke Kgosi mos (leave some for me....you know they say he who eats last is a king)

Guys: sho sho grootman (yes yes big man)

They said moving toward Mazwi and they roughly took off his sneakers then his jean followed by his underwear with him screaming and begging them not to hurt him.....

He woke up screaming with his body visibly shaking.... He tried to raise his head but he felt pain and he groaned.....he looked around and he could see that he was on the floor he then started feeling pain all over his body then his hand went

to his lower body and he wasn't wearing anything and his ass hole was on fire....when he brought his hand back to his face cause he was also feeling extreme pain on his face too his hand was filed with blood.

Mazwi: no....no nooo so it's real...it wasn't a dream....ooh God no

He said crying and grootman laughed clapping his hands.

Grootman: yeeer o monate san.... bona le borotwe baka ba robetse monate byang ba kgotse blaen mara ge e le nna a ke so kgore van die one one so round nyana e one before ke slatIha wa bona (you taste good boy..... look even my rats a sleeping peacefully fully satisfied but as for me im not that full so one round before I go to sleep will do)

He got up and walked to Mazwi and he roughly made him lay on his stomach and he roughly slammed in his bloodied ass hole and Mazwi screamed out with extreme pain.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

The following morning around 6 she woke up to Cole eating her pussy up....she moaned jerking up and down cause it felt so damn good Cole just kept her in place slowly eating her pussy like it was some sort of a delicacy with her legs wide opened.

Marang: Co...Cole!

Cole: mmmmh

He said eating her up and Marang just lost her mind as an orgasm hit her out of the blue and she screamed as she jerked up and down squirting.

Cole: shit...I fucken love it when I make you squirt sthandwa sam

He kissed her pussy and he reached for the towel and he wiped his face and he got out of bed and pulled a drained Marang to the edge of the bed opening her legs wide and he positioned her properly as he stood next to the edge of the bed between her legs and he slid in her wet pussy and he looked up groaning from deep down his throat.

Cole: shit!

He then looked at her face and she was biting her bottom lip.

Cole: come here

He said with his deep voice pulling her up with his dick still inside her wet nana and he kissed her for some time then he put her back on her back and he held her waist and began moving back and forth slowly as they both moaned.

Cole: fuck....shit...your pussy is so damn good baby

He said as he moved increasing his pace while looking at his dick sliding in and out of Marang's nana.

Cole: fuck I love how your beautiful pussy is gripping around my dick ntokazi

He said still moving and as for Marang she was moaning not knowing what to do with herself.....then Cole started going fast and Marang's moans got louder.

Cole: fuck yeah...

He said fucking her good.... He went on and on then he stopped and pulled out then he went down and started eating her pussy up again and she screamed and mumbled things jerking up and down until she squirted and he chuckled kissed her nana and he told her to turn around and she did....he told her how he wants her to do the "ass up and chest down" position and she perfected it then he went

down and sucked on her clit from behind a few times with Marang moaning loud then he stopped and he positioned himself and slid in her.

Cole: fuck yeah that's it....shit!

Marang: gosh Cole...

Cole: yes baby

He said as he started moving in and out of her slowly with his hands holding her waist....

Cole: shit you're so fucken tight ntokazi yam

Marang: and you're big....ahhhh

She said and screamed and Cole chuckled.

Cole: my dick was made for your pussy.... look how perfectly it fits mmmm

He said still moving in and out of her and Marang's right hand went to her clit and she rubbed it moaning sweetly cause the way he was thrusting in and out her was making it tingle....Cole increased his pace faster and she continued to moan out loud while he groaned.....he then gave her a deep stroke pushing his dick deeper and she jumped moving forward screaming and Cole pulled her back.

Cole: where are you going ntokazi mmm

He said with a sexy voice.

Marang: shit....shit....ooh gosh....

She said as her body shook from another orgasm and she squirted on the bed.

Cole: yeah that's it

He then gave her another deep stroke and she screamed moving forward running from his dick and he pulled her back again.

Marang: shit baby you're in too deep

He gave her another deep stroke and she jumped screaming

and she squirted again.

Marang: GOSH....OOOH GOD...OOOH GOD

She said with her body shaking.

Cole: that's it.....fuck!

He said pulling out his dick and he slit it in again and he moved back and gave her another deep stroke and she screamed and she squirted again screaming as her body shook.

Marang: Cole...Cole...I can't take it anymore please....please baby

Cole: you can't take what sthandwa sam

Marang: please daddy I can't take it

And that "daddy" word drove Cole insane.

Cole: shit....say that again!

He said giving her fast deep strokes.

Marang: daddyyyy....

She screamed as another orgasm hit her and she squirted again then Cole kept going fast giving her those deep strokes chasing his own happy ending with Marang screaming her lungs out holding tight to the sheets until he reached it and he nutted in her groaning loud..... he pulled out and made her lay on the bed properly and he took the towel and cleaned both of them up and he got in bed and pulled her to him and she rested her head on his chest....he set the alarm for 8h30 since she was writing her exam at 12h00 midday and they fell asleep.....

He woke up to his phone ringing and it was Richard so he answered.

Cole: bafo

He said with a sleepy voice.

Richie: foza....wait are you still sleeping?

Cole: I took a nap man

Richie: you don't take naps even when you're sick man....what's wrong ndoda

He said worried.

Cole: I had a long night mfowethu.... there's nothing wrong

Richie: long night wenzani (doing what) cause you didn't even take an hour during your mission

Cole: I was satisfying my woman man....now zkhiphani (what's up)

Richie: wait...what do you mean satisfying your woman?

Cole: exactly that

Richard laughed.

Richie: o jele kuku neh (you ate the cookie)

He said laughing and Cole chuckled lazily.

Cole: mxm you know what im dropping this call

Richie: wait...wait.... anyway I called to tell you gore that boy is in hospital so his bail hearing is postponed

Cole: he's still alive?

Richie: yah mara yeses bamo kgeitsi marago those boys (yeah but they ripped his ass apart those boys)

Then he laughed and Cole smirked.

Cole: ehshap I'll see you later man

Richie: shap and say hi to sweet Mara

Cole: fosek!

Richard laughed and Cole dropped the call then he put the phone away and he turned and held Marang from the back pulling her closer and he kissed her neck.

The girls finished writing their exam and they headed to Cole's place since Marang was still super tired with her funny walk.... Dineo couldn't stop laughing at her funny walk.....Now they were chilling at Cole's house and the main reason for them to come to his house instead of going to Dineo's apartment was because Dineo wanted Cole's wine cause she knows he has the finest in his wine rack.

Marang: will you stop giving me that look I already feel bad ok

Dineo: what look and you feel bad for what?

Marang sighed.

Marang: that annoying naughty look you have on your face.....it's too soon for me to be sexually active Dineo.... what happened between Cole and I shouldn't have happened

Dineo: and why not huh....where is it written gore a rape survivor is forbidden from being sexually active for a certain period of time

Marang: you don't understand Dineo I didn't get flash backs or anything....yes it was painful at first but no flash backs no nothing....it just weird and it feels wrong....i should have been scared and told him to stop but I didn't and I didn't want him to.....that's not how im supposed to feel Dineo that's not how it's supposed to happen

Dineo: bona mo Marang some women would give anything to not have flash backs of their traumatizing experiences....they would give anything to let their men touch them or even make love to them without them having those flashbacks and wena you got that privilege and wa complainer

Marang didn't say anything.

Dineo: mntase its clear you and baeCole are into each other and one could even say le mo maratong (you're in love) so assomblief don't give msunu o ba reng ke Mazwi le mmae wa moloi that satisfaction ya gore he broke you (that cunt they call Mazwi and his witch of a mother the satisfaction of them thinking he broke you)....bona mo he didn't break you but he made you stronger and he made you experience true love....look at this house and now you can even afford to pay at the restaurant

Marang gave Dineo a bored look and Dineo laughed.

Dineo: its true haw

Marang: first of all this is NOT my house and secondly sambora tuu (don't bore me please)

Dineo laughed.

Dineo: it may not be your house but you're the madam haw

Marang just smiled shaking her head.

Dineo: mmmmh and look already Karma is dealing with Mazwi so wena live your life and let baeCole take care of you by servicing you the best way he knows how

Dineo laughed and Marang blushed then the doorbell rang.

Dineo: I'll get it since o tsamaya ekare o nale rash mo kukung (you walk like you have a rash on your pussy)

Marang: mxm im better wena you were worse

Dineo laughed going to the door.

Dineo: o ba tshabe banna ba di pipi the kgolo shem (fear men with huge dicks shame)

Marang laughed and Dineo opened the door and there stood Vuyiswa and her mother in law who looked angry.

Dineo: can I help you

Lindiwe pushed Dineo out of the way and they walked in clicking their tongues and they stopped when they saw

Marang.

Lindiwe: so its true....this witch is living here

Vuyi: I told you ma

Dineo: which witch are you talking about mo(here)

Lindiwe: wena thula (You keep quiet) im not talking to you!

Dineo: im sure you're not talking to me like that sgogwana (old woman)

Marang got up.

Vuyi: because of you my son is laying in a hospital bed
BROKEN!

She said shouting at Marang and Marang swallowed hard looking scared then Dineo went to stand next to Marang with a deadly frown on her face.

Dineo: bona mo wena your rapist son deserve what he got in fact he deserved more than what he got!

Lindiwe: shut up!

Dineo chuckled getting angry.

Vuyi: he deserved to be raped huh....do you fucken know what they did to him do you!

She said shouting looking angry.

Dineo: well they should have cut off his stupid dick too....bloody rapist!

Vuyiswa rushed to Dineo and jumped on her but Dineo was ready for her and they started fighting.....Marang grabbed Vuyiswa by her shirt ripping it apart trying to pulled her away from Dineo cause she was digging her nails deep inside Dineo's flesh on her upper arm then Vuyiswa turned and slapped Marang hard on her face and she fell on the couch.....as for Lindiwe she was busy cheering Vuyiswa on.

Dineo: ooh no you didn't you bitch!

She shouted jumping on Vuyiswa and she punched her on

her face and repeatedly hit her and kicking her as Vuyiswa was trying to block her then Dineo grabbed her by her neck and they fell on top of the table and she continued hit her....Marang got up from the couch and she reached for her phone and dialed Cole's number with tears running down her face...she was angry.

Cole: ntokazi

Then he heard shouting and things breaking.

Marang: come home now Cole!

Cole: what's going on there Marang?

Then Cole's mother snatched her phone and she threw it away with force and it landed on the tiled floor and the screen shattered and it immediately died.

Lindiwe: you want to break my family you little whore!.....what did you feed my son

She said slapping her over and over while Marang covered her face trying protect her face crying then Lindiwe grabbed her by her hair pulling her closer and as she was about to grab Marang's neck she pushed her hard and she landed on the back on the floor and she moaned in pain then Dineo got off a badly bruised Vuyiswa and she rushed to Marang.

Dineo: o mo laile moloi oo (serves this witch right)....you should've punched her too nx

She said breathing fire...she was angry.

Lindiwe: you're pushing me like that wena sfebe....you're pushing me like that in my own son's house!

Vuyiswa went to Lindiwe and she helped her up....Vuyiswa looked bad her wig was off her head and she was bleeding she had a cut on her upper lip where Dineo punched her and her left eye was slowly getting swollen.... Well Dineo also had scratches on her upper arm her cheek and she was bleeding

and also her wig was off but that was about it while Vuyiswa looked worse.

Vuyiswa: you think you're the it shit neh...well let me tell you ke sfebe ndin (you bitch) Cole is just using you cause he failed to protect his dead girlfriend who was gang raped....to him you're just another Shirley

Lindiwe just sat down cause her back hurt as hell and since her head hit the floor she started having a headache.

Dineo: SHUT UP WENA!

Vuyi: you are a nobody wena....a none entity.... you're just a pet project nje and when he's done with you he's gonna leave you high and dry

Dineo: ooh please....i heard about you being his ex....you're just jealous cause you ended up with a useless brother....you saying all this shit to Marang won't change how Cole feels about her

Marang's eyes popped out looking at Dineo.

Marang: her and Cole?

Dineo did the "damn it I shouldn't have " look.

Dineo: look he was gonna tell you

Vuyi: ooh he didn't tell you we used to date?....in fact I even once fell pregnant for him and unfortunately I lost the baby

Dineo: and you have no shame jumping from one brother to another sies....and don't lie bitch you fucken aborted the baby and lied that you miscarried

Vuyiswa swallowed cause she didn't expect her to know that.

Vuyi: well it doesn't change the fact that he loved me and he still does....in fact im sure he's punishing Mazwi cause he's still angry that I married his brother instead of him

Dineo laughed.

Marang: you're lying!

Vuyiswa laughed.

Vuyi: ooh really...then why don't you know about me and him or about Shirley huh....well let me answer that for you sweetie that's because you mean nothing to him....you're just a pet project....he's just going through stuff and soon.....

Dineo: ooh my God you're just pathetic and delusional.....

She said interrupting her and Lindiwe groaned with pain.

Lindiwe: you two witches get out of my son's house manje!

She said holding her back waist.

Dineo: we are not going anywhere wena....this is Cole's house and only he can tell us to leave

Lindiwe: ngithe phumani niphela emzini wendodana yam! (I said get the hell out of my son's house)

She said shouting.

Dineo: make us witch!

She said sitting down with a bitchy look on her face and she pulled Marang to sit down too.

Vuyi: yabona wena sfebe (you see bitch)

She said pointing at Marang.

Vuyi: you gonna pay for lying against my son....you gonna fucken pay and once im done with you heh...

She chuckled.

Dineo: ka bona feish ele a wa e utlwa pila neh (I see you didn't feel that fist like I thought you did) continue talking shit and you'll lose your teeth shem....continue

Marang: now I see where Mazwi got that " im entitled to everything" attitude

Dineo: you know Marang this deranged bitch and her monster in law are birds of the same feathers so don't mind them and as for wena sgogwana (old woman)

She said pointing at Lindiwe.

Dineo: im sure you killed your own husband the way o naleng pelo ya maboya ka teng and makoti wa gao yena ke abortion slay queen and ne a le busy a chenchadi pipi tsa bana ba gao e ka re ke fashion trend and you saw no problem with that the way o loyang ka teng (im sure you killed your own husband the way you are heartless and as for your daughter in law well she's an abortion slay queen and she was busy changing your son's dicks as if it's a new fashion trend and you saw no problem with it cause you're a witch) Lindiwe's face fell.

Lindiwe: uti I did what to my husband?

Dineo: ooh keng ke boletse sphiri (ooh did I just spill the beans)

Lindiwe: you know what its fine I'll throw you out myself.... this is my son's house....Vuyiswa help me take this trash out!

Dineo: take one more step closer to us and you'll pick your teeth one by one on the floor....try me....i'll rearrange you face like I did with your whore daughter in law....take one more step and you'll see ...I dare you!

Marang just sat there with her mind on everything Vuyiswa said.....she couldn't believe Cole never said anything about him dating Mazwi's mom and about Shirley but Dineo knows about it and she was sure Richard is the one that told her.....she felt small and it hurt cause she realized that Vuyiswa might be right about her meaning nothing to Cole that maybe she's his little pet project as she called her cause even though they made love last night he never said he loves her....."maybe she's right" is what she kept on ringing in her head until the door roughly opened and Richard walked in and when he saw the state the lounge was in he clenched his jaws looking angry....the blood on Dineo and her messy hair

and her slightly torn shirt poked something in him that shouldn't be poked.

INSERT..... 14

.
. .

Lindiwe: Thank God you're here my boy...these witc....

Richard interrupted him.

Richie: you two have 10 seconds to get the hell out!

He said pointing at Cole's mother and Vuyiswa and their eyes popped out.

Richie: I SAID 10 SECONDS!

He roared.

Vuyi: how dare you Richard....you have the nerve to tell mama here to get out of his son's house grah!

Richard: wena sfebe keep your fucken mouth shut cause if I start with you you'll leave this house traumatized

Vuyi: uthetha nami kanjani wena Richard (how dare you talk to me like that Richard)

Lindiwe: hey wena mfana ngithe thatha labathakathi and niphume niphela emzini wendodana yam (hey boy I said take these witches and get the hell out of my son's house)

Richard chuckled and he walked to Dineo.

Richard: you ok

He said still with an angry look on his face and she nodded then he looked at Marang who looked hurt.

Richard: Marang he's on his way ok....he was in a meeting

She didn't say anything she just looked down.

Dineo: she knows about him and serathane se sa sfebe nx (this useless bitch nx)

Richard: eish!

He sighed then he turned and went to Lindiwe and Vuyiswa and he grabbed Lindiwe's arm roughly pulling her up with Vuyiswa shouting that he should stop he also grabbed Vuyiswa's arm too and he dragged them both to the door and he pushed them outside and he slammed the door shut locking it leaving Marang and Dineo shocked to the core....he then went to take the medical aid kit and he sat next to Dineo.

Richard: let me see

She turned her face and he cleaned the bloodied scratch on her cheek and put on a plaster on it....he also cleaned the cut on her lower lip with Vuyiswa and Lindiwe banging on the door shouting.

Dineo: you know I can't believe those two they are blaming Marang for what happened to Mazwi as if she send those people to do that to him but they don't see anything wrong with what he did to her nx

Richard: all I know is they gonna pay for hurting you like this! He said with an angry voice.

Marang: im...im gonna.... go lay down a bit

She said getting up and Dineo also got up.

Dineo: it wasn't my place to tell you Mara.... Richard said Cole will tell you when the time is right

Marang didn't say anything.

Dineo: he loves you Marang and what Vuyiswa said is not true Cole loves you I can see it in his eyes

Richard: listen to your friend Marang....Cole loves you he might not say it to you but he does believe me

Marang wondered how Richard knew that Cole has never said the "L" word to her then she sighed cause it was obvious

they talk about everything.

Marang: Dineo I thought we never keep things from each other no matter what and you chose to keep Cole's secret just because your boyfriend said so I thought we got each other's backs Dineo and because of a man all that changed Dineo: that's not fair Marang you know I got your back....you were going through shit so I didn't wanna add more stress on you

She said hurt with her statement.

Richard: Marang don't...

Marang raised her hand indicating that he should stop.

Marang: its ok I understand anyway excuse me I need to lay down a bit....i have a headache

She walked upstairs with Dineo calling after her.

Richard: leave her baby....give her some time to calm down Dineo swallowed and she sat down.

Dineo: I should have told her Richie

Richard sighed and he sat next to her.

Richard: I asked you not to cause Cole was gonna tell her when the time was right my love

Dineo: she's angry at me I know it.... whenever she says "its ok i understand" even though you can clearly see that she doesn't that means she's hurt or angry..... it's her way of dismissing you or ending an argument

She sighed and bit her lower lip.

Richard pulled her closer and held her and she just sobbed.

Richard: hey come on she's just overwhelmed my love give her some time

Dineo continued to sob with Richard consoling her by now Lindiwe and Vuyiswa left the premises rushing to the hospital cause Lindiwe was in serious pain.

Marang opened her eyes when she felt someone holding her from the back as she slept and she could tell it was Cole by his hypnotic perfume....she tried to get out of his hold but he held her tight.

Marang: please let go I need to use the bathroom

He sighed and loosened the grip then she got out of the bed and went to the bathroom....after she was done doing her business in there she came out and found Cole sitting on a chair in front of a couch that is inside the bedroom.

Cole: come and sit so we can talk

She sighed and went to sit on the couch and they faced each other.

Cole: they gonna pay for what they did to you I promise you that ntokazi

He said looking at her now bruised cheek and she just looked down and he sighed.

Cole: Dee told me everything that happened and what Vuyiswa said

Marang: is it true?

Cole: some of it

Marang: which part?

He sat back.

Cole: that we once dated and that she fell pregnant but she ended up aborting the pregnancy

Marang: do you still lov...

She stopped herself from finishing the sentence and she looked down.

Cole: no but I once did love her a lot but she was a bit

ambitious and she loved money more than me...well more than anything

She swallowed hard.

Cole: ntokazi growing up I got mixed with the wrong crowd and I ended up in prison....i was what you'd call the black sheep of the family

He chuckled a bit.

Cole: I did shitty things some i regret them but some....well I don't..... One day I met Vuyiswa and fell for her instantly she made me want to change my life for the better but what I didn't know was she was just a gold digging bitch

Marang sighed and she sat back looking at him.

Cole: on the other hand my brother Zakhele had his life on the right track you know....he was what I would call a straight up guy a suit kinda guy nice apartment dope car and he had a decent job with a great salary while I was in and out of prison. I was part of a gang busy hustling and I dropped out of university so I guess when I introduced her to my family and she saw Zakhele she realized she was dating the wrong brother....Zakhele was who you'd respect while I was the guy you'd fear

Marang looked down and she played with her fingers.

Cole: our relationship changed from there on it was like I was forcing things with her you know we would break up and later make up our relationship became draining and toxic in a way....then one day she found out that she was pregnant I told her I'll do right by her but she kept on saying im not reliable and she's also not ready to be a mother and many other excuses she could think of to make me agree to her having an abortion but I wouldn't barge

He sighed and he rubbed his beard.

Cole: I pleaded with her to at least keep the baby and give birth then I'll take the baby and raise him or her and luckily she agreed then one morning....

He sighed with a frown on his face.

Cole: I got a call from her sister that she was bleeding and they rushed her to the hospital a night before and she lost the baby

Marang sighed emotionally looking at Cole.

Cole: It killed me ntokazi I swear I nearly lost my mind but then I had to be strong for her you know.... then she broke up with me blaming me for the "miscarriage"

He chuckled shaking his head.

Cole: and then boom three months later I bump into her friend and she dishes out Vuyiswa's dirty laundry apparently they had a fall out cause she caught Vuyiswa and he man fucking....she told me that Vuyiswa didn't miscarry my baby but she actually aborted two days before they called me about the supposed miscarriage

Marang: ooh my God

She said shocked.

Cole: I drove to her place wanting answers I was fuming with anger and all I wanted to hear her say was that the friend lied...that's all I wanted to hear her say but when I got there I.....

He chuckled again shaking his head.

Cole: I found Vuyiswa and my own brother fucking in her lounge

Marang looked at Cole with her eyes popped out and Cole chuckled shaking his head.

Cole: I nearly killed them both the only time I stopped is when I saw them not moving on the floor....they were both

covered in blood and passed out..... Well my brother didn't lay charges against me and he also convinced Vuyiswa not to lay charges against me too..... as for my mother the only time I stopped is when I saw them not moving on the floor....they were both covered in blood and passed out..... Well my brother didn't lay charges against me and he also convinced Vuyiswa not to lay charges against me too..... as for my mother well she took Zakhele's side saying Vuyiswa and I broke up so I should suck it up and let them be while my father just told me straight up that I should let it go and let them be because he believes that I dodged a bullet with Vuyiswa he didn't like her even today he's glad that I didn't fight for her Well I let them be and he was right cause she cheated on Zakhele and not once and now karma is dealing with both of them using their own son

Marang: wow!

She said still shocked then silence filled the room for a bit until Marang spoke.

Marang: what...what about Shirley?

Cole: what about her

He said with a sharp tone and a frown on his face.

Marang: did you help me because of what happened to her?

He closed his eyes a bit cause he doesn't like talking about her.... him talking about her opens up old wounds and he hates it.

Cole: is that what Vuyiswa told you?

Marang: answer my question please

She said looking at him.

Cole: ok your answer is yes

He said with a straight face and she swallowed hard cause that hurt.

Marang: wow

Cole: that's what you wanted to hear right?

Marang: so your ex was right im nothing but a pet project to you

Cole: do you think you are one Marang

She got up from the couch.

Cole: sit we're still talking!

Marang: im done talking

Cole: Marang!

He said warning her.

Marang: im done being your pet project Cole

Cole: did I say you're my pet project...did i?

Marang: then why did you help me huh.... why did you choose me over your family if im not a Shirley do over

Cole: shut up! don't you dare call her name you hear me....don't fucken use her name in vain cause you chose to believe what that useless bitch said.... you can say any shit you feel like saying but keep Shirley's name out of your fucken mouth you hear me!

He said with an angry voice pointing at her and she stood there scared and her eyes filled with tears...she swallowed hard and she blinked and that's when tears ran down her cheeks.....it was clear he still loved her and she was competing with a ghost.....she concluded that the reason why he has never told her he loved her was because his heart still belongs to his dead girlfriend.

Marang: im sorry and its ok I understand it will never happen again....i'll just..... go

She walked to the walk-in-closet and Cole sighed and he clenched his jaws.

Cole: Marang wait....

He said going after her and he stood by the door watching her as she packed her clothes.

Cole: wenzani? (what are you doing)

Marang: leaving....i shouldn't have stayed here in the first place

Cole: entlek yini ozama ukuyisho Marang(what are you trying to say Marang)..... so you gonna let Vuyiswa and my mother come between us njalo nje (just like that)

Marang: im just putting a stop to this pet project thing that is going on between you and I before I get hurt for real

Cole: pet pro.....

Then he chuckled shaking his head clearly pissed.

Cole: I hate begging Marang so if you want to leave its fine leave...I don't have time for games im too old for that shit uyangizwa (you hear me).....I have shown you that you mean a lot to me so if you believe Vuyiswa's lies over me showing you through my actions that you mean a lot to me then it's all good hamba nx (go)

He walked away and Marang sat down and she sobbed.

The following morning Marang was in the kitchen making breakfast while the house help was upstairs tidying up....she decided not to trouble Dineo last night about coming to pick her up and she was also having seconds thoughts about leaving but the fact that Cole didn't come back home last night just made her feel like leaving is the right thing to do.... she was now sitting on the barstools eating her breakfast when Cole walked in the kitchen he was still wearing yesterday's clothes...she swallowed hard and bit her lower

lip.

Cole: why are you still here....i thought you left last night
He said coldly and she felt like crying cause those words
broke her already bleeding heart.

Marang: im...im waiting for Dineo

She said with a lower voice.

Cole: don't forget to leave my house keys and black card
He said coldly and he took a bottle of water out of the fridge
and he walked out going upstairs and Marang sobbed
silently.

Dineo was now driving to her place with Marang on the
passenger seat with her head filled with many questions she
wondered what happened that made Marang to pack up and
leave....she looked briefly at her and she was staring out of
the window with a black face then she sighed.

Dineo: what happened Marang and don't tell me to wait until
we arrive home

Marang sighed.

Marang: he doesn't love me he still loves his dead girlfriend
and I just....i can't do this Dineo its better this way plus I
shouldn't be in a relationship to begin with its just too early

Dineo: im lost Marang I just...

She interrupted her.

Marang: just let it go Dee...it didn't work out and its ok....it
hurts but I'll get over it he was too old for me anyways

Dineo: no this is just bull Marang

Marang interrupted her again.

Marang: Dineo let it go I broke things off not the other way

around so let it go please

Dineo looked at her shocked....she was talking calmly and she wasn't even showing any emotion on her face and her tone was neutral nje.

Dineo: is it about Vuyiswa what she said?

Marang: please let it go it doesn't matter Cole and I are done and its ok...its really ok it hurts but I'll get over it please let it go

Dineo: Mara...

Marang: Dineo please im asking you to let it go....i don't wanna talk about this anymore please respect my wishes
She pleaded with her.

Dineo swallowed hard and she continued driving with a frown on her face she was worried now cause Marang was acting strangeshe was just too calm and emotionless for her liking cause the Marang she knows is an emotional wreck when she's hurt and her tone was just off.....

They arrived and went up to Dineo's apartment and Marang went to lay down and that gave Dineo a chance to call Richard.

Richie: my love

Dineo: hey ummm Richie what happened between Cole and Marang

Richard sighed.

Richie: I don't know love....Cole seems a bit off and he won't tell me what's wrong but I suspect his talk with Marang didn't go well

Dineo: she said they broke up

Richie: WHAT?

Dineo sighed emotionally.

Dineo: and Marang is acting weird Richie she has this look on

her face....she kept on saying “it hurts but she’ll get over it” and that she doesn’t wanna talk about it and I should respect her wishes

Richard sighed.

Richie: she said they broke up for real?

Dineo: it looks like it

Marang cleared her throat behind Dineo and Dineo jumped with fright.

Dineo: Jesus wa gafa Marang (are you crazy Marang) why would you sneak up on me like that!

Marang: can I talk to Richard... please

Dineo gave her a weird look because she still had that blank look on her face.

Dineo: ummm... yeah sure

She gave her the phone.

Richie: hello Dee are you still there?

Marang: hey its Marang

Richie: ooh hey you ok....Dineo just told me....

She interrupted him.

Marang: yeah im ok and I need to ask you something

Richie: umm ok

Marang: is it possible for me to drop the charges against Mazwi now

Dineo: WHAT? O RENG? (what did you just say)

She said looking at Marang like she’s crazy.

Richie: What? why would you want to do that Marang!
He asked shocked.

Marang: cause im tired...im tired Richard....im tired of all the hurt....im tired of not being loved....im tired of people looking at me differently...if it’s not my mother its Mazwi and his family and people on social media students at varsity and

now its C....just answer my question it is possible?

She said with a cracking voice but her face was blank and that freaked Dineo off some more.... then Dineo snatched her phone from her and she put it on her ear.

Dineo: SHE'S NOT DROPPING ANY CHARGES RICHARD AND THAT'S THAT!

She then dropped the call and looked at Marang who was staring into space and she swallowed emotionally.

Dineo: Mara what was all that....how can you even think of dropping dicharges against that monster

Marang: cause im tired Dineo....i can't do this anymore....i want it all to stop....im not strong enough Dineo I thought I was but im not...morwalo o wankimela Dineo wanhlola ga ke sa kgona (this baggage is too much for me Dineo its weighing me down I can't hold on anymore)

She said with tears running down her cheeks and Dineo's own tears ran down her cheeks too then her phone rang again...she let it ring and Marang went back to her bedroom while wiping her tears off and Dineo threw herself on the couch holding her chest.....she felt Marang's pain....she saw it all on her face for the first time since she was raped by Mazwi and now she wasn't just worried but she was also scared of what she might do to herself she wondered what happened between her and Cole for her to act like this ...He phone rang again and she answered.

Richie: Dineo what's going on....why did Marang say all that A sob left Dineo's mouth.

Richie: Dineo what's going on....why are you crying....talk to me baby what's going on

He said worried.

Dineo: She...She... I think Marang just had a mental

breakdown Richard....Im scared for her...what if...what if....
She said sobbing.

AT COLE'S OFFICE

He was in a bad mood that even his employees were walking on egg shells.... Richard walked back inside his office and Cole looked up once then he looked back to his laptop screen and he continued to type.

Cole: did you forget something?

He said without even looking at him.

Richard: what happened between you and Marang man

Cole: and I thought I told you I don't talk about it

Richard: she told Dineo you two broke up is that true

Cole: I don't remember telling you or anyone for that matter that me and her we are dating so stop interrogating me
assomblief

Richard chuckled clearly pissed.

Cole: entlek why are you all up in my business man heh...you don't see me sticking my nose in your business with you wife and side chick now why are you all up in there

He said with an angry tone.

Richard: voetsek!...."nyol up in your business" ya masepa.... o tla nnyela a ke Zakhele nna ke tla o kagola marete san (you'll shit yourself. im not Zakhele I'll chop off your dick)

Cole looked at Richard with a raised eyebrow and he chuckled.

Cole: wow now you sound like your foul mouth side chick.... keng otshetse ka bucket nou (did she pour "the love

potion” with a bucket now)

Richard: Voetsek!

Cole shook his head smirking and he went back to typing.

Richard: I asked you a question monna (man)

Cole: she talked about Shirley and you know I hate that shit now can we drop it

Richard sighed and he sat down.

Richard: Dineo thinks she’s having a mental breakdown or something like that...she’s worried man

Cole: she should call her therapist

He said dismissing him.

Richard: wow really now!

Cole stopped typing and he looked at Richard.

Cole: I did all I could for her man Mazwi is going to jail and im paying for her therapist in fact she’s alive today because of me I did my best for her so she’s not my problem anymore

Richard: you don’t mean that man

He kept quiet for a bit then he went back to typing.

Richard: what is it so bad about Shirley that ticked you off like this

Cole: let it go man....i don’t wanna talk about Shirley or Marang please.... nx I don’t even fucken know what I was thinking fucking a child

Richard sighed then his phone rang and he answered.

Richard: baby

Dineo: im in an ambulance...Marang she....she....i couldn’t feel her pulse when I found her Richard she....she...

Then she cried and Richard heard a voice saying “CLEAR” and a sound of a machine then the call got disconnected and Richard looked at Cole with his eyes popped out and he slowly got up.

Cole: what is it?

Richard: that was Dineo she said she's in an ambulance and.... she couldn't feel Marang's pulse and... I couldn't hear her clearly then.....

Cole sat there with his eyes popped out and his hands started shaking.

Richard: lets...let's hope we won't bury her too

He then rushed out and Cole grabbed his car keys and ran out of his office too.

INSERT..... 15

.
. .

Richard and Cole ran inside the hospital and they saw Dineo sitting down crying with blood on her shirt and her grey leggings she was even shaking...they rushed to her.

Richard: baby

She looked up and Richard sat next to her and pulled her closer and he held her as she cried a gut wrenching cry as for Cole he stood there staring at Dineo's bloodied grey leggings and shirt with his eyes popped out and his heart beating fast.

Richard: what happened Dee and what did the doctor say?

She was now sobbing with Richard still holding her.

Dineo: they...they are still busy with her

Richard: ok....now tell me what happened

She sniffed.

Dineo: she...she said she was going to take a bath and after some time I got worried that she wasn't coming out I knocked on the door and she wasn't answering so I let myself in and...and....

She cried.

Dineo: and...I found her inside the bathtub full of water and the water was red in colour....ii took her out and I saw that she cut her wrist....she wasn't responding Richie and I couldn't feel her pulse so I called an ambulance and I tried to resuscitate her until the paramedics arrive

Cole sat down and bend looking down and he put his hands on top of his head and his elbows on his thighs....his mind was all over the place then flashes of Shirley flooded his mind.....seeing her covered in bruises all over her face laying on the hospital bed after being gang raped to seeing her for the last time inside a coffin filled his mind and his hands started to shake....tears gushed out as he clenched his jaws.

Dineo: what...what did you say to her that pushed her to do this Cole?

She spoke after some time..... now Cole was now sitting back staring into space with his jaws clenched as they waited for the doctor.

Richard: baby now is not the time

She got off his hold and looked at Cole.

Dineo: yes it is....after their "talk" she changed so I want to know what he said to her that made her do this

Cole: so you gonna blame for something Marang did on her own

Dineo chuckled bitterly.

Richard: Cole don't

Cole: no I want to know!

Dineo: yes im fucken blaming you you piece of shit

Richard: Dineo!

Richard reprimanded her and Cole chuckled.

Cole: I should go before you end up being admitted here too

He got up and Dineo got up too and so did Richard.

Dineo: what did you just say?

He walked away.

Dineo: VELE GO YOU SON OF A BITCH NO WONDER SHIRLEY IS DEAD IM SURE YOU FUCKEN KILLED HER TOO BY ACTING LIKE A FUCKEN JERK LEMARETE!

Cole stopped walking and he turned slowly and the look on his face....yho!.

Richie: DINEO!

Dineo: KENG...KENG RICHARD? (what... what Richard?)

Cole: what did you just say!

Richie: Cole don't please...just walk away man

Dineo: you should listen to your friend and walk away for your own fucken good satane ke wena (you satan)

Cole walked to her and Richard stood between them.

Richie: Cole walk away now!

Cole: say what you said about Shirley to my face I fucken dare you!

He said with an angry voice and a deadly look on his face.

Richie: calm the fuck down Cole and walk away!

Dineo: im not afraid of you Cole im not Marang wankutlwa (you hear me).....you pretended to care about Marang and now that o mo jele (you fucked her) she's no use to you ankere (right)

Cole: warn this bitch of yours Richard...im not in the fucken mood to be entertaining her bullshit...warn her!

Dineo: a bitch ke mmao you fucken moerskond! (a bitch is your mother you fucken asshole)

Cole moved and before Richard can react Cole was already grabbing Dineo by her neck squeezing tight.

Richard: GET YOUR FUCKEN HANDS OFF HER COLE IM FUCKEN WARNING YOU!

He said pulling Cole's hand from her neck and Cole let her go and he pointed at a coughing Dineo looking mad-angry.

Cole: you're fucken lucky.... next time he won't be here to safe you nx!

Then he walked away looking angry.

Richard: are you ok

Dineo went to sit down holding her bruised and painful neck ignoring him and he went to sit next to her.

Richard: what was that all about Dineo?

Dineo: leave me alone Richard....just leave me the fuck alone!

Richard: WILL YOU STOP IT I GET IT YOU'RE SCARED AND ANGRY BUT STOP OK!

He said shouting at her and she sat there sulking then tears filled her eyes and a sob escaped her mouth.

Richard: eish don't cry babe...im sorry ok im sorry

Her hands started shaking as she thought about Marang and Richard held her.

Dineo: I can't lose her Richie I can't lose her

Richard: I know baby I know

He said holding her tight.

After what felt like decades for them they saw a doctor walking to them after a nurse showed him Marang's family.....Richard and Dineo got up quickly rushing to him.

Dineo: how is she Doctor...how's my sister
The doctor sighed.

Doctor: im sorry to say this bu....

Dineo screamed hysterically with her hands on top of her head.

Doctor: miss calm down and let me fini...

He didn't finish his sentence as he saw Dineo going down and luckily Richard caught her before she could hit the floor.

Dineo was now lying on the hospital bed with a drip on and Richard was sitting on a chair next to the bed holding her hand looking at her like she was a priceless jewel he couldn't believe what the doctor told him....His hand went to her stomach and he put it there and tears ran down his cheeks he then chuckled and he pulled his hand back and he wiped his tears off.

Richard: damn she's gonna freak out when I tell her....damn she's gonna kill me

He said to himself and he chuckled again he got up and kissed her lips then he went to stand by the window taking out his phone and he made a call.

Cole: yeah

Richard: you calm now

Cole kept quiet a bit.

Cole: did I do any damage to her neck

He said with a low tone and Richard sighed rubbing his beard.

Richie: her neck is a bit bruised

Cole sighed heavily.

Cole: im sorry man....im sorry I just lost it.... Shirley is a

sensitive topic and i.....

He sighed.

Cole: I'll also apologize to her....im sorry for man-handling your woman like that

Richard sighed.

Richie: what was that all about man you never act like that ever.....you're the only motherfucker I know that can control his anger

Cole sighed.

Cole: is...is Marang....

He said ignoring his question....he kept quiet a bit swallowing hard.

Cole: tell me she's o...

Richard interrupted him.

Richie: she's alive.... the doctor said she lost a lot of blood but she's gonna be ok but we both know she's far from being ok she just got lucky but next time she might not be

Cole sighed with relief.

Cole: there won't be a next time and I'll make sure of it

Richie: whoah....look man I think you should stay away from her man....you haven't found closure man and as long as you can't give Marang your all it won't work between you two

Cole: you don't get it man.... she's the air I breathe I can't function without her

Then they both kept quiet with Richard surprised that he said that...he knew he loved her in a way but for him to say that was a surprise.

Richard: ok....where are you now?

Cole: outside in the parking lot

Richie: outside where?

Cole: I didn't leave....i couldn't

Richard sighed.

Richie: come back inside so we can talk

Cole: is Dee with you so I can apologize to her

Richard sighed.

Richie: they admitted her like you said they will

Cole: wait did I hurt her that bad

He said worried.

Richie: no she fainted cause she misunderstood the doctor
and guess what.....she's pregnant

Cole: WHAT?

He asked shocked and Richard chuckled.

Richard: she's going to kill me man....ke tlile go tlhapaolwa ka
marete a me blaen im telling you

Cole chuckled and Richard told him Dineo's ward number and
they ended the call and he looked at Dineo with a smile on
his face.

Richie: fuck im going to be a father

He said to himself and he chuckled.

Well after Cole came back he sat down with Richard and he
apologized again he even congratulated him on the
pregnancy and later on he went to the ward Marang was in
without telling Richard he was going there and he sat there
looking at her with an emotional face.

AT A PRISON INFIRMARY (small prison hospital)

Mazwi was laying there with a drip on his eyes were closed
but tears were gushing out as he laid there thinking about
what he went through.....he had nightmares of what

happened to him he couldn't believe he was raped and beaten to a pulp....now his fear was going back to that cell and the worst part of his fear is being denied bail. He now regretted meeting Marang and asking her out....He regretted agreeing on the bet he had with his friends about her the bet was about him dating Marang and sleeping with her within a week's time. Marang was one of those girls who were in varsity to study and not to date she rejected all the guys that approached her before Mazwi including some of Mazwi's friends who tried their luck on her.

So Mazwi agreed to the bet cause he loved pussy and a challenge but what he didn't plan on was actually falling for her he broke her virginity and won the bet but he also fell for her so he decided to go on with the relationship and he was actually happy dating her....she was innocent and down to earth he broke her virginity and won the bet but he also fell for her so he decided to go on with the relationship and he was actually happy dating her....she was innocent and down to earth different to the type of girls he dated and he love it... but she was clueless when it came to sex especially the kinky stuff so he went outside his relationship to get freaky with other girls while he continued dating Marang but what he didn't know was condoms break and sometimes the pull out method doesn't work. Well the side chick got pregnant and Marang broke up with him without even giving him a second chance and then the side chick threatened to expose him on social media if he didn't do right by her cause she feared of the consequences of abortion and her family knowing about it cause she's from a Christian family and with Mazwi he got scared of disappointing his father again.

So he found a way to manage the situation by telling his parents about the pregnancy and he lied and said he loves the girl and that he wants to pay damages and lobola for her....Zakhele was disappointed at him “again” but he was glad that at least this time around he was taking responsibility for his actions but he didn’t know that Mazwi was planning to end things with the pregnant side chick after she gives birth and fix things with Marang he didn’t care about the lobola money his parents were going to pay to the girl’s family cause he has always been one of those spoiled kids who thinks money grows on trees anyway what he didn’t think would happen was Marang actually moving on that fast and with his uncle.....

He opened his eyes fast when he felt a hand touching him and he started to tremble when he saw who was standing there.

Grootman: aow cheese boy yaka man....yeeerr I missed you boy boy mine (my cheese boy....i missed you my boy)

Mazwi laid there trembling with fear.

Grootman: no man why cry boy boy minei loves you boy boy mine so no cry Grootman come see if boy boy mine is sharp so no cry (no man why are you crying my boy.... I love you my boy so don’t cry Grootman came to see if his boy is ok so don’t cry)

He said wiping Mazwi’s tears off who looked shit scared.

Grootman: plus Ghost o rile o batla o phela wabona so next time ko ba gentle magic ok....a ko e tsentsha roff....ko berekisa bovesaline nyana wa bona (plus Ghost said he wants you alive so next time I’ll be gentle ok....i won’t put it

in roughlyI'll use Vaseline ok)

Tears gushed out of Mazwi's eyes as he trembled.

Grootman: anyways e re ke vaiye ke tla o shapela round gape
neh boy boy mine (anyway let me go I'll come see you again
ok my boy)

Then he walked out whistling and Mazwi started crying
trembling like a leave.....

The following day his mother came to visit him and the
moment she saw him she busted out with a loud cry but
Mazwi stopped her saying she shouldn't cry cause she failed
to protect him.

Vuyi: baby I tried everything I really did but...but
She sobbed.

Mazwi: stopok...stop I don't care about you trying....the fact
is I...I was raped and it's your fault and your husband's fault
too....ya'll failed me so I don't want your stupid pity!

He said with a cold tone and Vuyiswa's tears continued to run
down her cheeks with her heart broken by his words.

Vuyi: Ma...Mazwi don't....

He stopped her.

Mazwi: I called you here to ask you to make sure I get a bail
hearing as fast as your lawyer can get it for me

Vuyi: are...are you sure you're strong enough for that

Mazwi: just get on with it whether im strong enough or not
shouldn't bother you!

Vuyi: Mazwi baby don't...

He interrupted her.

Mazwi: can I trust you to do that for me

She sighed.

Vuyi: yeah I'll call the lawyer as soon as I leave this place

She said wiping her tears off.

Mazwi: good....you can go now I need to rest

Vuyi: baby i....

He interrupted her.

Mazwi: please ma I need to rest!

She swallowed hard and she got up with a heavy heart.

Vuyi: I love you Mazwi...you're my only son and I love you
and im sorry I failed you baby

She walked out with tears running down her cheeks....he
didn't even ask what happened to her bruised face the way
he was cold towards her.

BACK AT THE PRIVATE HOSPITAL

Dineo opened her eyes and she looked around trying to make sense of where she was and she instantly saw that she was in hospital or was still in hospital she cleared her throat when she saw Richard standing by the window looking outside with his hands inside his pockets and he quickly turned and he rushed to her.... then her eyes got filled with tears when she thought about Marang and what she "thinks" the doctor said about her.

Richie: hey shhhh she's alive....she lost a lot off blood but the doctor said she's gonna be ok

Her eyes popped out and her bottom lip trembled.

Dineo: she....she's ok...she's alive?

He nodded smiling.

Dineo: but the doctor said....

Richard chuckled.

Richie: you fainted without hearing what the doctor wanted to actually say my love

She frowned.

Dineo: but he said...

He interrupted her.

Richie: he was saying he's sorry but even though she's alive and gonna be ok physically but emotionally she needs help cause the cut was deep and that its even a miracle that she made it cause when she got here they could barely feel her pulse

She swallowed hard and more tears gushed out.

Dineo: I'll...I'll call her therapist

She said sniffing and Richard sighed.

Richie: the doctor said she's gonna need to see a psychiatrist instead

Dineo: her therapist will recommend one for her

She said wiping her tears off and Richard nodded.

Richie: ok

She breathed out.

Dineo: mara doctor o le wannyela(that's doctor is full of shit)... kganthe ko (at) medical school they don't teach them how they should break the news to patients families....o no phatlhoga fela le melomo eme kima nx (he just started talking nonsense with his big lips)...."nyamsori to say this but" ya masepa.... nx I should sue his ugly ass for emotional distress cause now ke idibetse for mahala nje (I fainted for nothing) nx rubbish!

She said wiping her tears off and Richard laughed shaking his head.

Richard: and you're surprised when i say I will never let you go rato laka (my love)

She smiled a bit then she sighed getting emotional.

Dineo: so how is she?

Richie: she's in an induced coma so we have to wait for her to wake up

She sighed and she closed her eyes for a bit then she opened them.

Richard: she'll be fine my love

He said kissing her forehead then he cleared his throat and he sighed taking a step back from her.

Dineo: what....is everything ok....is it Marang?....you lied and said...

He interrupted her.

Richard: hey relax its not Marang

Dineo: then keng o le serious so all of a sudden? (then why are you this serious all of a sudden)

He Sighed.

Richie: its about why you fainted Dineo

Dineo: im sure it was because I was in shock

Richie: yeah and another thing too

Dineo: what....wait don't tell me I have a brain tumor or something Richard?

She said with her eyes popped out.

Richie: you don't have a brain tumor Dee so relax

She breathed out and he sighed again.

Richie: well here goes nothing.....umm you...you are pregnant

Silence filled the room for a bit.

Dineo: askies?

Richard: you are pregnant my love in fact we are pregnant

He said smiling nervously.

Dineo: you're kidding right

Richie: no

Dineo: no im not...im on contraceptives Richard...you know that and...no they made a mistake im not pregnant

Richie: yes you are baby

Dineo: are you me Richard heh?...is you me?... me you i?...you me we heh?... o Dineo wena nou? (are you Dineo now?)

Richie: what?

He said confused then she started breathing heavily as what Richard told her started to sink in.

Dineo: mxm I can't believe you Richard you're married for God's sake....how can you impregnate your side chick....wa gafa? (are you crazy)

She said feeling worked up.

Richie: will you just calm down before you upset my child!

He warned her and she just looked at him and tears filled her eyes and he sighed.

Richie: im sorry for shouting baby but can you just stop please....we are pregnant and there's nothing we can do but to accept it and work through it

Dineo: you're a prince Richard....a married one for that matter

Richard: and I can take more than one wife Dineo

She looked away and he sat on the edge of the hospital bed and he sighed holding her hand.

Richie: Dineo I love you and I know you love me too

He sighed again.

Richie: and this baby is a clear indication that you should agree to be my wife...fate is showing us signs that we belong together so stop fighting it please rato laka (my love)

Dineo: Richard..

Richie: soon you gonna start showing so assomblief make up

your mind my love

She just looked at him drained....she knew from now on things will change.....Well she doesn't know how its like to have a present father in her life let alone to know how he looks like..... she doesn't even know how it's like to cry to your father.....how its like to hug her father or to hear him say I love you or im proud of you my daughter or how its like to make tea for her father or to wake up in the morning and say "morning papa"now she's pregnant and a married man is the father just like her mother was pregnant by a married man too but one thing she can't do is let her baby grow up without a father like her mother did with her...that she won't do especially now that she has a chance to give her daughter what she failed to have ever since she was born being her baby to have a full time father in his/her life.

Dineo: " damn I guess the apple doesn't fall far from the tree neh"

She thought and tears ran down her cheeks.

Richard: hey don't cry my love please

He said lying next to her and he pulled her closer and held her tight and she just sobbed.

Cole was sitting next to the bed holding Marang's hand looking at her as she lay there peacefully. He felt like shit for lashing out at her like that he wished he handled things better.....he sighed and he looked down with his jaws clenched.

Cole: im sorry ntokazi....im sorry for saying all those things the thing is....i.....i haven't accepted her death i....i find it hard

to accept it

He sighed.

Cole: I blame myself....maybe if I didn't change my life around I wouldn't have gone to some stupid business meeting out of town I would have went to pick her up from her sister's place and she wouldn't have gotten inside that fucken cab and that fucken driver and his accomplices wouldn't have.....

He kept quiet with his chest moving up and down fast....he was angry.

Cole: and now I failed you too....i....

He rubbed his eyes.

Cole: im sorry ntokazi

Dineo: do you love her Cole or you just wanted to help her....help me understand cause I thought you loved her mara bona nou o mo (but look now she's here)

She was standing at the door with Richard...Cole didn't hear them open the door....anyway he turned looking at her and he sighed getting up from the chair..... he walked to them and stood in front of Dineo who had a frown on her face.

Cole: she's the air I breathe I hope that answers your question

She stood there tongue tide and Richard cleared his throat.

Richie: I thought you left

Cole sighed.

Cole: I had to see her

Richard nodded and Cole looked at Dineo.

Cole: im sorry about what I did to you....im not like that and I promise it will never happen again

She didn't say anything she just looked at him with a serious face and Cole cleared his throat.

Cole: ok then....we will talk later bafo

Richie: sho

He walked out and Dineo sighed walking to Marang and tears automatically ran down her cheeks.

Well they stayed with Marang for some time then Richard went to drop off Dineo at her place and he went home to change and after that he was gonna go see Cole to make sure he's ok cause he knew he was blaming himself for what Marang did despite what he said to Dineo during their heated fight....He drove in and parked his car then he went in with the doctor's words about Dineo being pregnant ringing in his head....to say he was happy was an understatement but he was also worried about her concerning Marang he knows Dineo loves Marang and seeing her in that state will stress her out.

Batho: hey baby....you home early today

She said with a big smile on her face as she got up from the couch and Richard sighed.

Richard: came to change im going over at Coles he's not well
He said walking upstairs and she followed him.

Batho: ooh ok...anyway I have a surprise for you

He frowned taking off his shirt and she handed him a wrapped box she took from her side drawer.

Batho: i was gonna give it to you tonight but the way im so excited I can't wait so open it baby

She said looking excited and he sighed and opened it wondering why she seemed joyful today then he frowned when he saw a white stick inside with two red lines.

Richie: what's the hell is this

Batho: home pregnancy test duh

She said rolling her eyes and she smiled....he swallowed hard because the smile on her face was clear enough for him about what those two red lines meant.

Batho: im pregnant baby and im sure its boy I can feel it....im carrying your heir my prince

She said with a proud smile on her face and he just stood there shocked not knowing what to do or to say....he wished he could just disappear that instant.

INSERT 16

.
. .
.

THREE DAYS LATER

It's been three days since Marang woke up and she hasn't said a word to anyone her therapist came and she also failed to make her talk and that worried Dineo Richard and Cole.... she didn't even react when she saw Cole inside her room she just pretended like he wasn't around and continued to stare into space. Even Dineo tried to make her open up to her but she would just stare into space and not say anything she even refused to eat but not on Dineo's watch....Dineo forced her to eat by threatening to force the food down her throat literally and because Marang knows how crazy Dee is she ended up eating.....

Anyway now its around 1 am when Dineo walks inside the hospital going straight to the private ward Marang is admitted in with takeaways.....she pressed the bell so the nurses can let her inside the ward and one nurse let her in.

Dineo: sister Mohale

She said smiling at the nurse that was busy on the reception area.

Mohale: hey girl

She replied smiling too.

Mohale: dintshang mogal (how are you girl)

Mohale: aah ke shap and wena (im good and you)

Dineo: aah nna im always mojojo girl (im always good girl) so how is she?

The nurse sighed.

Mohale: well she hardly says anything and we have to force her to eat...mara sa wara (but don't worry) she'll be ok with time

Dineo sighed.

Dineo: let's hope she'll eat the food I brought for her

Mohale: o sa mo omanyana like you did maabane hle (don't reprimand her like you did yesterday please)

They both laughed.

Dineo: Im not promising anything shem....anyway brostro wa Marang o tlile today? (anyway Marang's man came today?)

Mohale: mmmmh you mean that fine brother.....im not sure maybe o tlile vroeg (maybe he came in the morning)

Dineo: hei he's off limits wena... anyway let me go see her
Nurse Mohale laughed and another nurse walked out of another private room.... you could tell that she was like one of those no nonsense nurses and it was the first time Dineo was seeing her ever since Marang was admitted.

Nurse: it's not yet visiting time ausi

Dineo stopped and looked at her with a frown on her face.

Dineo: askies?

NurseMohale: sister Pelotona its ok she can go in

NursePelotona: sister Mohale this is not a tavern where people come in as they please....there are no exceptions here rules are rules!

Dineo: hei ausi weeh kgopela oskan'gata kgonse assomblief (please don't piss me off)this is not your father's hospital wankutlwa....ntatao ga a na dishares mo! (your father doesn't have shares here)

Nurse Pelotona frowned looking at her while Nurse Mohale was shocked by Dineo's outburst.

Dineo: do you know home much that room Marang is in cost daily and you're busy saying its not yet visiting hour

NursePelotona: bona mo sesinyana (look here little girl) im just doing my job ok

Dineo: o bitsa nna sesinyana wena le go nona e kare o kolobe! (you're calling me little girl you fat pig)

Nurse Mohale's eyes popped out with her mouth hanging open.

NursePelotona: o reng?(what did you say)

She asked looking angry.

Dineo: you heard me!....bona mo im pregnant and crazy in other words im fucken dangerous so oska ntlwaela blaen assomblief (so don't mess with me please) im not in the fucken mood nx....chifta (move)

She said the last part moving her out of the way and she went to Marang's private room and she got in clicking her tongue..... She found Marang staring into space and she sighed and put the takeaways down.

Dineo: hey

Marang turned and looked at her.

Marang: hi

Dineo's eyes popped out.

Dineo: wow...ummm I didn't expect that I thought you'll give me the silent treatment again

Marang sighed and she swallowed hard looking away.

Dineo: anyway I brought us some food...your favourite I hope you're hungry

She said taking out the food from the paper bag.

Marang: im sorry

She said with a low tone and Dineo stopped what she was doing but she didn't raise her head to look at her.

Marang: im sorry I scared and stressed you out

Dineo swallowed hard fighting off her tears.

Marang: I wasn't trying to kill myself I wasi just wanted the pain to stop and the more I cut myself deep was the more the pain I was feeling in my heart stopped

Dineo looked away as tears ran down her cheeks as she bit her lower lip.

Marang: im sorry Dee I guess im weak im not as strong as you
She sighed.

Marang: when....when Cole lashed out at me like that something ticked off in me it was like I had nothing to live for anymore....i felt betrayed and used then all of a sudden all the things I've been through came crashing down on me like a ball of fire and I lost control

Dineo looked at her with tears running down her cheeks and she could see Marang's own tears were running down her cheeks too.

Marang: I think I overreacted with Cole but..... but he still loves her Dee and it hurts cause I want him to only love me I want to be the only woman in his heart and when I mentioned the woman's name and he lost it like that it hurt deeply

She sniffed and wiped her tears off.

Marang: I thought he loved me...he made me feel alive again you know....he made me learn to love myself again....he made learn to accept what happened to me so I can move on he became my pillar of strength too joining you on that.... he brought me hope and content....he made me feel good about myself....every time he called me ntokazi I fell for him some more but what I wasn't aware of was he wasn't feeling the same way

Dineo: he said you're the air he breathes Marang that means something

She said wiping her falling tears.

Marang: he once told me that and I know he meant it but to be honest i longed for him to say he loves me Dee.... I know those three words sometimes mean nothing and that sometimes one doesn't have to say them for you to believe gore they truly love you but I longed to hear them from him....i wanted to know if im worth to be loved by someone like him and him saying those words to me was gonna be proof enough to me that I am

Dineo walked closer to her and she held her hand.

Dineo: what about me Marang....what about me loving you

Marang: I know you love me and I love you too Dineo I just wanted...I just wanted to feel how you feel when you're with Richard he loves you and he shows you and also tells you...I also wanted that maybe I was desperate to be loved like that but when I realised that he still loved his dead ex it broke me She swallowed hard.

Marang: I know you love me that's why im sorry I scared you like that...I wasn't trying to kill myself I just wanted the pain to stop

Dineo sighed and she sniffed.

Dineo: I hear you Marang but you need to stop depending on other people....you also need to stop being desperate for love....love yourself first Marang I know it's hard now because of what Mazwi did to you but im here for you and I'll always be here for you no matter ok

Marang nodded with tears running down her cheeks and Dineo hugged her and they broke the hug.

Dineo: and I don't think Cole loves that ex of his...well yes he may still love her but I think he's still holding on to her and her memory because of guilt....i don't think he has dealt with losing her that's why even mentioning her name ticks him off the wrong way

Marang sighed and she wiped her tears off.

Marang: it doesn't matter anymore...I'll forever be grateful for what he did for me but we can never be....i don't think im even his type I think he just helped me because of what his ex went through and its ok cause I believe if he didn't I'd probably be dead by now

She said with an emotional voice.

Dineo: but he said....

She interrupted her.

Marang: he said that because now that he's helping me he can finally breathe...maybe after Shirley's death he felt like he couldn't go on and me going through what I went through made him to have a chance at making things right through me you know....to help me since he couldn't help his Shirley

Dineo: Marang...

She said with a low tone.

Marang: its ok....he did help me and I'll forever be grateful to him...if it wasn't for him I'd be dead so he'll always be my

hero

Dineo swallowed hard with an emotional look on her face looking at her.

Marang: and you know...my therapist told me it was a bad idea to live with Cole but I ignored her warnings but in a way I don't regret it he treated me good he treated me good took care of me and had my back

Dineo didn't know what to say.

Marang: im sorry again for scaring you like that

Dineo sighed and she pulled a chair and sat next to the bed.

Dineo: just never do it ever again ok

Marang nodded and they kept quiet for a bit.

Marang: so you're pregnant huh?

Dineo gave her a surprised look.

Dineo: you were paying attention to what I was saying maabane? (yesterday)

Marang: yeah my mind was on factory setting mode but I heard everything you said

Dineo laughed.

Dineo: ooh my God you just cracked a joke...she just cracked a joke people!

She said laughing and Marang forced a smile.

Cole was keeping himself busy in his office trying to divert his mind from Marang and what he did to Dineo he felt like shit man-handling Dineo like that..... He sighed and he sat back on his chair and he rubbed his eyes as he clenched his jaws with a frown on his face then he took his phone and made an international call.

Voice: son

Cole sighed.

Cole: baba

Voice: unjani ndodana? (how are you son?)

Cole: ngiyaphila wena baba? (im fine and you dad?)

Voice: hai ngiyatotoba nje ndodana (im getting there son)

Then he kept quiet a bit.

Voice: you sound down what's wrong

Cole sighed.

Cole: I messed up

Voice: im listening

Cole: remember the girl I told you about....Marang?

Voice: yah I remember her

Cole: I messed it up by not controlling my emotions concerning Shirley

The man sighed.

Man: Shirley will always be a stumbling block in your love life until you find closure ndodana I told you this before and im saying it again.... find closure and you'll be able to let her go and move on

Cole sighed.

Cole: its not easy baba....i don't even know how to find that closure

He said with a low tone.

Man: go to her grave and talk to her....let it all out don't leave anything out just tell her how you really feel about her her death and what you did to those men....mtshele konke nje (tell her everything)

Cole swallowed and he sighed.

Cole: ok I'll think about it

The man chuckled.

Man: you're not ready to let her go are you?

Cole sighed.

Cole: maybe or maybe not.... I don't know baba but I'll definitely think about it

Man: remember until you let her go you'll never find happiness and true love son.....look at me if I didn't get the courage to find a way to leave Lindiwe I would probably be dead for real right now I wouldn't have met Susanna and I wouldn't be this happy

Cole: how is she and the twins anyway

The man chuckled.

Man: she's happy and im happy too and as for the little rascals yeerr they are troublesome man

Cole laughed.

Cole: mmmmh they take after their big bro I see

Man: yeses I think they are even worse than how you were when you were a baby

They both laughed and they stopped after some time.

Cole: baba

Man: son

Cole: I can't wait anymore....Lindiwe she's still fucking him and on top of it all she hit Marang baba....you know that if she wasn't my mother she'd be dead by now

The man sighed.

Man: I don't want her dead Qophelo

Cole: she's still my mother baba of course it won't get to that..... she's just getting away with a lot of things and manje she bit more than she can chew by attacking Marang....she's supporting a rapist and now she attacked the victim who's my woman..... angeke baba I cant let this go

The man sighed.

Man: ok...its fine you can now put some of your cards on the table and call it in its high time they know who's boss

Cole smirked.

Cole: they indeed will

Man: don't forget that piece of shit

Cole: don't worry about him he's gonna lose everything he owns by the time im done with him....he's gonna regret the day be betrayed you by sleeping with your wife and plotting your death with her

Then Cole heard a woman talking.

Woman: amor leve seu patife enquanto eu vou e banho seu outro safado impertinente (love take your little rascal while I go and bath your other naughty rascal)

The man and Cole laughed.

Man: I have to go ndodana duty calls

Cole: mmmmh that's what happens when you have kids at old age

Man: fsek!

Cole chuckled.

Cole: ok then greet mamcane and odadewethu (greet aunty and my sisters)

Man: ok I will shap....

Then Cole heard him reprimanding someone.

Man: hey wenzani... yekela man (what are you doing....leave it) that's your mother's favourite vas man princess uzokbulala if you break it

Cole laughed and he dropped the call then he chuckled shaking his head and he made another call with a serious look on his face.

Guy: boss

Cole: get a moving truck and people to pack my mother's

rags and then take her and her rags out of my house
Guy: you mean we should kick your mother out of her house?

He asked surprised.

Cole: it's my fucken house not hers.... now do what I tell you to do and stop asking me stupid questions!

He said sounding angry.

Guy: ye....yes boss...sorry boss I'll get right on it...ngixolisa mhlonishwa (im sorry boss)

Cole: nx do it tomorrow morning and if she gets difficult or threaten to call the cops tell her to call me!

Guy: yes boss

Then he dropped the call and he sat back again closing his eyes.

Dineo drove inside her apartment complex and she parked her car then her phone rang and she rolled her eyes answering it.

Dineo: hey

Richard: my love how are you?

Dineo: wow so you still care?

Richard: what's that supposed to mean

Dineo: since two days ago you've been acting strange

Richard

Richard sighed.

Richard: baby its not like that man...its just Mmabatho is acting up and shit and i.... bona im almost at your place so we will talk when I get there ok

She huffed.

Dineo: listen here Richard nako e ne onkeja strong (the time you were fucking me strong) you knew you had a wife.... when I told you about condoms and you said you'll never use them with me you knew you have a wife so now that im pregnant o tlela ka di excuse tsa masepa o tlo mpotsa ka your wife! (you're telling me stupid excuses using your wife)
She said sounding angry.

Richard: Dineo!

She interrupted him.

Dineo: bona mo papawe a ke rapele monna wankutlwa and just because im pregnant for you doesn't mean ko kgotlhella nonsense ya gao nna.....ke ngwana Lydia nna a ke rapele lerete atletse so molefatsheng ka different colours and sizes rautlwana.... (look here Mr I don't beg a man you hear me and just because im pregnant for you doesn't mean I'll take your nonsense....im Lydia's daughter so I don't beg for a dick where else these world is full of different dicks of different colours and sizes)

Richard: is that how you talk to me now Dineo...o botsa nna ka marete a banna ba bangwe! (you're telling about other men's dicks!)

He said sounding angry.

Dineo: you know where to find me and your unborn child when you done being Mmabatho's bitch nx

Then she dropped the call and breathed out.

Dineo: o tlo mpotsa ka Mmabatho wa masepa nx (he's busy telling about the stupid Mmabatho nx)

Then her phone rang again after she opened the car door and she answered it.

Dineo: Richard im not in the mood ok....yes ke go rugile (yes I swore at you) and yes I raised my voice at you and yes you

deserved it now stop calling me wanshitela assomblief (you're suffocating/troubling me please)

Then she dropped the call again and she got out and took her things out and she went inside the building.....she found a woman knocking on her apartment door and she slowed down frowning at her.

Dineo: can I help you

The woman turned and she made a disgusted face looking at Dineo up and down and Dee raised an eyebrow looking at her.

Woman: so this is what Richard is cheating on me with...wow such downgrade

Dineo put her shopping bags down.

Dineo: mmh so ke wena Mmabatho wa teng? (mmmmh so you are what he calls Mmabatho?)

She said with a bitchy look on her face and Mmabatho clicked her tongue.

Mmabatho: listen here bitch im here to tell you face to face....mosadi to mosadi (woman to woman) to stay the hell away from my husband!

Dineo took a step closer.

Dineo: askies?

Mmabatho: you heard me or keng besides being a man snatching whore you are also retarded?

Dineo: a man snatching whore and a retard ke mmao wa moloi jou fokon moerskond (is a witch called your mother you fucken asshole)

Mmabatho: what did you just say about my mother you bitch She said looking angry.

Dineo: bona mo Mmabatho im not in the fucken mood wankutlwa.... so se se itseng find out where Dineo stays and

go there and confront her a se go buisetse gae nou... (whatever that said find out where Dineo stays and go there and confront her it better take you back home now)

Mmabatho: you have no shame...sleeping with a married man nx are you that desperate heh

Dineo: bona an escort bitch a bitsa (calling) sfebe a prostitute.....o botsa nna ka (you're telling be about) desperation wena you think I don't know about how you and Richard got married heh

Mmabatho was caught offside by that statement.

Mmabatho: yes our marriage was arranged cause we are both from royalty so?

Dineo chuckled.

Dineo: mmmmh miss "royalty"well guess what your prince asked me to be his second wife how about that

Mmabatho laughed.

Mmabatho: well his family will never accept letlakala la go tshwana le wena (a rubbish like you)

Dineo: letlaka ke papao wa go se berekisi condom and a end up(a) a rotela mmao wa sefebe a belega lesepa la go tshwana le wena!..... le gone ge o ntebelletse pila ke sefatlhego sa go buyer face se heh?... (a rubbish is your father who failed to use a condom and ended up nutting inside that bitch called your mother and she ended up giving birth to a shitty thing like you!....when you looking at me is this a face of a desperate person)you think I give a damn about his family members liking me or not!

Mmabatho: im warning you for the fucken last time you fucken whore or I'll...

Dineo interrupted her.

Dineo: or you'll what mmmmh or you'll what?...kao bona o

lapisitse ke skin seo se se soft nou o nyaka se tshwane le sa Jerry Skhosana neh....o nyaka ke se gwagwaishe mo fatshe ka o bona (I can see you're tired of your soft skin now you want it to look like that of Jerry Skhosana "he's a retired South African football player"you want me to drag it on the floor I see)

Mmabatho stood there shocked by Dineo's attitude....she could clearly see she's one of those ghetto girls that use swear words like it's a new trend....those hoot rats that talk anyhow she wanted to fight her so bad so that she can teach her a lesson but she knew that she might really clean the dirty floor with her face.

Mmabatho: so Richard a topa straat mate fela (so Richard picked a mere hood rat) to cheat on me with.... wow how disappointing

Dieo: straatmate ke mmao.... now tseya dithupana tseo tsa go omella tse o reng ke maoto and get the fuck out of here before I really get angry (a hood rat is your mother....now take those two hard sticks you call legs and get the fuck out of here before I really get angry)

Mmabatho: do you know who the fuck I am wena....im a fucken princess pregnant with Richard's child....i will never sit back and let a peasant like you ruin my family you hear me never!

Dineo looked at her shocked by the "pregnant part" but she quickly masked her shock and she chuckled.

Mmabatho: now it's either you stay away or I'll make you....your choice bitch!

Dineo continued to chuckle not because of the threat from Mmabatho but because now she just figured out why Richard was acting weird for the past two days.

Richard: Mmabatho?

Mmabatho turned and found Richard standing behind her then Dineo looked at Richard with tears in her eyes she was more hurt than angry.

Richard: what the hell are you doing here!

He asked with an angry look on his face.

Mmabatho: WENA WHAT THE HELL ARE YOU DOING HERE...YOU HAVE NO SHAME ASKING ME THAT STUPID QUESTION YOU LYING CHEATING ASSHOLE!

Dineo just picked her shopping bags and she unlocked her door with tears running down her cheeks.

Richard: Dineo

Dineo: take your pregnant wife and get the hell out of here

Richard....stay the hell away from me wankutlwa I will not tell you again nx

Richard: baby look I can explain

He said to Dineo.

Mmabatho: baby.... o re baby to her Tirelo while im here?

She said hurt by Richard's disrespect.

Dineo: leave Richard!

She said opening her door.

Richard: baby let me explain please.....I was gonna tell you I swear

He pleaded with her then a voice of a man spoke behind Mmabatho and Richard.

Man: Dee?

They all turned and looked at the man and Dineo's eyes popped out and she dropped the shopping bags on the floor while Richard frowned looking from Dineo to the guy.

Dineo: Co...Collins?

She said still surprised to see him.

Collins: hey

He said smiling at her then he frowned when he saw the tears on her face.

Collins: are you ok...why are you crying?

Dineo: you're here...I... i though you're in...in Zambia

She said not believing she was seeing him ignoring his question.

Richard: who the fuck is this Dineo!

He asked her looking angry.

Mmabatho: baby let's just leave ok...im sure it's one of her boyfriends and to think you were cheating on me with such filth nx I hope you were using protecting with her.... im sure sh....

Richard: SHUT THE FUCK UP MMABATHO!

He roared making Dineo and Mmabatho to jump up with fright.

17

Collins: Dee

Dineo: im still using the same numbers

Then she quickly picked her things.

Richard: DINEO!

Mmabatho: Richard enough what kind of nonsense is this!

Dineo rushed inside and closed the door and she quickly dropped the shopping bags on the floor and she locked the door and breathed out holding her chest.

OUTSIDE

Collins sighed shaking his head and he walked away.

Mmabatho: are you happy now Richard...are you happy that you embarrassed me?

She said looking angry and Richard clicked his tongue and he walked away.

Mmabatho: RICHARD!

He ignored her and he went after Collins.

Richard: ey!

Then he whistled.

Richard: im calling you man!

He said with an angry voice and Collins stopped walking then he turned and frowned looking at Richie who walked to him and stood in front of him.

Richard: stay the hell away from my woman

Collins frowned hard looking at him.

Collins: sorry?

Richard: I said stay the hell away from my woman are you deaf!

He said with a pissed off tone and Collins chuckled.

Collins: which one?

Richard: don't piss me off you hear me....im fucken telling you for the fucken last time to stay away from Dineo

Collins chuckled.

Collins: well I'll be sure to tell her you said that and if she agrees with you then I'll back off

Richard clenched his jaws looking at him and Collins walked away chuckling.

Richard: nx

Mmabatho: your parents need to know about this....they

need to know that you are tarnishing their family name like this in fact you're a disgrace Tirelo!

Richard: insult me all you like bra Mmabatho but I won't react to any of it and it won't make me love you....you should know by now that any rubbish that comes out of your mouth im immune to it

She looked at him with tears in her eyes.

Mmabatho: I regret falling for you Tirelo in fact I wish your bother Kgosietsile was still alive cause im sure he was a better man than you

Richard grabbed Mmabatho by her neck pulling her closer with a deadly look on his face.

Richard: keep my bother's name out of your stinking mouth
nx

Then he let her go.

Richard: you say my brother was better than me right guess what Dineo is way better than you too in fact you'll never amount to the woman she is even though you're from royalty
nx

Then he walked away going to his car leaving her hurt and angry.

INSIDE DINEO'S APARTMENT

Dineo has been crying ever since she locked herself inside her apartment she couldn't believe that Mmabatho was also pregnant and that Richard kept it from her...She wondered if he was acting weird towards her because he regretted getting her pregnant since his wife is pregnant with his heir....

She wiped her tears off and she got up then her phone rang she didn't recognize the numbers but she answered anyway.

Dineo: hello

Voice: hey you ok

Dineo: Co...Collins?

She said sitting down.

Collins: yeah....are you ok?

Dineo: umm yeah

Collins: ok now open the door so I can see that you're really ok

Dineo: huh?

Collins: im outside open up

Dineo: umm.... ok

She ended the call and she got up and went to open the door and there stood Collins looking yummy as ever.

Dineo: hey

Collins: hey.... can I come in?

Dineo: ummm yeah

She made way for him and he got in she closed the door and when she turned he was standing closer to her He then pulled her in for a hug and she hugged him back inhaling his expensive perfume....they stayed like that for some time until they pulled out from the hug and he looked at her with a loving smile on his face.

Collins: you still as beautiful as ever

She looked down blushing a bit.

Dineo: when did you come back?

Collins: three days ago

He said walking to the couches and he sat down she followed him and she sat down next to him.

Collins: I was still gathering the courage to come see you

She chuckled.

Dineo: so you here for business?

Collins: that too but the main reason im here is to get you back

She looked at him with a surprised look on her face.

Dineo: ummm so you didn't get married to the wife that was chosen for you

He sighed and he sat back.

Collins: I did

Dineo: ooh

She said disappointed.

Collins: I had to Dee it was the only way I'd get my inheritance....my father left a will and a clause that said I'll only get my inheritance if I marry the girl him and my mother chose for me

Dineo: so if you're married what are you doing here then?

Collins: the clause didn't say I shouldn't take a second wife

Dineo chuckled shaking her head.

Dineo: askies?

Collins: I love you Dineo with everything in me and I know you still love me

Dineo: Collins that guy that was here he's married too and that woman is his wife and he wants me to be his second wife so there's nothing special about you wanting me to be your second wife

Collins frowned and he sat up straight looking at her.

Collins: what?

Dineo: yeah and im pregnant for him

Collins looked at her not believing what he was hearing.

Dineo: so yah he beat you to it and im gonna say what I said to him and that is a big fat NO

She got up and went to the kitchen Collins got up too and he followed her.

Collins: you pregnant?

She nodded.

Collins: so you slept with a married man Dineo

Dineo: unknowingly yes

She lied cause she couldn't bear to hear him judge her she already feels like shit after that encounter with Mmabatho....now it was sinking in that she's actually a home wrecker.

Collins: when did you actually find out he's married

Dineo....before or after you fucked him without protection

He said with an angry tone and she turned and looked at him with a frown on her face.

Dineo: what are you Collins....my father?

She said with an annoyed look on her face and Collins chuckled shaking his head as he looked at her with an angry look.

Collins: im calling you out on your reckless behaviour and you're telling me that shit!

Dineo: askies o re reckless behaviour? aren't you the one who just said you're married and you're here to make me your second wife

Collins: the right way Dineo o re reckless behaviour? aren't you the one who just said you're married and you're here to make me your second wife

Collins: the right way Dineo I already told my people that im taking a second wife and I sat my wife down and told her about you and that if you're still single im gonna take you as my second wife and she doesn't have a problem with it

Dineo: well im pregnant and I also love my married baby

daddy so you can go back to Zambia and tell your wife that you changed your mind or look for another woman to marry She said taking out takeaways she brought earlier on and she warmed them.

Collins: Nalikutemwa Dee (I love you Dee)

Dineo: you should go Collins

Collins: im not going anywhere

Dineo: Collins please

Collins: I said im not going anywhere

He opened the fridge and took out bottled water and he went back to the lounge and Dineo sighed holding on to the kitchen counter with both hands.

Collins: where is Marang...don't tell me she's also fucking a married man and she's with him now

She walked to the lounge area with a plate of food and a glass of juice.

Dineo: o sa nyako ntlwaela masepa Collins (don't piss me off Collins) don't make yourself rra dibettercoffie ka nna (mr perfect using me) cause if you were one you would be satisfied with one wife nx

He didn't say anything he just sighed cause he knows if she starts she won't finish until she's satisfied with insulting you.... she sat down and looked at him.

Dineo: mxm and Marang is in hospital

Collins: what?

He said sitting up straight.

Dineo: yeah she tried to commit suicide

Collins: what... but why... I mean why would she do that?

He asked with a worried tone and Dineo sighed.

Dineo: she was raped by Mazwi Collins and he almost burned her alive after he was done violating her then Mazwi's

mother and grandmother attacked her and said some nasty words to her and shit....eish to cut the long story short everything got too much for her and yah she tried to kill herself

Collins got up and went to sit next to her and he pulled her closer and he held her and she sobbed.

Collins: will she be ok?

She nodded sniffing and he kissed the top of her head.

Collins: where is that piece of shit...please tell me he's in jail
She got off his hold and she wiped her tears off.

Dineo: he was arrested and they raped him in the holding cells but I heard he's now in the prison hospital awaiting bail

Collins: don't worry I'll talk to my contacts and I'll make sure he doesn't make bail ok

Dineo: ok

Collins sighed.

Collins: well im not happy that you're pregnant for a married man but im sorry for sounding judgmental and for sounding harsh

She sighed.

Dineo: I didn't know he was married at first and when I found out I ended things but he said he'll never let me go....and since I was already in love with him I just didn't tell him to fuck off and now im pregnant and so is his wife...

She sighed getting emotional again.

Dineo: everything is just a huge mess Collins and I don't know what to do

He pulled her closer again and he held her tight as she sobbed.

Collins: im here now everything will be ok

AT RICHARD AND MMABATHO'S HOUSE

Richard was on the phone with his mother who was livid
Mmabatho snitched on him to his mother and now he's
listening to her shouting on the phone.

Queen: what is wrong with you Tirelo heh....o ngwana wa ga
mang mara heh! (who's child are you)

She said with an angry voice.

Richie: im a grown ass man ma now can you stop meddling in
my marital business

Queen: do you even care gore you're a future king....do you
even care gore you're royalty!

Richie: so I should stop living just because im royalty?

He said with an annoyed tone.

Queen: what did you just say?

Richie: you heard me and the woman in question I love her
and I'll never stop seeing her even if you call a meeting with
all the family elders I won't stay away from her

Queen: you know what.... im coming there im gonna deal
with that witch myself nx

Then she dropped the call and Richard almost threw his
phone against the wall but he stopped himself.

Richard: nxa

IN THE LOUNGE

Mmabatho: I hope ma knocked some sense into you
She said when Richard walked in and he just clicked his

tongue and went to the door.

Mmabatho: where the hell are you going this time Tirelo?

He ignored her opening the door and he walked out slamming the door behind him.

Mmabatho: I swear I'll deal with that bitch....no one and I mean no one will stop me from becoming the next queen....no one nx!

She said to herself and she took her phone and made a call.

Voice: Kgosigadi ya me entle (my beautiful princess)

Mmabatho: mama I need your help

She said sounding emotional all of a sudden.

Queen2: what's wrong you sound somehow

Mmabatho: there's some peasant thing that is evading my territory mama

Queen2: who the hell is that?

Mmabatho: a nobody Tirelo is cheating on me with

Queen2: eng? (what)

Mmabatho: mama he embarrassed me in front of her can you imagine

Queen: I can't believe this...Mapula has to know about this

Mmabatho: I already called her

Queen: I can't believe this

She said sounding angry.

Mmabatho: I wish Kgosi was still alive....he was arrogant and stubborn but he respected royalty and the throne

Queen: hai you know it would have proved difficult to control him Mmabatho

Mmabatho: but at least he would've respected me

Queen2: you want a king you can control Mmabatho not to be some man's puppet

Mmabatho sighed.

Mmabatho: yeah I guess you right

Queen2: so we will deal with that little rat cause no one must come between you and that throne

Mmabatho: yeah

Queen2: come home this weekend and we will find a suitable plan to deal with that little rat...so what did he say when you told him you're pregnant

Mmabatho: ahh he only said 'OH' can you believe it

Queen2: this boy is proving to be more difficult than I thought

Mmabatho: don't worry my queen by the time im done with him I'll say jump and he'll ask how high.....anyway how is Botshelo I hope she's studying and doing well at school

Queen2: just give her a break will you

Mmabatho: no ma my womb can't produce a useless child I refuse it

The queen sighed.

Queen2: stop saying things like that Mmabatho..... you know walls have ears

Mmabatho: yeah and that weak man im married to might have cameras planted in this house

Queen2: yah so we will talk freely when you get here

Mmabatho: ok ma say hi to dad

Queen2: mxm oho...anyway I will

Mmabatho chuckled.

Mmabatho: bathong mama

Queen2: that's why I don't want you to marry a man that controls you or to be in a polygamous marriage look at me....im sharing my husband with three other wives and my husband listens to his ugly and shapeless first wife instead of me...I don't want you to end up like me that's why I want you

to be the only wife to your king and to be able to control him
Mmabatho sighed.

Mmabatho: I hear you mama

Queen2: mmmmh look now your elder brother can't be king
when your father's ancestors finally remembers him because
of those useless women but you know what the day his
ancestors remember him my son will become king by fire or
by force nx

Mmabatho: I hear you ma...anyway we will talk some more
when I come ka weekend

Queen2: ok my beautiful princess...I love you ok

Mmabatho: I love you too

Then they ended the call and Mmabatho sighed.

AT THE HOSPITAL

The following day Collins and Dineo walked inside Marang's
ward and they found her eating her breakfast and when her
eyes landed on Collins her eyes popped out.

Marang: ooh my God Co...Collins

Collins: hey kiddo

He went to her and hugged her.

Marang: is this really you?

Collins laughed.

Collins: yeah

Marang looked at Dineo and Dineo shrug her shoulders.

Marang: ummm when did you come back?

Collins: three days ago and I was surprised by how much
things have changed

He said looking from her to Dineo.

Dineo: don't start with me assomblief tuu....im not in the mood

She said kissing Marang's forehead and she sat down.

Collins: don't mind her....hormones are nyising her(are showing her flames)

Marang giggled and Collins held her hand looking at her with a serious look on her face.

Collins: she told me what happened...im sorry kiddo....i wish I was here to protect you....

He sighed.

Collins: I feel like if I didn't leave I would've prevented some of the things from happening especially what happened to you and Dee fucking a married man and getting pregnant by him

Dineo showed him the middle finger with a bored look on her face.

Voice: LET GO OF HER HAND NOW!

They all looked towards the door and a pissed off Cole was standing there with a takeaway paper bag on his right hand and Marang slowly pulled her hand back while Dineo just rolled her eyes.

Cole: who the fuck are you?

He said walking in.

Dineo: brikayana tuu Cole (can you just stop Cole) it's still too early for your nonsense assomblief (please)

Cole: I asked who the fuck you are?

He asked Collins ignoring Dineo and Collins chuckled.

Collins: who I am is none of your business

Cole: what did you just say?

Dineo: Cole please not here tuu.... jeez he just held her hand

why are you acting like he kissed her or something

Cole: NO MAN IS ALLOWED TO TOUCH MARANG'S HAND
YOU FUCKEN GET THAT...NO MAN!

He said sounding angry.

Dineo: askies?

Cole: SHE'S MINE AND MINE ALONE NOW TELL THIS FUCKER
TO GET THE FUCK OUT BEFORE PIECES OF HIS FLASH GET
SCATTERED ALL OVER THIS FLOOR!

He roared making Marang and Dineo scared in the process
and Collins just looked at Cole with a frown on his face.

Dineo: relax will you...Collins is here with me and now we just
came to see Mara

Cole: The same fucken Collins that Richie told me about
Dineo!

Dineo: assomblief don't get involved.... Richie is married and
Mmabatho is pregnant so los my uit (leave me alone)

Cole took out his phone and dialed Richard.

Richie: foza

Cole: your pregnant love of your life is here with some fucken
dude at the hospital

Dineo: COLE!

Cole: now you better come here and take care of this shit
cause when it comes to Marang ngizoyibulala lenja (I'll
castrate this dog)

Then he dropped the call and Collins chuckled shaking his
head.

Collins: kiddo I'll come see you again ok

He said squeezing her hand and she nodded.

Cole: DIDN'T I SAY DON'T FUCKEN TOUCH HER MSUNU!

Marang: im...im sorry about all this Collins he's not my....

Cole: im not what heh...im not what Marang?

She sighed and Dineo hugged her laughing.

Dineo: yoh yah neh...anyway mtase I'll come back later ok I don't wanna see Richard

Marang sighed.

Marang: ok

Dineo: Collins lets go

Cole: where the hell do you think you're going Dineo?

Dineo: wooh bese.... first of all nna le wena a re nyobisane ok so osa batla go mbora vroeg so assomblief (wait a minute....first of all me and you are not fucking ok so don't bore me this early morning please)

She walked out and Collins followed her bumping into Cole's shoulder walking out.

Cole: nx

Then he looked at Marang with a scary look on his face and she looked away.

18

AT THE HOSPITAL

Cole breathed out in an attempt to calm himself down then he moved and put the takeaways down.

Cole: eat up

Marang: I already had my breakfast

Cole: hospital food taste like shit now eat up I brought you proper breakfast

She sighed and she slowly took the paper bag and she took out the takeaways and immediately her mouth watered.

Cole: eat up

She started eating and he sat on a chair and watched her.

Cole: tell me about that guy

She stopped eating and looked at him.

Marang: Co...Collins

He clenched his jaws cause even his name alone pissed him off.

Cole: yah

She cleared her throat and she sighed.

Marang: there's nothing to tell he's just Dineo's ex

Cole: and?

Marang: he's Zambian and from a rich family

Cole: how long did they date

Marang: why are you asking me about him Cole

Cole: cause I want to know the fucker that's invading both mine and my brother's territories

Marang: your territory?

He looked at her sitting back.

Cole: yah...you got a problem with that

Marang: we broke up Cole so you can't say that

He raised an eyebrow at her.

Cole: is it?

Marang: Cole please stop

He just looked at her for some time and he looked down at his hands and he sighed.

Cole: im sorry Ntokazi

She frowned looking at him because she didn't expect that.

Cole: im sorry for all the bad things I said and for making you feel like you mean nothing to me

She looked down.

Cole: you're not in competition with her Ntokazi she's dead

and not coming back ever

Marang: does it mean if she were to come back from the dead then I'll have competition?

Cole: you know what I meant don't be like that

Marang: no I actually don't

She said looking at him.

Cole: Ntokazi....

Marang: Cole you said im the air that you breathe but you treated me like shit just because I mentioned your love's name

He sighed and rubbed his eyes.

Cole: its not like that Ntokazi and I didn't treat you like shit I just lashed out and lost it

Marang: im telling you how I felt and you're busy saying what I felt was wrong

Cole: look that's not what im saying

Marang: then what are you saying Cole

She asked with an emotional voice

Cole: look im just not over her death I find it hard to move on from it

Marang: then why am I in your life then

He looked at her intensely.

Marang: its best we stay away from each other cause you're not over you late lover and I cant stomach you still holding on to her like that

He didn't say anything he just clenched his jaws and they remained silence for a while with Cole still looking at her with that intense look on his face.

Marang: you cant give me what I want so please stay away from me so I can heal

He swallowed hard.

Cole: is that what you want

She didn't say anything.

Cole: I asked you if that's what you want Marang

Tears ran down her cheeks but she didn't answer him and he chuckled and got up.

Cole: fine as you wish.....I'll stay away

He walked out looking angry and she busted out with a sob cause the truth of the matter is its not what she wanted.....

Outside Cole walked to his car in the parking lot looking angry then he heard someone calling him and he turned and found that's its Richard.

Richie: bro you ok

He asked when he saw the look on his face.

Cole: yeah.....uDineo left with that Collins guy right after our call

Then he walked away.

Richie: Cole!

Cole: I'll talk to you later

He kept on walking and he took out his phone and made a call.

Voice: wow.... hey Cole long time

A woman answered.

Cole: are you around

Voice: umm yeah but im at work right now

Cole: make up something and meet me at our usual hotel

Woman: wow so you only remember me when you horny huh

Cole: can you make it or should I find another pussy to fuck!
He said with a cold tone.

Woman: jeeez fine I'll be there

Cole: good I'll send you the room number.... and Neliswa

Neliswa: yeah

Cole: I don't wait for pussy pussy waits for me!

Then he dropped the call and he got into his car.

Meanwhile Richard was still standing there looking at Cole and his body language and he instantly became worried about him cause it could only mean one thing him and Marang had an unpleasant "talk"He sighed and he took out his phone and dialed Dineo's numbers but it rang unanswered then he send her a message and it read; "you better not be with that motherfucker Dineo especially with my child in your womb....i swear Dineo if you're with that pig I'll kill him...i'll fucken kill him"

INSIDE THE HOSPITAL

Marang got off the bed and she disconnected the IV but she didn't pull it out of her hand then she wore her gown and sleepers and she took her phone and walked out....she told the nurses that she's taking a walk cause she's bored inside her room and she walked out of the private ward with her mind on what happened between her and Cole she walked around slowly trying to find strength to not hurt herself again.....She kept on convincing herself that she made the right decision based on the fact that they both have serious things to deal with apart and to heal before they can even think of getting into a relationship but her heart wasn't agreeing with her she wished she could call him and tell him that she didn't mean what she said but her pride wouldn't let her.....after 10 minutes or so of walking around she spotted

an area that was being renovated she then saw a toolbox on the floor and she saw that no one was around they were busy inside one of the empty wards....Something told her to go closer to the toolbox and she saw a couple of things inside but what caught her eye were the long flat nails inside well she took two and quickly walked away putting them inside the pocket of her gown and she walked back to her ward.

Nurse: did you enjoy your walk?

She said smiling at her and Marang faked a smile.

Marang: yeah it was a bit refreshing

She went inside her room and she immediately went straight to the en-suit bathroom and she took off her gown and pjs and she unwrapped the bandage that was wrapped around her wrist and she took one nail and went inside the shower she ran the shower and she sat down making sure she doesn't wet her wounded wrist....she took the nail and she slid her other wrist enough for blood to come out but not too deep and she closed her eyes and she looked up moaning a bit as the pain she was feeling in her heart was being overshadowed by the one she was feeling on her wrist.....she stayed like that for some time until the stinging on her hand subsided a bit then she sighed and got up then she washed the blood off her hand to stop the bleeding and she switched off the shower tap and she dried herself and cleaned the wounds she then wrapped the bandage again on the first wrist and she wore her pjs and gown then she went back in her room and got on the bed and she sighed laying back.

Marang: im sorry Dee I just needed the pain to be better that's all

She said to herself and tears ran down her cheeks and she wiped them right then Dineo walked in with a box of pizza

and drinks and Marang's bag that had her books and study guides.

Dineo: im back.....look what I got you

Marang faked a smile and Dineo frowned at her.

Dineo: o sa batla go mbora Mara o fa nna fake smile....nna

Dinny? (don't bore me Mara you're giving me that fake smile....me Dinny)

Marang sighed and she looked down.

Marang: askies I forgot you can tell from my real smile to my fake one

She chuckled nervously.

Dineo: mmmmh and never forget that

Marang: yes mam

Dineo: goodso your books to study and pizza to eat

Marang smiled genuinely.

Marang: thank you Dee I forgot you can tell from my real smile to my fake one

She chuckled nervously.

Dineo: mmmmh and never forget that

Marang: yes mam

Dineo: goodso your books to study and pizza to eat

Marang smiled genuinely.

Marang: thank you Dee I know I don't always say this but I love you and you mean a lot to me sis

Dineo smiled at her.

Dineo: and you mean a lot to me too aunty Marang

They both laughed.

Marang: I wonder if it will ever sink in that you're pregnant

Dineo: yeah neh....imagine nna Dee ngwana Lydia pregnant (imagine me Dee Lydia's child pregnant)

Marang: you practically take care of me so im sure you'll

make a wonderful mother

Dineo smiled.

Dineo: well one thing I know is im not gonna raise a spoiled brat

Marang laughed lightly and Dineo sat down.

Dineo: mmm so the nurse told me you took a walk today

Marang cleared her throat.

Marang: yeah after the talk with Cole I needed one

She said looking down.

Dineo: what happened?

Marang: I told him to stay away from me and he said as I wish and he walked out

She said that and swallowed hard blinking away the tears and Dineo got closer to her and she hugged her then they broke it.

Dineo: you know I thought ya'll will fix things

Marang: we are both dealing with things so it won't work.....he can't let Shirley go and im insecure because of her even though she's dead as long as he still hang up on her like that I'll always get hurt I just want to be the only woman in his heart and now he can't give me that

Dineo sighed.

Dineo: im sorry

Marang: it hurts Dee

She said as tears ran down her cheeks and Dineo hugged her as she sobbed Marang then felt a sting on her recent cut and she almost reacted but then she pressed her wound hard on Dineo's back and she concentrated on the pain instead of the one in her heart.

They were now calm and eating with Dineo telling Marang about her breakfast “date” with Collins.

Marang: why do you say he’s changed?

Dineo: there’s something off about him man he’s.... eish I don’t know

She said with a ‘worried’ frown on her face.

Marang: well you might be right I mean the Collins we know would’ve tried to explain to you he’s not looking for trouble and that he’s into you and not me but Dee the guy chuckled and it seemed like he was challenging....ummm Cole

Dineo: yeah I mean dude even bumped into Cole’s shoulder imagine.....my Collins is kind and sweet...he’s basically a darling not this new Collins who is just too.... eish i don’t even know how to describe him

She sighed.

Marang: mmmmh he seems different

She said taking a bite off her slice of pizza.

Dineo: can you even believe after I told him about what Mazwi did to you he said he’ll call “his contacts” to make sure he doesn’t make bail

Marang: so o na le dicontacts now? (he has contacts now)

Dineo: mmmmh and the way his phone rang when we were having breakfast you wouldn’t believe that he’s only been in the country for three days fela (only)

They kept quiet a bit.

Marang: wait...has he really been in the country for three days fela or.....

Dineo swallowed.

Dineo: well I wouldn’t be shocked if he lied....i mean now he even speaks some tsotsitaal (thug language) he was like “

eish ka zwakala” and I was “and nou?” (“ im coming” and I was like “and now?”)

She said making a shocked face.

Marang: He said that?

She nodded and took a large bite on her slice of pizza.

Dineo: I tried to ask him when he started talking in tsotsitaal and he quickly diverted the whole thing to something else

Marang: ai a re itsi Dee (ai we don't know Dee) let's hope he's not a gangster now

Dineo: yeah mara moerskond nigga is hot bathong.....even his new walk and the hair cut im not even gonna mention his new style of clothes...he's just yummy bathong

Marang giggled.

Dineo: ai anyway let's stop talking about married men like that..... take another slice or I'll finish the whole thing

Marang: nah im full

Dineo: don't start Marang tuu

Marang: its not that bathong.....i ate that breakfast ummm Cole brought

Dineo: ooh kane (ooh yeah right)....anyway did Richard come?

She said taking another slice.

Marang: nope....and why are avoiding him like this or is it because Collins is around

Dineo: nope apparently Mmabatho is also pregnant

Marang: no ways

Dineo: mmmmh and nigga knew and he kept it from me....can you believe that bitch even ambushed me at my place warning me to stay away from her husband busy telling me shit nx le nko e kima (with her big nose)

Marang: ooh my God

Dineo: mmmmh mara sa wara (don't worry) im not scared of her and as for Richie hmm o tlo Googl(a) (he'll Google) “ ways on how to make a pregnant and crazy side chick that I love to forgive me ” by the time im done with him

Marang giggled.

Dineo: ka mmona ompala dikuranteng dai moerskond (I see he reads me on the papers that asshole)

Marang: shame I feel sorry for him

Dineo: you should cause he'll come beg you to talk to me soon

Marang continued to giggle.

AT THE HOTEL

A knock was heard on the door and Cole pulled out and he went to open without even putting something on his dick was rock hard with a condom on and he was sweating like crazy.... he opened the door and there stood Neliswa.

Cole: ooh it's you

He said with a bored look on his face.

Neliswa: what's all this Cole...why didn't you stop me from coming here since you found someone to help you out

Cole: I told you I don't wait for pussy pussy waits for me now are you coming in or what

She swallowed emotionally and she contemplated on whether she should come in or not.

Cole: I don't have all day Neliswa!

He snapped at her and she jumped a bit with fright and she took a step and he moved out of the way then she walked

in.... she found a woman tied to the bed with her legs wide opened and a cloth put in her mouth.... the woman winked at her and she gasped and turned to Cole.

Cole: are you watching or are you joining us.

Neliswa: wh..what?

Cole: what's wrong with you today huh first you take forever to get here and now you're acting like a retard and you're acting all emotional and shit

Neliswa: i...i was busy that's why...

Cole: I don't care now which one is it?

Neliswa: ummm I'll watch

Cole: suit yourself

He climbed back on the bed and he finger fucked the other woman as he sucked on her breast....he then stopped fingering her and he inserted himself and he started fucking the woman hard with his one hand grabbing her breast tight...as for Neliswa she sat down and closed her thighs and squeezed them tight as she watched feeling aroused.....the truth of the matter is she caught feelings and she thought as time went by he will too but then one day he just left her in a hotel room when she was asleep without even a goodbye and she never heard anything form him for weeks until today and he's still a cold heartless beast as he was weeks back if not more even though he's busy fucking another woman right in front of her she still feels the same way about him and she wishes one day he will feel the same as she feels for him.....she came back to her senses when she heard him groan a bit and he pulled out and the condom was filled with his sperms he got out of bed and he took off the cloth out of the woman's mouth and he smirked at her.

Cole: damn you still have a delicious pussy baby

She giggled and Neliswa swallowed hard getting emotional again cause she thought she was the only woman he fucked.

Woman: and your dick is still as huge and yummy dzaddy

He chuckled and he went to the bathroom and Neliswa looked at the woman swallowing hard.

Woman: im DK and you are?

Neliswa: Neliswa

DK: mmmmh so did you catch feelings or you just like to watch

She said smirking at her.

Neliswa: askies?

DK: its fine to catch feelings I mean nigga is handsome rich has a huge dick and he can fuck meaning all in all he's the whole package but sweetie Cole doesn't do relationships or love period I mean dude doesn't even kiss he just fucks

Cole: make it clear to her babygirl since you're the only one that understands our arrangement

Neliswa: I haven't caught any feelings

She said in a defensive manner and DK laughed.

Cole: good then take off your clothes and join her or leave

He said as he went to pour himself a drink and she swallowed and got up composing herself and she started taking off her clothes.

DK: good girl

Cole: now eat her pussy up and do that kneeling on the bed with your legs opened and your ass out I wanna see that pussy

He said going to sit down and Neliswa did as told and Cole stroked himself as he watched her now dripping pussy.... he got up and he reached for a condom and put it on then he knelt behind Neliswa and slid in....she moaned out loud.

Cole: don't stop eating that pussy Nelly....i wanna hear both of ya'll moaning

He said as he started moving in and out of her with a fast pace.....he increased his pace with his head looking up and his eyes closed with Marang's image in his head.....he looked down and fucked Neliswa hard thinking of Marang and her sexy moans that drives him crazy and not forgetting her countless quirts.

19

AT DINEO'S PLACE

She was busy studying when she heard a knock on the door she got up and went to open only to find an angry looking Richard by the door.

Richie: OPEN THIS FUCKEN SECURITY DOOR!

She sighed and reached for the keys and opened for him then he walked in....she closed the security door and the door and when she turned Richard grabbed her by her neck and pinned her by the door with a deadly look on his face.

Dineo: Richar...

Richard: SHUT UP!

She kept quiet looking scared....the grip on her neck wasn't tight but the look on his face was scary as hell.

Richie: o nyako nnyela Dineo! (you want to shit yourself Dineo)

She shook her head no.

Richie: KE RE ONYAKO NNYELA NA DINEO! (I said do you

want to shit yourself Dineo)

He shouted at her.

Dineo: n...no

Richie: ke masepa a eng a o a dirang Dineo (what is this shit you're doing) keng (what) you want to see the other side of me is that it? you want me to take my father's teachings about how to treat a woman and show you what im capable of doing especially to people who disrespect me heh?

She shook her head no.

Richie: then why ontlwaetsa ka di bari.... (why are you giving fools the platform to disrespect me)

She didn't say anything.

Richie: o batla go bona eng Dineo! (what do you want to see Dineo).....you want to see how heartless I can be is that it?

Dineo: im sorry Richie

She said looking scared.

Richie: VOETSEK DID I SAY WANT YOUR FUCKEN SORRIES...DID I?

He shouted and she closed her eyes shaking.

Richie: has he touched you?

She shook her head no.

Richie: you sure?

She nodded quickly and he looked at her for some time then he clicked his tongue and let her go and he paced around trying to calm himself while she just stood there looking at him as she rubbed her neck.

Richie: sit!

She didn't move she just looked at him blinking fast trying to fight off her tears.

Richie: I SAID SIT DINEO!

He roared and she closed her eyes and tears ran down her

cheeks then she slowly walked to the lounge area and she sat down he then went and sat down on the coffee table facing her.

Richie: are you still in love with that bastard

She looked away and she shook her head.

Richie: I want you to say it Dineo!

Dineo: NO!

She snapped at him.

Richie: hey you don't get to fucken snap at me....otla nnyela

Dineo! (you'll shit yourself Dineo)

He warned her and she sulked looking away.

Richie: nx

He sighed.

Richie: now listen here.... you gonna stay away from that

fucker you hear me

She didn't say anything.

Richie: DINEO!

Dineo: no

Richie: askies

Dineo: I said no

Richie: o re no?

She nodded.

Richie: Dineo

Dineo: Richard

Richie: o batla go nnyela nou? (you want to shit yourself now)

Dineo: no

He looked at her.

Dineo: im not gonna play to your tune Richard cause you're not mine to begin with....you have a wife that is pregnant.... a wife that is probably carrying your heir so wena you want me

to stay away from another man while wena you continue being a husband to Mmabatho hai shem aneva (never)

Richard sighed.

Dineo: you have Mmabatho and I have Collins its as simple as that

Richie: wa nnyela....you're telling me nonsense Dineo.....you have who heh?...you have who?

He said looking angry and she kept quiet.

Richie: I see you want his blood on your hands right.....that's what you want right?

She didn't say anything.

Richie: im asking you a fucken question!

Dineo: no

Richie: yes you do now listen here if you entertain that bastard I'll fucken kill him and im not playing....i'll fucken kill him wena dare me and you'll see!

Dineo: you're two faced wena Richard you want your bread buttered on both sides and you get mad when im "hanging out" with another man....o motho o mo yang kganthe? (what kind of a person are you)

Richie: I have no fucken choice Dineo why can't you understand that heh....i don't fucken want my ancestors to deal with me cause they are savage like that.....if I had a choice I'll fucken divorce her but I don't ok...i don't!

She didn't say anything.

Richie: I don't love her she knows that and I know you also know that....i even asked you to be my second wife but you're refusing now what the hell do you want from me....what!

Her bottom lip trembled as she got emotional.

Richie: im trying Dineo....im fucken trying what more do you

want from me heh? Now my mother knows about you I even told her that even if she calls a family meeting I won't stay away from you....doesn't that show you that I love you
Tears ran down her cheeks.

Richie: im a calm person Dee but don't fuck me over.... don't take my calmness as me being weak cause im dangerous when my buttons are pushed...don't dare me like that disrespectful thing called Mmabatho does

She still maintained her silence then a knock was heard on the door and Richard got up to check who it was and Dineo wiped her tears off silently praying that it shouldn't be Collins.... her prayers weren't heard cause as soon as Richard opened the door Collins stood there.

Richie: what the fuck are you doing here?

Collins: to see the owner of this apartment

Richard clenched his jaws.

Richard: didn't I warn you to fucken stay away from Dineo

Collins: I thought you're married man now what are you doing here huh?

Dineo: Collins what are you doing here

She said walking to the door then she stood next to an angry Richard.

Collins: hey I came to pick you up so we can go see Marang

Richard: she's not going with you now fuck off from here!

Collins chuckled.

Collins: Dee?

She swallowed.

Dineo: ummm I can't go with you im sorry

Collins: wow really now Dee?

He said raising an eyebrow at her.

Richard: you heard her now bounce!

He slammed the door on his face and Collins chuckled.
Collins: I'll call you later Dee just send me a "please call me"
when he leaves and I'll call you!

He said on the other side of the door and he walked away.

Richie: son of a bitch

He attempted to open the door but Dineo stopped him.

Dineo: leave him please

Richie: ontellisa ka selo sele wa bona nou Dineo! (you're
giving that thing the platform to disrespect me you see now
Dineo)

Dineo: im sorry Richie

Richie: haai fokof man nx

He went to the bedroom looking angry and Dineo sighed.

Dineo: I swear im cursed

She said to herself and she went to sit down feeling down.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Cole was now in his house drinking like a fish while sitting on the cold floor....after his threesome he gave the ladies some money and he left.....now he wishes he didn't sleep with those ladies cause he feels like shit....like he cheated on Marang even the sex didn't make him feel better..... He has been talking to an invisible "Shirley" for some time now it was like he was having a mental breakdown or some sort making the house help scared in the process to a point that she even called Richard to come over..... Anyway he closed his eyes and he swallowed hard as Marang's words played in his head.

Cole: fuck!

He said and he rubbed his eyes.

Cole: tell me what I should do to get over your death Shirley....just tell me what I need to do to completely move on

Then his phone rang it was his brother Zakhele.....he clicked his tongue.

Cole: ufunani lo? (what does he want)

He answered.

Cole: yah

Zakhele: YOU PIECE OF SHIT!

Cole: what is it Zakhele im not in the fucken mood!

He said with a pissed off tone.

Zakhele: I come home from overseas and find mom in my house and she said you had people kick her out of her fucken house....what the fuck is wrong with you Qophelo!

He said sounding angry.

Cole: ooh so KZN is now overseas?

Then he laughed.

Cole: anyway that house is mine brother....my name is on the title deed so ungazongibedela wena! (don't piss me off)

Zakhele: what did you do you bastard im sure you forged the fucken title deed!

Cole laughed.

Cole: well I would've loved to but guess what.... dad changed the house to my name before he died

Zakhele: you're lying...dad loved ma he wouldn't do that to her

Cole laughed again.

Cole: you're so clueless I even pity you Zakhele..... your stupid mother is a lying cheating whore.....she even connived

with her lover to kill dad so ungazngitshela ngo love la.....nx
love yamasimba! (so don't tell me about love....shitty love!)

Zakhele: you know Qophelo with all the shit you have said
about ma before this is the shittiest of them all.... that's low
even for a piece of shit like you nx

Cole: well I don't care if you believe me or not in fact I don't
give a fuck Zakhele uyangizwa I don't give a fuck.....wena just
go to your mother and ask her who your real father is and
stop wasting my fucken time nx

Then he dropped the call and almost immediately it rang
again and it was still Zakhele.....he rejected the call and even
blocked his numbers.

Cole: nx

He gulped down his drink and poured another one and
gulped all of it down at one go then he laughed.

Cole: you see Shirley my love.....you see how fucked up I
am....i even kicked my own mother out of her matrimonial
home

He laughed again.

Cole: anyway going back to Marang I lost her too and this
time it's really my fault.....i can't find closure and its messing
with my head..... She told me to stay away from her and I
didn't even fight her even though I know I love her

He chuckled.

Cole: im fucked up I know

Then he burped.

Cole: she's different you know..... and I know she's a bit
younger than me but age is just a number right

He drank from the bottle.

Cole: I mean mkhulu Qophelo the first was 18 years older
than ugogo and man he loved her....that old dead nigga loved

ugogo to death

He chuckled.

Cole: even at old age he still looked at her like she's some rare jewel.....i mean old nigga still called her "ntombi yam enhle " even when they were old and wrinkled and ugogo would blush like a teenager each time.... fuck it was an amazing thing to see

He smiled thinking about his late grandparents.

Cole: well khehla (old man) died first but he loved ugogo and he even died a happy man

He chuckled feeling emotional.

Cole: gogo said a night before he died he begged her to also search for him in the next life cause he definitely will be waiting for her

A tear dropped and he wiped it and chuckled then he drank from the bottle of whiskey again taking a large sip and he burped and laughed.

Cole: I always wanted that kind of love you know....at first I thought I'll have it with that bitch Vuyiswa but we both know how that ended then I met you and I thought yeah I finally found her then you decided to leave me too and now I met Marang...sweet Mara as Richard calls her and this time im the one that fucked up cause I know what she's going through she's vulnerable and emotional and broken and all I had to do was be there for her you know..... but I let my issues with you to ruin things with her and now she wants me to stay away from her

He chuckled shaking his head and he took another large sip then the door opened and Richard walked in and the house help rushed to him looking scared and worried at the same time.

Richard: the fuck!

He said as his eyes landed on the trashed lounge room.... the 74 inch flat Tv was on the floor with a cracked screen and the couches and coffee table were flipped upside down even the vases were broken to pieces.

Richie: are you ok ma....did he hurt you?

Helper: qa he was busy screaming whilst throwing and breaking things and now he's been sitting there for some time drinking and talking to someone or something... ai angazi(I don't know)

Richard sighed.

Richie: its ok Ma you can go sleep I'll take it from here

Helper: let me clean up first...

Richie: no don't worry I'll have it sorted out.....just go and sleep ma I'll handle everything

The helper sighed and nodded then she looked at Cole and walked away....Then Richie went to Cole.

Richie: bro come lets go

He said helping him to get up.

Cole: aow Mricho...i was just telling Shirley about Marang and how I fucked things between us

Richard swallowed.

Richie: ooh ok now get up mfowethu it's time for you to go to bed now

Cole: you should call Marang and tell her I love her man and that im sorry

Richard sighed.

Richie: ok I will

He helped him up and he helped him walk upstairs to the main bedroom with Cole busy blabbing about Marang and how much he loves her.

The following day he woke up with a banging headache but luckily Richard was still around and he made him a homemade hangover remedy he even drank painkillers and went back to bed cause he felt like shit it was as if he was hit by a train....as for Richard he was worried about Cole cause the last time he saw him like this was when Shirley was raped and she ended up committing suicide....now he knew that he truly loved Marang but his issues where preventing him from moving on and loving her wholeheartedly.....He sighed and his phone rang it was Mmabatho he clenched his jaws and answered.

Richie: yah

Mmabatho: is that how you answer my calls now Tirelo!

Richie: im not in the mood Mmabatho he clenched his jaws and answered.

Richie: yah

Mmabatho: is that how you answer my calls now Tirelo!

Richie: im not in the mood Mmabatho what do you want

She kept quiet a bit biting her lower lip cause Richard's " I don't give a fuck about you" attitude toward her was getting to her big time.

Mmabatho: you didn't sleep at home last night Tirelo

Richie: I send you a message telling you I'll spend the night at Cole's

She chuckled bitterly.

Mmabatho: we both know you slept at that bitch's place

Tirelo so don't fucken make me a fool

Richard chuckled shaking his head.

Mmabatho: I get that you're a man-whore but can you at least respect me..... It's already 11 am for fucks sake!

Richie: I think it's time I take you back to your people so they'll teach you manners and how to be a good wife cause you fail at being one!

Mmabatho: what did you just say..... How can I be a good wife to a man-whore?

Richie: well bra Mmabatho im a man-whore that will never love you how about that nx

Then he dropped the call leaving her hurt by what he said and she dialed her mother's numbers.

QueenBahumi: my princess

Mmabatho: I hate him mama....i hate him so much!

She said crying.

QueenBahumi: you hate who....what's going on Batho why are you crying

Mmabatho: Tirelo....he...he....

She cried.

QueenBahumi: Mmabatho what's going on?

Mmabatho: im glad I cheated on him ma and im glad this baby is not even his....i hate him and im glad im not carrying his seed he doesn't deserve to have my blessed womb carry his useless seed!

She shouted.

Voice: WHAT?

She quickly turned and found Richard's mother standing there and she froze.

Mmabatho: my...my queen

QueenBahumi: who's that Mmabatho?

Mmabatho quickly dropped the call.

QueenMotlalepula: what... did... you... just... say... little girl!

She said with a frown on her face and Mmabatho sat there shaking with her eyes popped out and heart beating fast.

AT KWENENG KINGDOM

The royal traditional healer walked inside the yard and he walked straight to the palace he walked in now chanting some words and as soon as one of the royal maids saw him she rushed to call the king.....

The traditional healer sat down on the floor by the door and he started humming an ancestral hymn The king Letukile Kgosietsile Kweneng III came with his second wife Queen Boitumelo Kweneng walking behind him and as soon as the traditional healer felt the king's presence since he was looking down he knelt with one knee on the floor looking down and he started singing praises;

“ Kwena e ntsho ya modiane tau
Fifi la mokwena
E e neng etswa e tlhola maimane
E tswe e me ka maroo kwiting
Kgagarapa ya mangana.....”

He said all the praises then he remained kneeling like that. Kgosi.Kweneng: voice of the ancestors is everything alright? He asked worried cause every time the traditional healer came to the palace and he sat by the door he has a serious message from the ancestors.

Healer: I have a message from the ancestors Your Highness

Kgosi.Kweneng: im all ears wise one

Healer: the great ancestors of BaKweneng said the heir apparent to the throne is on his way back home

The king and his wife frowned looking at the healer then they looked at one another then back at the healer again.

Kgosi.Kweneng: please make me understand wise one is it Tirelo the ancestors are talking about?

He asked with his heart beating fast.

Healer: the ancestors are talking about the rightful heir apparent to the throne..... the first son to you Your Highness Letukile Kgosietsile Kweneng IV has found his way back home The queen gasped she stood there shocked then her eyes got filled with tears and her hands started shaking.

Kgosi.Kweneng: you mean....you mean Kgosietsile is alive and he's coming back home?

He asked with a shocked voice.

Healer: a big feast should be prepared for his return and the royal family along with the whole villager should celebrate for the return of their heir apparent to the throne.... even other kings from other Kingdoms should also be invited.....the ancestors have spoken!

Then he got up and bowed.

Healer: KWENA!

Then he turned and walked out chanting some ancestral hymn.

QueenBoitumelo: my...my son is alive....he's alive

She said with tears running down her cheeks she was still shaking.

QueenBoitumelo: ooh the ancestors have heard my cries.....they have heard my cries

She said as she got down on her knees crying.....she praised

their ancestors crying while the King just stood there not believing what he heard.....its been almost two years since his first son from his second wife Kgosietsile disappeared the plane that he boarded from Egypt where he went for an important meeting with some Egyptian investors disappeared somewhere between South Sudan and DRC and with the war going on in DRC it was believed that the rebels may have shot it down and no one survived.....at the other hand the Kweneng ancestors were quiet they were not saying anything with regards to his disappearance until now so no one knew whether he was alive or not they all assumed that maybe he died along with the rest of the passengers since its been almost two years now since the plane disappeared.

It was now in the afternoon around 3 and Richard was on the phone with Dineo and she was telling him that Marang was discharged and she was getting ready to go pick her up and that the lawyer called Marang and said the date for the bail hearing for Mazwi has been set.....then Cole walked in the kitchen just as Richard was ending the call with Dineo.

Richie: damn you still look like shit but at least you look like a better shit now

Cole: fsek

Richie laughed and Cole took out bottled water in the fridge and he sat down.

Richie: should I make you one too

Cole nodded Richie was making himself a sandwich.

Richie: I heard the date for the bail hearing for that boy Mazwi has been set

Cole: yeah I was woken up by that lawyer's call.... it's about damn time

Richie: I hope Marang is strong enough to face him

Cole: she has a strong support system she'll be fine

Then he drank some water and he frowned.

Cole: you know I had a weird dream about Kgosi

He said with a worried look on his face.

Richie: he was telling you that he's in heaven and he's happy and that we should all accept that he's not coming back?

Cole: nah...he was actually here

Richie: heh?

Cole sighed.

Cole: mmmh....the was a knock on the door and when I opened he was standing there....he kept on saying it was really him and I wasn't dreaming.....shit I swear it felt real man

Richie sighed.

Richie: well I wish it was real man....i miss him

Cole sighed.

Cole: I miss him too.....that was my nigga man....my partner in crime my candle holder man

They both laughed.

Richie: I wonder how he would've reacted with this Dineo and Mmabatho shit

Cole: he was a serious motherfucker but I bet he would've found humor with this shit about your two baby mamas

They laughed.

Richie: you know I remember him telling me before he left that I should keep checking up on you and I thought he meant that I should make sure you don't fuck too many women not that I should make sure you're ok after his

disappearance....gape you two were the bad twins
Cole chuckled.

Richie: the shit you two did
He chuckled.

Richie: if the King ever finds out I swear he'll have a heart
attack

They both laughed then they kept quiet a bit as Richard was
busy slicing some polony for Cole's sandwich.

Richie: now let's talk about the huge elephant in the
room.....what happened to you last night man?

Cole sighed.

Cole: I don't wanna talk about it man so let it go

Richie sighed.

Richie: ok as you wish..... anyway last night Dee told me you
and Mara are done for real this time

Cole didn't say anything he just clenched his jaws.

Cole: will you just finish up with that sandwich

Richie chuckled shaking his head.

Richie: anyway she said the doctor that is treating Marang
was flirting with her remember the dude is one of those
young doctors and she thinks he likes her

He lied and Cole looked at him with a serious frown on his
face.

Cole: what?

Richie: mmmmh

Cole: that's absurd she's his patient he can't fucken do
that....in fact who the fuck does he think he is!

He said sounding angry.

Richie: I just talked to Dee now and she said Marang is
discharged from the hospital so now she's not his patient
anymore meaning anything can happen

Cole: uyanya uMarang is not like that she won't fall for some stupid doctor!

He said sounding worked up.

Richie: why are you angry....you and Marang are done so....

Cole: will you just shut up!

He got up and walked away looking angry leaving Richard looking amused.

IN THE NOW FIXED LOUNGE

Cole's phone rang as he sat down and he answered.

Cole: yah

He said still angry about what Richard told him.

Voice: hey Cole

Cole frowned.

Cole: who's this?

Voice: its Linda Shirley's sister

His eyes popped out.

Cole: Belinda?

Linda: yeah

She giggled.

Cole: ummm wow I haven't heard from you since....

Linda: since a few days after Shirley's funeral....yeah it's been long

Cole: ummm yeah....how have you been?

Linda: I've been good.....I was out of the country for some time but now im back

Cole: ooh ok

He was still surprised by her call.

Linda: ummm I have a favour to ask....i hope you don't mind

Cole: ask away

Linda: ummm im coming to Pretoria for a week and I was wondering if you don't mind I crash at your place hotels are expensive and my business is still new so every cent counts
Cole cleared his throat.

Cole: ummm ok...you said a week

Linda: ummm yeah I have to attend a workshop there for a week

Cole: ok so when will the workshop thing start

Linda: Monday look I know its short notice but I wanted to book into a hotel then I checked my financials and they said yeah you can afford it but you'll eat macaroni with tin fish for the next couple of weeks to recover so I swallowed my pride and called you

Cole chuckled.

Cole: you don't have to explain Linda its ok you can stay here I don't mind

She breathed out.

Linda: ok thank you so much I swear you won't even know im there

Cole: ok

Linda: ummm ok then I'll see you on Sunday

Cole: alright shap

Linda: bye

She ended the call and he sighed.

Richie: who's that that's making you worried like that or keng you're still mad about Marang and the doctor

He said giving him his sandwich with a smirk on his face.

Cole: fsek..... its Belinda Shirley's sister she asked for a place to stay for a week

Richie: she's gonna stay here....in this house with you in it?

Cole: why do you have that look on your face?

Richie: well we both know that chick had a crush on you Cole and that crush didn't fade away even when you were dating her younger sister and now you're single and im sure she's single too and she'll be here and you'll be here too.....you getting where this is going?

Cole: no I don't

He said with a serious look on his face and Richie laughed.

Richie: mmmmh yah neh Collins is busy trying to steal my girl Marang is fancied by a young good looking doctor and now your ex's sister that had a crush on you and im sure she still does is coming to stay with you.... kurough straight

Cole: you're not funny you know that and I said Marang is not like that....she's still dealing with shit so she doesn't need some stupid doctor to disturb her healing process!

Richard chuckled.

Richie: are you sure?

Cole: nx you know what you can have your stupid sandwich I'll order pizza for myself

He said getting up and Richard laughed.

Richie: order with extra cheese daar

Cole: fsek!

20

AT RICHARD AND MMABATHO'S HOUSE

Q.Motlalepula: answer me!

Batho: i...ummm....i....

Q.Motlalepula: you stupid witch....you cheated on my son and got pregnant!

She shouted.

Batho: no i didn't....i didn't....ooh God.....im sorry

She said getting up and she stood there shaking.

Q.Motlalepula: how dare you cheat on my son you evil child!

Batho: ooh please what about your son huh....he's busy with some whore but I guess just because he's your son it doesn't matter right

Q.Motlalepula: how dare you talk to me like that...how dare you!

She said shouting at her but Mmabatho looked at her with a face full of attitude.

Q.Motlalepula: I see you think just because you're married to my son you can talk to me anyhow right well let me school you little girl..... I can make your marriage a living hell I can just support my son into taking a second wife and support the wife by grooming her to take over from me so tread carefully nx

Mmabatho swallowed hard.

Q.Motlalepula: to think I thought you are good for my son but you're just like all those desperate and useless peasants out there nx

Tears filled Mmabatho's eyes.

Q.Motlalepula: now listen here and listen good....you gonna get rid of that thing if you still want to be queen of the BaKweneng..... you'll get rid of that thing as soon as possible in fact you have two days to get rid of it or everyone will know how much of a whore you are nx

She turned and walked upstairs and Mmabatho sat down

slowly with tears running down her cheeks.

LATER AT NIGHT

Richard walked in and sighed when he saw his mother sitting in the lounge with the Tv playing.

Q.Motlalepula: is this the time to come home Tirelo?

Richie: not now mother ok I had a long day so I don't need this from you

Q.Motlalepula: o reng Tirelo? (what did you say Tirelo)

Richard sighed.

Richie: good night

He turned and walked away.

Q.Motlalepula: Richard Tirelo Kweneng get back here!

He turned and went back to the lounge and he stood there with a bored look on his face.

Q.Motlalepula: o tsenwe ke eng Tirelo (what has gotten into you Tirelo)....have you forgotten who you are!.... go diragala eng ka wena Tirelo heh? (what's happening with you Tirelo?)

She asked with an angry voice.

Richie: what did I do ma huh...what?

The queen got up.

Richie: cause if it's about me taking a second wife well news flash it's within my rights to take more than one wife so stop acting like I killed someone!

Q.Motlalepula: e bile o bua le nna ka makgakga Tirelo (you're even talking to me in such a manner Tirelo) besides being the queen im your mother damn it!

Richard sighed.

Q.Motlalepula: there's a right way for you to take a second

wife Tirelo this is not it!

Richie: look I made my choice whether you accept it or not it's up to you but Dineo will be my second wife mother finish and klaar

Q.Motlalepula: over my dead body! You will not bring a nobody into our family!

Richard chuckled.

Richie: the good thing about it is that it's not up to you my queen so you can vent all you want I don't care

Then he walked away.

Q.Motlalepula: TIRELO IS THAT HOW YOU TALK TO ME NOW....HEI WENA TIRELO!

Richard continued to walk up the stairs ignoring her.

Q.Motlalepula: I see you don't know me....bring that thing into our family and you'll know who exactly your mother is nx
She sat down feeling angry.

IN THE THEIR BEDROOM

Richard walked in and he started taking off his clothes and he went to the en-suit bathroom ignoring Mmabatho's sniffs....after he was done with taking a shower he dried himself and also put lotion on and he wore his pj pants and got inside the covers and he switched off his side lamp facing the other side.

Mmabatho: Tirelo do you even care about me?

He kept quiet.

Mmabatho: Tirelo?

Richie: eish Mmabatho im trying to sleep man

Mmabatho: what have I done to you for you to hate me this much?

Richie: good night Mmabatho

He pulled the covers to his head and she swallowed hard as more tears came out she remembered her mother telling her about the walls having ears but this time those walls were Queen Motlalepula she wished she didn't call her mother to vent like that and her secret would still be safe....she was more scared of Modiri's reaction when he finds out she had an abortion she knows that he's paranoid so if she tells him she lost the baby he'll investigate and when he finds out the truth all hell will break loose and she will lose everything.....on the other hand if she tells the queen that she can't do it then she'll definitely air her dirty laundry for all to see cause that's how heartless queen Motlalepula is.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

He grabbed her butt cheeks separating them and he went deeper and she cried out calling out his name and he groaned from deep down his throat as he hit it from the back.

Her: ooh Cole!

Cole: fuck!

He said as he went faster losing himself in her.....he went in and out of her pussy with a fast pace and he felt her body tense up.

Cole: shit wait for me ntokazi....wait for me!

Her: i...oooh shit....i cant....

Cole: im almost there baby.....im almost there!

He went deeper hitting it hard with the grip around her waist

getting tighter while she held on to the sheets.

Cole: shit let go baby...cum with me sthandwa sam!

He said with a deeper voice and she let go screaming out loud and Cole slammed into her releasing all his cum in her grunting as he pushed his dick deeper and deeper.

Cole: FUCK!

He cursed and he pulled out and collapsed next to her.

Cole: fuck that was amazing ntokazi....ngiyakthanda yezwa (I love you ok)....i fucken love you woman!

He said and kissed her cheek and when he was about to pull her closer she disappeared.

Cole: Ntokazi....Marang!

He called out to her looking around but she was nowhere in sight his heart started beating fast as he looked around but he couldn't see her.....right then he quickly opened his eyes and he quickly sat up on the bed looking around covered in sweat with his heart beating out of its ribcage.

Cole: shit...shit....it was a dream fuckkkk!

He said breathing heavily then grabbed his dick and he felt that his boxers were wet.

Cole: the fuck!

He peeked inside his boxers and he was covered with his cum and he swallowed hard.

Cole: shit!

He got out of bed and went to the bathroom to take a cold shower at 2am in the morning.

IN THE MORNING

He was having his breakfast thinking about the wet dream he had....the last time he had one was when he was in high

school and in that dream he was fucking his crush back then....he sighed frustrated and he drank his coffee then his phone rang.

Cole: yah

He answered.

Voice: hey its Linda ummm im on my way to the airport and I forgot that I didn't ask for your home address

She chuckled nervously and Cole sighed.

Cole: don't worry I'll get someone to come pick you up at the airport

Linda: ooh ok thank you

Cole: yeah just let me know as soon as you get into a plane

Linda: ok I will thanks again

Cole: sure

He ended the call and went to his contact list and he looked at Marang numbers then he sighed and put his phone down and he continued to eat his breakfast.

AT RICHARD AND MMABATHO'S HOUSE

The following morning Richard left early in the morning to avoid his mother....anyway the queen walked inside Mmabatho and Richard's bedroom and found Mmabatho still sleeping she opened the curtains and Mmabatho groaned.

Q.Motlalepula: get up and go bath we have to leave in an hour's time

Mmabatho: im not going

The queen laughed.

Q.Motlalepula: ok then I guess everyone will know the kind of whore you are

Mmabatho: you call me a whore what about your son

huh....just because he's a man its ok for him to be a man-whore

Q.Motlalepula: listen here girly I don't have time for games are gonna get rid of that thing in your womb or not

Mmabatho: how can you be so heartless huh

Q.Motlalepula: ooh please you're also heartless for trying to pin that bastard thing you're carrying to my son

Mmabatho's lips trembled as she fought off the tears.

Q.Motlalepula: you have two choices you either abort that thing or your dirty laundry will be aired for everyone to see Mmabatho looked at her with a mixture of anger and hurt face.

Q.Motlalepula: as for me I would choose the third option being to kill me but since I've been in this game for a long time now you should know that someone else knows about your little secret so if anything happens to me your secret will still be out in the open...so which is it gonna be little girl Mmabatho swallowed hard.

Q.Motlalepula: you have half an hour to make your decision or I'm leaving without you and you better not call Bahumi if you know what's good for you.....nx you think you'll double cross my only son and pin a bastard child on him ompala dikuranteng ka go bona nx (you read me in the newspapers I see nx)

She walked out and Mmabatho started sobbing.

AT COLE'S OFFICE

Someone knocked on the door.

Cole: come in

The door opened and Linda walked in pulling her traveling bag.

Linda: hey

Cole: hey

He got up and went to hug her but the hug wasn't what she thought she'll get it was brief and cold which made her feel disappointed.

Linda: thanks again for letting me crash at your house

Cole: yeah sure

Linda: and I thought I'll be driven to your house not your work place

Cole: I can't let a stranger go to my house alone Linda

Linda: wow stranger?

Cole: I don't know you like that the only thing I know about you is that you're Shirley's elder sister

Linda: ohh

She said with a low tone disappointed again.

Cole: yah

Linda: ok ummm I have a favour to ask

Cole: already?

He said looking at her with his hands inside his pockets looking yummy.

Linda: yeah ummm I haven't been to Shirley's grave ever since she was buried

Cole clenched his jaws and he moved to his seat and he sat down.

Linda: please accompany me to Shirley's grave

Cole: I haven't been there since....

Linda: and I understand but its been two years Cole I think its time now....its time we moved on

Cole swallowed.

Cole: im not ready for that Linda

Linda: ok but can you take me then....you'll stay in the car...please Cole I need to do this

She pleaded and he sighed.

Cole: fine....and you better make it quick I don't have all day

He said getting up and he took his phone and car key then he walked to the door.

Cole: bring your bag

Linda: oh...ok

She pulled her bag as she walked out she was disappointed at his behavior towards her she thought he'll treat her good since she's Shirley's sister and that he'll be more caring like he was when he was still dating her sister but he was cold as ice.

AT THE CEMETERY

He parked the car and switched the engine off.

Cole: make it quick

She swallowed disappointed cause she thought he'll change his mind.

Linda: ummm are you sure you don't wanna come with me

Cole: Linda I said I don't have all day

She sighed disappointed again.

Linda: ohk

She opened the door and walked further inside and Cole sighed. After some time she walked back to the car and got in then Cole started the car and drove out of the cemetery they drove in complete silence until they arrived at Cole's house and he drove in and parked the car then he opened the boot

and he got out of the car. He walked to the main door and Linda sighed with a disappointed look on her face cause not only didn't Cole open the door for her he didn't even take out her traveling bag in the boot....anyway she also got out and took her bag and closed the boot then she went inside. Cole: finally you're here....Ma this is Linda and she's gonna be staying here for a week....she's a woman like you so she'll clean after herself

Then he looked at Linda.

Cole: she's not a maid meaning you don't order her around like she's a child....you disrespect her you'll be disrespecting me and I don't take that lightly....my bedroom and my study room are off limits ok

Linda: ummm yeah

She said not happy at all.

Cole: good....Ma you'll show her the guest bedroom

Helper: yebo ndodana (yes son)

Then he walked out and he went to his car and drove out of the yard.

Helper: ok let me show you your bedroom

She walked to the stairs.

Linda: what about my bag?

Helper: im sure you heard Mr Qophelo miss you have two hands you pick it up

Linda: excuse me....first of all you're a maid at the end of the day even if he said you're not so don't act like you matter here

She said with a bit of attitude.

Helper: I actually matter miss....you should ask Qophelo he'll confirm it for you

Then she walked up the stairs leaving an angry looking Linda.

Cole parked the car and he got out then he went further inside.....after some time he stopped in front of a tombstone and he clenched his jaws tight trying by all means not to let them flow.....he looked at her names curved on the tombstone and his eyes got filled with tear....he then turned and walked away but he stopped midway and he turned and went back and he started pacing around with his jaws still clenched tight then his tears ran down his face and he stopped pacing.

Cole: why?

He said breathing heavily.

Cole: why Shey.....why did you do it.....why did you hurt me this much huh?

He said still breathing heavily.

Cole: how can you hurt me like this Shey.....why would you leave me like that...why?

He said with a broken voice.

Cole: I loved you Shey i still do I was ready to give you the best in life.....i wanted to wife you damn it and you decided to just leave me like that!

He said and he got on his knees crying.

Cole: why did you leave me.....how can you break me like that...

He said with tears running down his face.

Cole: how do I move on from this how do I love again heh....how do I trust that the next woman I fall for wont leave me too...how do I trust that Marang wont leave me too He said still crying.....after some time he stopped crying and

he was just sitting at the edge of the tombstone looking down.

Cole: I met someone.....her name is Marang but I call her ntokazi

He chuckled a bit.

Cole: and I love her but im still stuck up on you to tell her that.....

He sighed and he shook his head still looking down.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Later in the afternoon he walked inside the house feeling drained but lighter....he went into the kitchen and stopped when he found Linda wearing the shortest night dress ever without a gown....he cleared his throat and she turned and smiled seductively.

Cole: what are you doing?

Linda: im making coffee you want one

Cole: I meant what are you doing walking around half naked

Linda

Linda: ummm I just came to make myself some cup of coffee and im off to bed

He chuckled lightly shaking his head with his hands inside his pockets.

Cole: what you're doing is making you look cheap....respect yourself please

She frowned and he then attempted to walk out but stopped and turned.

Cole: you have nice long legs though but still respect yourself

He said looking at her bare legs and he turned again.
Cole: this should be the last time you walk around here half naked Linda this is not your house so respect it!
He walked away and she swallowed and sighed disappointed.
Linda: arg this is not what was supposed to happen damn it!
She said to herself and she poured the coffee into the sink and she rinsed the cup and walked out of the kitchen.

21

AT DINEO'S PLACE

The following day Marang and Dineo were having breakfast when they heard a knock on the door.....Dineo went to open and found Collins and some guy standing there.

Dineo: hi

Collins: hey may we come in?

Dineo: ummm sure

She made way for them and they walked in and Collins went to Marang.

Collins: hey kiddo

Marang: hi

He kissed her forehead and turned to look at Dineo.

Collins: hey...damn you're glowing....pregnancy suits you

She rolled her eyes and went to sit down and Collins chuckled.

Collins: anyway this is my friend Trey

Trey: hi

Them: hey

Collins: Trey this is Dineo and that is Marang

Trey nodded and they both sat down....Trey looked at Marang and he admired her beauty....he asked himself why would someone hurt her like that cause if she was his he would treat her like a queen.....He cleared his throat and looked down.

Collins: it looks like we came at the right time for breakfast

Dineo: shame we're almost done

She said sitting down and she picked her plate and continued to eat.

Collins: come on Dee you can't eat while we watch

Dineo: you know where the kitchen is Collins

Collin: are you for real now?

He asked with a frown.

Dineo: dude you left your wife and your chefs back ko Zambia so don't bore me please

Trey laughed and Collins shook his head.

Collins: so you're gonna embarrass me in front of my friend huh

Dineo: nope you embarrassed yourself shem

Trey chuckled.

Collins: mxm...anyway I'll just order pizza for us and you preggy you better not take even a slice from it

Dineo: sa wara (don't worry) I'll just take from Trey's own share

They all laughed.

Trey: you weren't lying when you said she's a special one

Dineo frown looking at him.

Dineo: special one?

Marang: oh oh

She said holding a laugh.

Trey: ummm not that kind of special one..... im talking about the “ don’t dare me I’ll fuck you up” special one

They laughed again.

Dineo: mxm

Collins took out his phone and ordered some pizza.

Dineo: so how long have you two known each other?

Trey: about a year

Dineo: mmmmh so you’ve been to Zambia

Trey: ummm n....

Collins: yeah...we met at a bar when he came to Zambia for a business trip

He interrupted Trey and Trey faked a smile.

Trey: yeah and since then we’ve been good friends

Dineo: ok cool

Marang: how’s Zambia is it different from South Africa

Trey cleared his throat.

Trey: not really...ummm you know every country is unique in its own way right

Marang nodded with a fake smile on her face.....she could see he was lying and she wondered why.

Collins: so how are you feeling kiddo?

He said changing the subject.

Marang: im better now

She said pulling the edges of her long sleeve shirt to her palms with a fake smile on her face.

Collins: good and about the bail hearing of that bastard.....i got your back ok

She nodded looking down and when she looked up she found Trey staring at her and he quickly looked at Collins when he saw that she caught him staring....Anyway the pizza got

delivered and they all indulged on it after sometime they heard a knock on the door and Dineo got up to open and she froze when she saw Richard and Cole standing there.

Dineo: ummm hi

Richard perked her lips and walked in followed by Cole and they stopped when they saw Collins and Trey inside.

Richie: what the hell is going on here?

Dineo: ummm it's not what you think ok

As for Cole he was giving Collins and Trey deadly looks.

Richie: what the fuck are they doing here!

Collins: take a chill pill will you.....we came to see Marang He said getting up and Trey also got up.

Cole: to see her for what!

Collins: look here man.....I knew her before you did so don't ask me stupid questions!

Cole: get the fuck out....now!

Dineo: wooh brikang net daar (wait....stop right there) and take a chill pill assomblief

Collins: this place might belong to Dineo but I fucken bought it for her so don't fucken tell me to get out!

Dineo: oooh shit

She whispered to herself and Marang looked away with a nervous look on her face.

Richie: what did you say?

Dineo: ummm Collins please go....please for peace sake

Collins: for real now Dineo?

Trey chuckled shaking his head.

Trey: wow!

He exclaimed.

Marang: please Collins for peace sake

Collins: fine I'll come by tomorrow

She nodded which made Cole angry.

Collins: let's go Tee

Trey: is it safe to leave the girls alone with these guys?

Cole chuckled pissed to the core.

Richie: hierdie bobbejaan maak my kwaad (this baboon is making me angry)

Collins: let's go man

Trey looked at Marang first then he followed Collins out.

Richie: you don't listen do you!

He asked Dineo looking angry.

Marang: stop shouting at her she's pregnant for God's sake.....and she tried to kick them out but they said they didn't come here to see her but me.....she didn't even eat the pizza they bought cause she was freaking out that you might come unannounced

She lied and Dineo nodded repeatedly.

Dineo: yes

Cole: then why the fuck didn't you call us heh!

Marang: he said the last time he remembered he bought this place for her and not Richard

Richie: so you have been staying at an apartment bought by that bastard Dineo?

Dineo: Richie please

Richie: please what?....please what?

Cole: go and pack....you're leaving this place now

Dineo: no we're not

She said with a straight face.

Cole: look here Dineo just because you're ok with hanging around men you know nothing about doesn't mean you should involve Marang into all that shit!

He said with an angry voice.

Dineo: o sa batla go nnyela Cole wankutlwa (don't piss me off Cole you hear me).....the last time I checked you and Marang broke up so don't come here and play a protective boyfriend nxa!

Cole: Richie you better reprimand this bitch of yours before I lose it

Dineo: bitch ke mmao le marete nx (a bitch is your mother you cunt).....in fact you know what get the fuck out!

Cole: what did you just say?

Dineo: GET OUT NOW!

Richie: Dineo

Dineo: I said get out or I'll call the cops on you
She said looking angry.

Marang: I can't believe you called Dineo a bitch Cole
He looked at Marang and sighed.

Marang: Dineo is right....you should leave....now!
She said getting up with a frown on her face.

Cole: Ntokazi

Marang: don't call me that.....my name is Marang
He chuckled shaking his head.

Cole: you know what...whatever!
He walked out looking pissed.

Dineo: o emetseng(what are you waiting for).....leave
Richard!

Richie: what the fuck did I do?

Dineo: you have no back bone that's what you did.... how can you stand there and let another man insult me like that

Richie: look Dee i...

Dineo: leave Richard....kopa o tsamaye(please leave)

He sighed and shook his head then he walked out slamming the door behind him.

Dineo: nx

Marang: I cant believe Cole called you a bitch

Dineo: the worst part is Richard did nothing about it.....i
always knew Richard is a weak ass but this yhu hai shame
She breathed out and sat down then Marang sat down too.

Dineo: thank you for having my back

Marang: you don't have to thank me Dee we're sisters and
you need to calm down for the baby's sake

Dineo breathed out and a smile formed on her face and they
hugged tightly.

TWO DAYS LATER

It was the day for the bail hearing of Mazwi's and Marang
was a nervous wreck her lawyer insisted that she be present
for the bail hearing that her presence might influence the
judge's decision.

Dineo: im here for you ok

Marang nodded and they got out of the car and they walked
to the building....then reporters saw Marang and they rushed
to them.

Dineo: damn it!

Reporter: Miss Ndlovu care to comment about the bail
hearing of Mazwi

Dineo: VOETSEK!

Then Collins rushed to them and he pushed he reporters
away and he let Marang and Dineo inside the building.

Dineo: are you ok?

She nodded then Trey walked to them.

Collins: don't worry we're here for you ok

She nodded.

Collins: you're ok beautiful

He said to Dineo.

Dineo: don't start please

Trey chuckled and Collins smiled looking at her....each day he was falling deeper for her.

Trey: hey

He said to Marang.

Marang: hi

Trey: you good?

Cole: she's fine!

He said pushing him aside and he kissed Marang's forehead.

Cole: let's go

He said to Marang and she pulled Dineo and they walked inside the court room.

Trey: I don't like this motherfucker

Collins: I don't like the two of them and the sooner they get out of the girls lives the better

Trey smiled.

Trey: you think the plan will work?

Collins: it has to.....i need my girl back...anyway let's go inside that her presence might influence the judge's decision.

Dineo: im here for you ok

Marang nodded and they got out of the car and they walked to the building....then reporters saw Marang and they rushed to them.

Dineo: damn it!

Reporter: Miss Ndlovu care to comment about the bail hearing of Mazwi

Dineo: VOETSEK!

Then Collins rushed to them and he pushed he reporters away and he let Marang and Dineo inside the building.

Dineo: are you ok?

She nodded then Trey walked to them.

Collins: don't worry we're here for you ok

She nodded.

Collins: you're ok beautiful

He said to Dineo.

Dineo: don't start please

Trey chuckled and Collins smiled looking at her....each day he was falling deeper for her.

Trey: hey

He said to Marang.

Marang: hi

Trey: you good?

Cole: she's fine!

He said pushing him aside and he kissed Marang's forehead.

Cole: let's go

He said to Marang and she pulled Dineo and they walked inside the court room.

Trey: I don't like this motherfucker

Collins: I don't like the two of them and the sooner they get out of the girls lives the better

Trey smiled.

Trey: you think the plan will work?

Collins: it has to.....i need my girl back...anyway let's go inside these walls might have ears

Trey: yeah you'll never know

They walked inside.

They waited for some time then Mazwi was escorted in handcuffs and Marang's hands started to shake then Cole whispered to her holding her hand.

Cole: relax please

Vuyi: its ok baby your mother is here you're coming home with me today..... The judge will shame the devil you'll see! She said to Mazwi.

Lindiwe: hai man thula Vuyiswa (keep quiet Vuyiswa)

Vuyi: what ma....i want my son to know im here to support him

Lindiwe: whether you're supporting him or not the truth is he's facing charges of rape and attempted murder now your stupid ranting might cause him to not be granted bail

nx.....you know sometimes I think you bought that degree of yours

She said to Lindiwe and she sulked and she kept quiet.....as for Marang she tried to relax but when Mazwi raised his head and their eyes met and he winked at her she started shaking visibly.

Dineo: Mara... are you ok?

She then started having difficulty breathing with her eyeballs rolling back and Dineo screamed for help.....Cole picked her up bridal style and he walked out with her leaving everyone mumbling things while Buyi and her friends laughed.

Vuyi: hai suka...she's faking all this I swear she wants my son to be denied bail so she's faking all this for the judge to feel sorry for her nxa....nonsense!

Lindiwe just shook her head cause she just warned her and now she's at it again.....well the judge was told about Marang having a sever panic attack which let her to be taken to

hospital and Dineo left with the ambulance while Cole and Richie stayed behind to hear the judge's ruling about Mazwi's bail hearing as for Trey he followed the ambulance while Collins stayed behind.

Richie: where is that other guy?

Cole looked at Collins and he was sitting alone.

Cole: you think he went to the hospital

Richie: we both know that nigga is interested in Marang man so I wont be surprised

Cole clenched his jaws and he took out his phone and send his guys a message and he sat back waiting for the judge.

Richie: you know what fuck it...i don't trust that fucker...im going there

He got up and walked out and Cole huffed looking angry.....he looked at Mazwi and Mazwi at that time raised his head and he smirked at him.

Cole: what are you planning in that empty head of yours
Mazwi

He thought looking at him with a serious look on his face.

Well Marang's lawyer presented all the allegations against Mazwi to the court and it was time to hear Mazwi's plea to the allegations.

Judge: will the accused rise!

Mazwi stood up.

Judge: how do you the defended plead to the charges raised against you?

Mazwi smirked.

Mazwi: Sir Judge Sir..... First of all this whole thing is a

mistake and a waste of tax payers' money.....Marang and I love each other Judge and evil people who are jealous of our relationship....

He said looking at an angry Cole.

Mazwi:are the ones filling all that crap her stupid lawyer said in her head

People started mumbling things and Cole looked at Mazwi with a scary frown on his face trying to read him and what he got made him extremely angry..... as for Buyi Vuyi and Lindiwe they couldn't believe Mazwi said all that.....especially Buyi she had tears in her eyes.

Judge: order in court!

The mumbling died down.

Mazwi: Marang and I love each other Sir Judge Sir so all this is unnecessary

He said with a creepy smile on his face and Vuyiswa looked at his son shocked while Buyi's tears ran down her cheeks.

Collins: sly bastard

He said chuckling impressed by Mazwi and Cole's hands shook with anger cause he could see what Mazwi was doing.....he was using the insanity defense card on the Judge.

22

Dineo and Richard were in the waiting area waiting to hear anything from the doctor about Marang.....they have been waiting for close to three hours and they still haven't heard

anything...she was so worried about Marang that she didn't even ask Richard about how the bail hearing went since he got there as for Trey he left when Richard walked in.

Dineo: do you think he'll get bail?

She said with her head on Richard's chest and Richard sighed cause he read the message Cole send him about Mazwi playing the insanity card in court.

Richie: I don't think he'll get bail but he'll probably be send for mental evaluation at a mental institute

She raised her head and looked at him.

Dineo: why would he be send there he's not crazy?

Richard sighed.

Richie: cause he pretended to be insane in court

She breathed heavily with a confused look on her face and Richard kissed her forehead.

Richie: relax Dee don't forget gore you're pregnant

She sighed closing her eyes and she opened them again.

Dineo: he did what?

Richie: that's what Cole told me but trust me we will get to him even in that mental institution

Dineo: I can't believe this Marang will be devastated Richie
He sighed.

Richie: I know my love I don't even want to imagine how angry Cole is

She swallowed and rested her head back on his chest.

Dineo: will Marang ever get peace mara....since she was born she's been going through shit and even now no man enough is enough

She breathed out.

Dineo: I know I didn't grow up with a silver spoon in my mouth and my mother was and still is a bierwurm (an

alcoholic) but that old woman loved me in her own way even though my father ran away she never treated me badly cause I reminded her of him she actually showed me a bit of love because I look like him.....she never speaks ill of him whenever she's drunk she'll talk about how good he was to her and how good he fucked her

She rolled her eyes at the last part and they both laughed.

Richie: she would tell you that?

She nodded.

Dineo: mmmmh but when she's sober she never wants to talk about him.....yes she's an angry woman and she talks shit all the time and she's not scared of anyone but she never treated me bad you know.... while with Mara she was always reminded of her useless father and her mother also called her names....imagine being called a whore by your own mother while you are still a virgin

Richie: damn

Dineo: mmh and instead of applying for a student loan she looked for a job far away from home so she won't see her mother and that's how we met at wimpy....i remember her telling me that she payed R50 a week to squat at some small flat she shared with 10 other people the flat was for you to sleep and bath only and where ever you went you had to go with your things being your bag full of clothes and toiletries or they'll steal it if you leave it behind when you go to work

Richie: what?

He asked shocked.

Dineo: mmmmh...luckily I was squatting with some girl I knew from back home so it wasn't that bad but for Marang it was horrible babe....she was so skinny back then she worked crazy ass hours so she can make some extra cash but im glad

and happy that she didn't consider prostitution as her means to survive and that she kept her virginity well until she met that piece of shit Mazwi nx

Richie: I didn't know both of you went through all that
He said with a sad tone.

Dineo: it was bad babe I had to become a slay queen and date a blesser to survive

Richie: wait what?

He said pushing her off him gently and she frowned.

Dineo: ooh please Richie don't act like I was sleeping with different men for money I said a blesser not blesser

Richie: and you think it makes it right just because you fucked one man for money

Dineo: we dated....."dated" and ska njudg(a) please (don't judge me please)....wena o royalty so you don't know how it's like to sleep hungry....how it's like to survive three rape attempts.....you don't know how it's like to not know your father and to have a mother o eleng a bierwurm (who's an alcoholic).....you don't know how it's like to always bath and clean your mother's pee vomit and her stinking shit to always be called to a local bar to go pick your mother up using a wheelbarrow because she passed out after vomiting and shitting on herself

Richie: baby im sorry I didn't mean...

Dineo: and as for Marang her mother used to abuse her one day she told her mother that the guy her mother was seeing touched her inappropriately and guess what she got a beating of her life by her own damn mother and she ended up in hospital and on top of it all her mother said Marang should lie to the doctor and say she was beaten up by her none existent boyfriend and not her if she still wants a roof

over her head so don't judge us please

She was now crying.

Dineo: the only thing our mothers never denied us is education that's why we study hard to make it in life to get those degrees finding good jobs and being independent but the fact remains that those women broke us Richard but no even today Marang is still going through shit.....she was raped and almost killed and the piece of shit might go to a mental institution where he'll sleep in a comfortable bed eat nice food and even walk around the institution freely and all he gets to do is pretend to his psychiatrist that he's insane while Marang is scared broken and dying inside because of him....the justice system has failed her Richie

She said crying.

Richie: I know baby...i know but we won't fail her

Dineo: I hate him Richie....i fucken hate him....i wish he could die a slow and painful death

She said crying on his chest and he comforted her.

Richie: I know baby now please calm down for the baby's sake....please my love

Voice: she went through all that?

She turned and it was Cole standing there with his hands in his pockets and a look they couldn't explain in words plastered on his face.

Cole: Ntokazi went through all that Dineo?

Dineo nodded still emotional with tears all over her face then he walked over and he sat down and face down clenching his jaws.

Cole: don't worry that mental institution won't stop me from dealing with him once and for all

Richie: I take it he was send for mental evaluation

Cole: yeah he was denied bail and he was send for mental evaluation to see if he's fit to stand trial

Dineo: but still being send for mental evaluation means he won't be in jail Cole

Cole: I know but no worries he won't make it out alive

Dineo froze looking at him and Richard cleared his throat and pulled Dineo back to his chest.

Cole: what did the doctor say?

Richie: we're still waiting for him

Cole nodded and silence took over then a doctor walked to them.

Doctor: Marang Ndlovu?

The all got up looking at the doctor.

Dineo: she's my sister..... how is she doctor?

Doctor: she's gonna be ok....she just had a server panic attack but luckily it didn't lead to anything serious and the baby is also ok it's just her BP im worried about

They all froze looking at the doctor.

Dineo: what baby?

Doctor: ooh you didn't know.... ummm she's four weeks pregnant

Cole stood there shocked to the core.

Dineo: you mean to tell me Marang is pregnant?

Doctor: yes

Dineo: but...but she was admitted few days back and the doctor didn't say anything about pregnancy

Doctor: I don't know about that maybe the pregnancy hormone wasn't detectable or they didn't do any blood tests I don't know but the tests now shows that she's four weeks pregnant..... but tell me here was she admitted in this hospital before now?

Dineo: no

Cole went to sit down and his hands started to shake as what the doctor said kept ringing in his head.

Dineo: God I can't believe this.....ummm please can we see her

Doctor: ofcourse please follow me

Richard: thank you Doc

The doctor nodded and Dineo followed him but Cole sat still.

Richie: hey man you not coming

Cole: she's pregnant...she's carrying my child

Richard.....she....she's pregnant man....im gonna be a father

He said with an emotional voice and Richard sat down next to him and he squeezed his shoulder.

Cole: im finally gonna be a father man

Then he chuckled.

Richie: yeah....our kids will be the same age they will grow up together and have each other's backs....they'll practically be twins man

The both laughed and Cole wiped his tears and he got up.

Cole: now what I need to do is to end that boy...the time for games is over now it's time for some real shit

Richie smiled.

Richie: I already feel sorry for him

They got up and walked to the ward.

Cole: don't be he deserves it

Richie: I wonder how Marang will take being pregnant

Cole: I think what she needs is assurance that I'll be there for her every step of the way and also that she won't have to quit school

Richie: yeah with me well I got insulted and threatened

They both laughed.

Cole: you chose crazy and I chose innocent
He pushed him and they laughed....Cole still couldn't believe that Marang was pregnant with his child.... that he's finally gonna be a father in a few months time.

Well Richard took Dineo home after 30 minutes of waiting for Marang to wake up so she will rest they were gonna come back later but Cole stayed behind....Richard was worried about Dineo and her stress level so after trying to convince her for some time she finally agreed to go home and rest and she will come back a bit later..... Now Cole was standing by the window looking at a sleeping Marang....he sighed cause he hated himself for stressing her out like that....now he vowed to himself that he will do anything possible to make her happy cause she deserved it. Then the door opened and Trey and Collins walked in.

Collins: ooh you're here

Trey clenched his jaws pissed.

Cole: get out!

He said with a straight face.

Collins: we didn't come to see you

Cole: I don't give a fuck now get the fuck out!

Trey: this is not your house it's a fucken hospital so don't fucken tell us to leave

Cole: I pay for her hospital bills so when I say fuck off you fuck off!

He said with a serious tone and Trey took a step forward but Collins stopped him.

Collins: let's go man.....we both know Marang will never trust

him cause he failed to take care of that nephew of his and now he's gonna go get fat in some mental institution cause all he's gonna do is sleep eat masturbate and pretend to be mentally insane all because he failed

Cole chuckled.

Cole: wait a minute.....are you the ones who told him to play that insanity card today?

Trey: wouldn't you like to know

Then they chuckled.

Trey: on a serious note.... no we didn't but hey the damage is already done right you'll lose Marang for good cause no sane woman would stay with a man who failed to keep her safe

Cole chuckled.

Cole: you motherfuckers clearly don't know Marang and another thing I don't argue with fools so get the fuck out before I have you thrown out!

They said with a threatening tone and they looked at him for a bit with serious looks on their faces then Collins chuckled while shaking his head and he pulled a pissed off Trey out.

Trey: I hate this motherfucker!

Collins: relax his downfall is nearer.....we gonna hit two birds with one stone then I'll get my girl back and you'll get kiddo.....you know I can't believe you're already into her this quick

Trey: when you meet your wife man you stop looking and make her yours by fire or by force

Collins: I guess I fucked up by not wifing her the moment I met her

Trey: you had your reasons man

Collins: yeah but look now im busy competing with some royalty cheese boy nx

Trey chuckled.

Marang opened her eyes and she scanned the room and her eyes landed on Cole.

Cole: hey

Marang: hi....where...where am I.... what happened?

He walked over to her and kissed her forehead.

Cole: you suffered a panic attack but don't worry you're ok now

She breathed out then she frowned.

Marang: the bail hearing...did he.....

Cole sighed.

Cole: he was denied bail but he was send for mental evaluation

She looked down defeated and he made her look at him and her eyes were teary.

Cole: no mental institution will stop me from getting to him ntokazi uyangizwa (you hear me)....i'll make sure he regrets what he did today even in his death....he's gonna pay you hear me

She nodded as tears ran down her cheeks and Cole wiped them.

Marang: he's gonna come for me Cole I know it

Cole: I won't let him....you and Dineo are gonna stay with me from now on until both of you give birth

She frowned.

Marang: both of us?.....you meant until Dineo gives birth

He swallowed.

Cole: no.....you're also pregnant ntokazi

Marang: no im not

Cole: you are and I want you to know that im here for you....

Marang: im not pregnant Cole!

She said with her heart beating fast then Cole cupped her face.

Cole: listen here nothing will change Marang you'll still finish your degree and I'll be there with you every step of the way just please please don't abort

He said with a desperate voice and look on his face.

Marang: im not pregnant Cole...i can't be

Cole: you are and im begging you ntokazi....even if you're not ready to be a mother just keep the baby and give birth then I'll take him or her and raise the baby myself....please

She blinked repeatedly with her head all over the place then Dineo and Richard walked in and Dineo rushed to her and they hugged.

Dineo: im glad you're ok

Richard: I see you're a regular this days heh sweet Mara

Dineo saw Marang's red eyes and she sighed.

Dineo: its ok we'll figure it out together remember you're not alone

Marang: he said im....

Dineo: the doctor said you are and its ok Marang you're not alone and you'll never be alone

Marang: I can't Dineo i....i can't be preg....

She couldn't even finish her sentence she just cried and

Dineo held and she brushed her back also getting emotional.

Richie: you ok man

He asked Cole.

Cole: yeah

He walked to the door feeling defeated.

Marang: I'll....I'll keep it.....i may be scared but im not
Mazwi's mom Cole I'll never hurt you like that
He stopped and swallowed emotionally then he turned.
Cole: thank you.....
He sighed with relief.
Cole: I'll come back later to check up on you and the.....
He swallowed.
Cole: and the baby
Richard: wait for me I need to discuss something with you
He kissed Dineo's lips.
Richie: I'll see you later ok
Dineo: ok
Richie; I love you
Dineo: I love you too babe
Then he kissed Marang's forehead and walked out with Cole.

Cole got home and he found Linda cooking while Richard went to meet up with an estate agent he wanted to buy a house for Dineo so she'll stop staying at an apartment bought by Collins.
Linda: hey you back
Cole: yah
He took out bottled water from the fridge and turned to look at her as she got busy.
Linda: I hope you're hungry cause I'm cooking your favourite
He frowned.
Linda: Shirley once told me your favourite meal duh
She rolled her eyes and he kept on looking at her asking

himself what the heck is she trying to achieve with all these things she's doing.

Linda: relax will you.... Shirley and I used to talk..... a lot and mostly it was about you

She giggled and he shook his head then he headed to the door then he stopped and turned to look at her.

Cole: I booked you a room at a 5 star hotel not far from here for the rest of the week starting from tomorrow

Linda: what...why?

She said with a frown on her face.

Cole: cause the madam of the house is coming back

Linda: the what?

Cole: you heard me now tomorrow the driver will take you to the hotel

Then he turned and attempted to walk away but stopped when Linda spoke.

Linda: im not going

Cole: excuse me?

Linda: im not leaving Cole if your "madam" has a problem with me staying here then that's her problem

Cole: I wasn't asking you Linda!

Linda: why are you doing this I thought....i thought you're single so what madam are you talking about

Cole: I don't owe you any explanation Linda you're nothing to me!

She gasped hurt by what he said.

Linda: I can't believe you Cole....how could you do this to me....how can you say that to my face

Cole: listen here I don't have time for this...you should be gone tomorrow cause she can't find you here

He walked away going upstairs and she hit the table with an

open hand looking angry.

Linda: im not going anywhere his bitch will find me here
waiting nxa

She said to herself.

AN HOUR LATER

Linda knocked on his bedroom door and he went to open he had showered and changed his clothes ready to go back to the hospital.

Cole: what is it?

Linda: you have visitors downstairs

He frowned.

Cole: who did they say they are?

Linda: one of the guy's said he's Kgosi

He froze a bit.

Cole: what

She moved out of the way and he walked out closing the door behind him and Linda followed him....as he walked down the stairs he could feel his heart beating fast and he didn't know why....he got downstairs and saw two men sitting in the lounge he got to them and cleared his throat then they got up and turned then he froze with his eyes popped out.

Man: bafo

Cole: K...King?

Kgosi: yeah....its me man.....im alive

AT THE HOSPITAL

Marang and Dineo were lying in bed with Dineo eating her sour worms' sweets as they watched TV.... then they saw a man walking in with a bunch of flowers on his hands he held the flowers closer to his face like he was hiding his face.

Dineo: and nou? (and now)

Marang: maybe they're from Richie since you gave it to him good earlier on

Dineo: mxm

Dineo pushed Marang laughing and Marang smiled then Dee got out of bed....when the guy moved the flowers showing his face Marang froze and Dineo screamed.

Dineo: The fuck!.....what...what are you doing here...you're supposed to be in custody mpya ke wena! (you stupid dog)

Mazwi: hey love

He said looking at a shaking Marang who looked like she was going into shock.

Dineo: get out of here Mazwi...get out now jou moerskond! (you asshole)

She screamed and Mazwi chuckled and he walked closer .

Dineo: NURSE!

She said reaching for the emergency remote and pressed on the button repeatedly then Mazwi put the flowers on the hospital side drawer smirking.

Mazwi: damn you'll never change Dee

Dineo: GET AWAY MSOONO...GET AWAY!....NURSE!

A nurse rushed in.

Dineo: call security...call the police in fact call the military now!

Nurse: sister Peters call security!

She shouted rushing to Marang who was shaking like a leave.

Mazwi: we will talk some other time my love with any disturbances

He said to Marang and Dineo threw her hand bag at him and he ducked it laughing and he rushed out.

Dineo: Marang you need to calm down.....think of the baby....calm down Mara a miscarriage will kill Cole Mara please....please calm down im begging you

The nurse rushed out leaving Dineo begging Marang to calm down and she quickly came back in with another nurse and she sedated Marang who was visibly shaking with her eyes popped out....she was certainly going into shock. She passed out after they injected her and they asked Dineo to stand outside and she walked out with her phone and she dialed Richard's numbers with her shaky right hand while her shaky left hand was on her belly as she tried to calm down for her baby's sake.

23

Cole: how... I mean where.....how....

He said with a low tone and Kgosi swallowed hard.

Kgosi: I survived the crash and this man right here saved my life if it wasn't for him I'd be dead by now

Cole stood there shocked to the core with his heart beating fast.

Cole: I thought...we thought...

Kgosi: I know it's been two years so I understand

Cole: you're here....it's really you?

Kgosi walked to him and he hugged him tight and Cole

hugged him back tighter and they stayed like that for some time with tears coming out.... after some time they broke the hug and they both wiped their tears off chuckling.

Cole: it's really you

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: yeah...in the flesh

They both laughed.

Kgosi: I'd like you to be my second father Mr Kabongo

Kabongo... Mr KK for short

Cole shook his hand respectfully.

Cole:: its nice to meet you sir

Kgosi: and father this is my brother from another mother

Cole

MrKabongo: nice to finally meet you Mr Cole

Kgosi: stop with the Mr and just call him Cole

Cole: ah ah what's with the jealousy?

They laughed.

Cole: shit I can't believe you're here man

He said squeezing his shoulder then his phone rang and he answered it.

Cole: Richie you won't believe.....

Richie: go to the hospital right now im already on my way there

He interrupted him with a panicking voice and Cole frowned.

Cole: what's going....is Marang ok

He said with his own panicking voice.

Richie: get to the hospital man it's an emergency im already on my way there

Then he dropped the call and Cole brushed his hair with a worried look on his face .

Kgosi: what's wrong

Cole: I need to rush to the hospital

He said panicking.

Kgosi: what happened?

Cole: my girl is admitted there....you know what I'll explain everything when I get back

Then he called the house help and she came rushing.

Helper: baba

Cole: ma this is my brother Kgosi and his....father Mr Kabongo.....please take care of them I need to rush somewhere and take them to the guest bedrooms and make sure they feel comfortable

The helper nodded.

Cole: foza make yourself at home and I better find you here when I come back

Kgosi: you will now go

He rushed upstairs and he took his phone car key and wallet and he rushed downstairs all the way to the door and Linda walked out if the kitchen.

Linda: Cole can we talk before....

He ignored her and rushed out and she sighed.

Helper: let me help you with your bags sir

Kgosi: no its ok ma I'll carry them

She nodded with a smile and she went upstairs and they followed her.

Cole finally arrived at the hospital he was delayed by traffic so it took him longer to get there.....anyway he ran inside going straight to where Marang's ward was and when he saw police officers outside her ward his heart nearly stopped and he stopped walking....as soon as Richie saw him he rushed to

him.

Cole: what's...what's going on man....is Marang and Dineo ok....what are the police doing here

Richie: they are both fine but they nearly...

He couldn't even say it.

Richie: Mazwi was here

Cole frowned looking at him.

Cole: what....no he can't be remember he's on his way to the mental asylum

Richie: he was here man....i don't know how it happened but he was here and Marang went into shock and Dee.....she.....

He clenched his jaws.

Richie: she started bleeding and.....

Cole: no....no....don't say it

He interrupted him.....Richie's eyes got filled with tears but he fought them back.

Richie: she was carrying twins and she miscarried one twin

Cole looked down with his jaws clenched.

Cole: shit..... im sorry man

He said brushing his hair roughly and Richie just swallowed hard.

Cole: what...what about Marang

Richie: she almost miscarried too when she went into shock but they attended to her fast

Cole went to the wall and he slid down and sat flat on the floor and Richie joined him.

Cole: someone helped him i know it

Richie: do you think Zakhele and Vuyiswa along with ou'lady la gao (your mother) helped him?

Cole: nah I have Zakhele followed and he spends most of his time with some woman he's fucking on the side and Vuyiswa

all she does is drink her stupid sorrows away these days..... I think it's those two fuckers

Richie: Dee's ex and that little pet of his?

Cole nodded and Richie clenched his jaws looking down and tears filled his eyes and he let them fall.

Cole: im sorry for your loss man

He said squeezing his shoulder and Richie wiped his tears off and he chuckled.

Richie: can you believe I even got a call from my mother and she said Mmabatho suffered a miscarriage

Cole: fuck!

He chuckled again.

Richie: does it make me a bad person for not caring if she did....i don't know man I just had no connection whatsoever to that pregnancy but with Dee it's hitting me hard man

Cole sighed.

Cole: I understand man and I'll never judge you for feeling that way....so does Dee know

He nodded.

Richie: she's hurt man she said she wants him dead

He looked at Cole and Cole nodded.

Cole: and that's what will happen....he's a dead boy walking

Richie: he's mine

Cole: ok

Then they kept quiet and the police officers walked to them.

Cole: I have nothing to say to them you'll listen to whatever rubbish they have to say

He got up and walked inside Marang's ward and the police officers had a talk with Richie.....inside the room Cole kissed Marang's lips and forehead then he rubbed her belly then he whispered to her ear.

Cole: he's a dead man walking....i have been too nice ntokazi but it ends now

He said with a cold voice and he breathed out and went to stand by the window and took out his phone and made a call.

Man: bass (boss)

Cole: daar is n los plaag wat gevang moet word (there is a loose unstable pest that needs to be captured)

Man: naam (name)

Cole: Mazwi Zulu

Man: dood of lewend? (dead or alive)

Cole: lewend (alive)

Man: benadeel of ongedeed? (harmed or unharmed)

Cole: benadeel maar nie te veel nie (harmed but not too much)

Man: reken dit as afgehandel! (consider it done!)

Cole: Ahooi!

They ended the call and her turned and looked outside the window with his hands inside his pockets.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Kgosi was making himself a cup of coffee while Mr Kabongo was resting upstairs it was his first time traveling to another country and also using an airplane and being jet legged was showing him flames....Linda walked inside the kitchen and she scanned Kgosi up and down and she bit her lower lip she then looked at his firm butt and his broad shoulders.

Kgosi: are you done?

She got startled and she chuckled nervously.

Linda: done what?

Kgosi: did you come into this kitchen to stare at my back

He said without turning to look at her.

Linda: no...anyway im BelindaShirley's sister she used to tell me about you when she was still alive....about how close you and Cole are but she didn't call you Kgosi she called you King

Kgosi: so?

Linda: im just introducing myself jeez

Kgosi: so what should I do now that you've introduced yourself?

He said with a cold voice turning to look at her and she frowned looking at him..... nigga was handsome no lies...he had caramel skin he also had a nicely trimmed beard a trimmed short and neat haircut and he had big bedroom eyes.....he was wearing a vest and he had tattoos on his arms chest and back.... he was also buff like his friend Cole.

Linda: I was just introducing myself cause Cole forgot to introduce us

Kgosi: the fact that he didn't introduce you to me is a clear indication that you are irrelevant to him

Her face fell as that hurt and he took his cup of coffee.

Kgosi: here is some free advice Belinda....you are not Shirley and you'll never be her even if you tried

Linda: excuse me?

She said with a bit of attitude.

Kgosi: I always knew you had the hots for my brother and im sure now that Shirley is dead you saw it as a chance to make your move but what you don't know about Qophelo is he

likes being the hunter and not the hunted...get my drift?
He walked out leaving Linda tongue tide.

AT THE HOSPITAL

Richie: do you think he'll come back here

Cole: he'll be stupid to

He said as they were looking at Marang and Dineo sleeping on their hospital beds.....they were now sharing a private ward.

Cole: didn't the doctor see that she was carrying twins that time she fainted and was admitted briefly?

Richie sighed.

Richie: the current doctor said maybe the other baby was hiding and the scanner didn't detect him or shit like that

Cole: im sorry for your loss man and im glad you're still gonna be a father

Richie: yeah but that boy is gonna pay...he's gonna fucken pay man

He said with an angry voice.

Cole: don't worry they are looking for him as we speak its just a matter of time before they find him

Richie: do you think he contacted Vuyiswa

Cole: ever since he was arrested I had her phone bugged so my boy would've known if he did

Richard sighed rubbing his face.

Cole: before I forget I need you to go to my place I have a surprise for you there

Richie frowned looking at him.

Cole: I'll look after the girls until you come back wena just go

Richie: what surprise?

Cole: you'll like it..... just go so you can come back man
before Dee wakes up

Richie: wait they found him right I mean Mazwi.....he's at
your place in the basement

Cole chuckled.

Cole: just go man

Richie smirked.

Richie: ok....i'll take a video for you

Cole chuckled.

Cole: will you just go

Richie: fine I'll be right back

He went to Dineo and kissed her forehead.

Richie: call me if anything happens

Cle: you know I will

Richie: shap

He walked out thinking of ways to torture Mazwi.....He
opened the gate with his own remote control and he drove
inside the yard and parked his car he then got out and closed
it and he walked to the door....he opened it and walked
inside Kgosi turned thinking its Cole and when their eyes met
Richie froze on the spot.

Kgosi: Ti...Tirelo

Richard just stood there with his eyes popped out and Kgosi
slowly got up.....he stood there swallowing hard.

Richie: am I dreaming?

Kgosi: no...it's really me

Richie: how....i mean when....i mean I thought

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: the plane crashed but I was saved by a good Samaritan

I came back with him he's resting upstairs....i lost my memory but I got it back 6 months ago I had no id or passport and no money so I had to work hard with the help of the good Samaritan Mr Kabongo who save my life to make money so I can buy fake passports and to get money for plane tickets and other stuff

Tears ran down Richie's face and Kgosi looked down feeling emotional.

Richie: when did you arrive?

Kgosi: a couple of hours back...right before you called Cole to come to the hospital

Richie: oh God....oh God.... I though you died....i thought I'll never see....

He busted out with a sob and Kgosi rushed to him and they embraced each other....they held on tight to each other for some time until they broke the hug.

Richie: it's been two years man

He said as they both sat down with Richard wiping his tears off.

Kgosi: I know....the only thing I remembered was that my name was king I didn't remember where I was from or anything else that got to do with my life back home

Richie: what happened man....we talked before you boarded the plane and that was it

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: our plane was shot down by the rebels as it was passing through DRCsome friends I made back in DRC said there was some cargo of diamonds worth millions they wanted that was being flown back to South Africa by some rich Egyptian man.... they made sure the plane didn't explode in the sky they just wanted it to crash so they can seize the

diamonds

Richie: damn

Kgosi: I wasn't the only one that survived but apparently the rebels killed the survivors....luckily I was hidden under some plane wreckage passed out when they arrived so they didn't see me....those motherfuckers burned all the bodies of the dead passengers pilots and hostesses and they buried them not far from the wreckage

Richard swallowed looking emotional.

Kgosi: after they left the villagers came to take parts of the wreckage to use in their homes and that's when Mr Kabongo found me he waited for everyone to leave and he took me to his hut and nursed me back to health...i owe that man my life Tirelo....he had to lie that im his long lost son from Benin so that they rebels don't come for the surviving passenger cause once the government knows the location of the plane crash then they'll find the hiding place of the rebels cause apparently the jungle the plane crashed in is the rebels territory

Richie: damn

He didn't know what to say.

Richie: im glad you're safe man I can't wait to see mmangwane's face when she see you

"well I can't wait to see your mother's face instead when she realizes that im alive" is what he thought.

Kgosi: yeah

He said smiling briefly.

Richie: so I guess you're the surprise huh

They both chuckled.

Kgosi: im a pretty good one huh

They both chuckled then Richie's face got serious.

Kgosi: what is it?

Richie: my girl was carrying twins and she miscarried one earlier today

He then swallowed emotionally.

Kgosi: shit....im sorry man....wait by your girl you mean kane what's her name...Mmarona or Mmabatho?

Richie: nah not her well it's a long story.....i ended up marrying Mmabatho after your disappearance then I met Dineo and shit got real

He told her everything about Mmabatho Dineo and Marang and Kgosi couldn't believe it.

Kgosi: I told you I don't like that Mmabatho chick

Richie: well mom forced her down my throat and I just ended up marrying her to get her off my back and for our ancestors not to fuck me up

Kgosi just shook his head.

Kgosi: so Cole has a new girl and she's pregnant huh

Richard laughed.

Richie: mmmmh she's a bit younger than him but she's beautiful and kind and well the rest he'll tell you himself

Kgosi: I see I missed a lot things neh...well im glad he's moving on..... what about Botlhale....how is she?

Richard cleared his throat.

Kgosi: what?

Richie: well she got married to another prince 8 months after your disappearance

Kgosi clenched his jaws looking down.

Richie: im sorry man

He sighed.

Kgosi: I guess it is what it is

He said with a low tone.

Richie: well im glad you're back and that I won't be king anymore after father's rein

Kgosi smirked looking at him.

Kgosi: what if I don't want to be king anymore?

Richie: wa gafa (you are crazy).....our ancestors will deal with you for me you know im not a king material man....those old fools called elders annoy me every time there's a meeting whenever father forces me to be present so imagine dealing with them every fucken day nah man...i'll end up telling them voetsek to their faces

They laughed.

Richie: damn im glad you're back man.....i still can't believe it

Kgosi: im glad to be back

Then Richard's phone rang and he answered it.

Richie: jou moerkond....why didn't you tell me king is back!

Cole chuckled and so did Kgosi.

Cole: it was a surprise man

Richie: I can't believe he's really here man

Cole: me too but that's not why I called

Richard got serious.

Richie: they found him?

Cole: yeah but they found him dead

Richie: what

He said with a frown on his face.

Cole: they found him hanged man in some apartment they say it looks like suicide but we both know it wasn't

Richie: damn it!

He said sounding angry.

Cole: I still suspect lenja Collins nomsila wayo (the dog Collins and his tail).... my gut is telling me they have a hand in his escape and death

Richie: Marang and Dineo need to be discharged man cause we don't know those fools' plans and that hospital is not safe

Cole: I'll get right on it but I'll have them discharged tomorrow cause I don't want ntokazi to find Linda there

Richie: ok I'll beef up security here in the meantime

Cole: ok and tell Kgosi to get rid of Linda before Marang gets there...i don't want anything that will upset her

Richie: ok

Cole: ask King if he has a phone

Richie asked him.

Kgosi: nah I don't

He said it loud enough for Cole to hear him.

Cole: tell him he should go to my study inside the safe the password is still the same and he should take one of the phone's there to use it to communicate with us

Richie: ok I'll let him know

Cole: shap

They ended the call and Richard told him Cole's message.

Kgosi: you two are still using the same numbers?

Richie: yeah

Kgosi: ok cool

Richie: I cant believe you're here man

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: better believe it man.....anyway tell me about the dead fuck and what the hell is going on

Richie: the dead fucker is Mazwi....Zakhele's son

Kgosi: wait what?

He said with a frown on his face.

Richie: he raped Marang Cole's girl and almost burned her alive.....

Kgosi: o reng? (What did you say)....

24

Richard told him about everything that Mazwi did to Marang and also about Collins and Trey and what happened at the hospital.

Kgosi: and Cole let him live even after the shit he did
He asked with a frown on his face.

Richie: he's his nephew and he knew if he got him killed then he was gonna be the number one suspect and he didn't want to give the hawks ammunition to investigate him and your businesses so his plan was to make sure he gets jail time and then have him tortured for all the years he was gonna spend in jail or have him killed in there or he'll decide to take cowardly way out but then that fucker Collins came out of nowhere along with his lap dog and messed everything up and now we suspect that they're the ones that told him to pretend to be crazy and they helped him escape and now they killed him

Kgosi sighed and he rubbed his beard thinking.....then they

heard footsteps and Linda walked downstairs.

Linda: ooh hey Richard

Richie: damn you're still here?

She frowned at him.

Linda: where else would I be

Richie: back to the cave you crawled out of

Linda: mxm

She rolled her eyes and went to the kitchen.

Richie: she needs to go before Marang gets here...Cole booked her into a hotel nearby so she needs to go

Kgosi: does Cole still have a driver

Richie: yeah

Kgosi: call him to be here first thing tomorrow morning

Richie: ok

Kgosi: I see Cole has gotten soft since I've been away and that needs to fucken change

He said with a serious look on his face.

Well Richie called the driver and also beefed up security in the yard and after some time he left going to Dineo's place to get her pjs toiletries and clean clothes for tomorrow then he drove to the hospital.

AT VUYISWA AND ZAKHELE'S HOUSE

She was drinking her sorrows away in the lounge....her only son was send to a mental asylum and her husband was MIA he hardly spend time at home and four days back before he left to God knows where he told her he wants a divorce and also to do DNA tests on Mazwi and Vuyelwa their youngest daughter cause he suspects that they are not his.....she had

been trying his phone but it's not going through on top of it all Buyi Mazwi's fiancé and her family told her that they never want anything to do with the Zulu's and that whatever Mazwi and Buyi had is over and that they'll bring back the lobola money that was paid for their daughter.....

Everything was falling apart and she didn't know what to do....the worse of it all is her relationship with Lindiwe her mother in law it's no longer the same. Ever since she heard her son saying he wants to do DNA tests on Mazwi and Vuyelwa she has totally changed towards her.

Lindiwe: have you gotten hold of my son

She said with a cold tone and Vuyiswa rolled her eyes.

Vuyi: no he's phone is still on voicemail

Lindiwe: I swear on my ancestors Vuyiswa if anything happen to my son he he he

She said shaking her head.

Vuyi: you know what ndikiwe kwaye ndidiniwe nguwe

Lindiwe u bhizi uzenza ungcwele ngcwele kodwa siyazi sobabini ukuba ukude qelele lee kulonto.....ngoku kofuneka ulawuleke okanye ufutseke kweyam indlu! (im sick and tired of you Lindiwe you are busy acting like a saint but we both know you are far from it..... now it's either you behave or get the hell out of my house!)

Lindiwe: unayo inzwa wena mthakathi (you have the nerve you witch) uthi your house this is my son's house you hear me.... my son's house!

Vuyiswa laughed standing up.

Vuyi: tyhini im your son's wife you old hag and we are married in community of property so whatever that is his is also mine.....i didn't send you to go and kill your husband.....asoze ndi harborishe ngqwirhakazi apha kwam

ngoku kofuneka undihloniphe okanye ufokofe apha! (I will not harbor a witch in my house now you better respect me or get the fuck out!)

Lindiwe: is that how you talk to me now Vuyiswa.....uthi fuck kimi? (you are saying fuck to me?).....you're even calling me a witch in my son's house!

She said pointing at her looking angry but Vuyiswa stood her ground.

Vuyi: what will you do huh....

Lindiwe: you'll regret it you hear me....you clearly don't know me ntombazana (girly)....once Zakhele finds out that Mazwi and Vuyelwa are not his you better prepare for a nasty divorce...you gonna leave this house with nothing I'll even sell my soul to the devil just to see you suffer!

Vuyi: Rhaaa! Fokofa apha ngqwirakazi ndini.....ofcourse you'll sell your soul to the devil cause its in your blood that's why Qophelo hates you....your own son hates you that he even kicked you out of his father's house nja ndini!

Lindiwe slapped her and Vuyiswa slapped her back.

Lindiwe: you are fighting me back now Vuyiswa....me Lindiwe he he he..... now know this girly you're gonna curse the day you met my sons wena mthakathi...once im done with you suicide will be the only way out for you nxa!

Vuyiswa: Rhaaa suicide my round sexy ass.....you're the one that's gonna commit suicide nxa!

Lindiwe just stormed upstairs fuming with anger.....she got to her bedroom and she paced around not believing that the same Vuyiswa she used to defend and treat like her own daughter is the one that insulted her like that and even slapped her....she took off her shirt and was only left with her bra and skirt cause she was sweating like crazy.

Lindiwe: heh! This girl doesn't know me...im sure ufunda ngami emaphepheni (she reads about me in the papers)
She said still pacing up and down fanning her face.

Lindiwe: athi I killed my.....heh!

She continued to pace around fuming with anger while fanning her face.

AT THE HOSPITAL

Marang and Dee woke up and they had their supper quietly.

Cole: he's dead

Dineo quickly looked at him and so did Marang.

Cole: he's gone and he'll never bother you ever again

Dineo swallowed hard cause she remembered telling Richard that she wants him dead.

Dineo: Ma....Mazwi?

Richie: yeah

He cleared his throat.

Richie: he was found hanged and it looks like suicide

The girls kept quiet a bit.

Dineo: well good riddens to bad rubbish nx

Marang just kept quiet letting it sink in that Mazwi is actually dead.

Cole: you ok

Marang: yeah

He pulled her hand to his mouth and kissed the back of it.

Cole: it's over he'll never bother you again

Tears rolled down her cheeks.....she couldn't believe it.

THE FOLLOWING DAY

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Linda woke up and she made the bed and went to the bathroom to take a bath after she was done with everything she took her phone and went to the door as soon as she opened it she jumped with fright.

Linda: THE FUCK!

She found Kgosi with the house help waiting in front of the door.

Kgosi: ma you can go in.....pack everything that you think belongs to her and take it to the car

Helper: yes sir

Linda: excuse me what?

The helper went inside.

Linda: do not touch my things you old hag!

Kgosi: ma please be quick

Linda: who the hell do you think you are!

She shouted at Kgosi and he raised an eyebrow at her.

Kgosi: I know im Kgosi Kweneng I don't "think" that I am.... I fucken know that I am.... now take your shit and get the fuck out before I embarrass you any further!

Linda: this is not your house so...

Kgosi: ooh shut the hell up!

He shouted at her and she got startled.

Kgosi: Cole doesn't want you in fact im sure you annoy the hell out of him now stop acting like a desperate bitch and take the fucken hint woman!

She looked at him with an angry look on his face.

Helper: im done mnumzana

Kgosi: please take it to the car

He said that to the helper but still looking at Linda and the helper walked out with the travelling bag and handbag.

Kgosi: there's a car waiting for you outside to drive you to the hotel

Linda: ooh I fucken hate you!

Kgosi: join the queue missy I couldn't care less whether you hate me or not cause you don't mean shit to me

Linda: Cole will hear about this

Kgosi: who do you think asked me to do this?

Linda: im Shirley's sister so Cole would never...

Kgosi: are you bipolar or just retarded?

He said interrupting her.

Linda: don't.... insult me!

Kgosi: you're insulting yourself now get the fuck out of here or I'll drag you out myself!

He said taking a step forward and she took a step back getting scared.

Kgosi: leave!

She swallowed hard and she walked out.

Kgosi: nx

Soon after two cars parked outside and after sometime the door opened and Cole Richie Dineo and Marang walked in then the helper walked in from the kitchen and she rushed to hug Marang and Dineo and they hugged her back.

Helper: ooh nkosi yam it's good to see you both

Marang: it's so good to see you too ma

She said smiling at her.

Dineo: yeah it is

She said with a half-smile then Kgosi cleared his throat and they all turned to look at him.

Cole: bafo good you're here

He said going to him and they hugged briefly so did Richie.

Cole: come and meet the ladies

He walked closer and he smiled at Marang and Cole put his arm around her with a raised eyebrow at him.

Cole: im prepared to go to hell for her

The guys chuckled and Kgosi shook his head.

Cole: ntokazi this is my long lost brother from another mother Kgosi

Richie: well they are more like the bad twins if you ask me

Kgosi: he's lying....im the good twin

The guys laughed.

Dineo: Richie I...i need to lie down a bit

She said with a low tone and that's when Kgosi paid attention to her....he turned to look at her and he froze and Cole saw that.....he then cleared his throat and faked a smile.

Richie: this here bro... is Dineo the one that stole my heart and babe this is my elder brother Kgosi that I told you disappeared about two years ago

Dineo: it's nice to finally meet you

Kgosi cleared his throat again with a look on his face Cole couldn't decipher.

Kgosi: same here....ummm can I asked you something

He said frowning.

Dineo: ummm year sure

She said looking at Richie.

Kgosi: what is your other name if you don't mind me asking

She looked at Richie again.

Dineo: ummm Mmabontle

He swallowed hard looking pale instantly but he quickly faked a smile looking at his brother.

Richie: why?

Kgosi cleared his throat.

Kgosi: ummm I met some woman at the airport yesterday and she looked like her but she looked a bit lighter and she had short her and said her name is Julia.... I just thought it was her

He lied.

Richie: ooh ok

Dineo: I don't know my father so maybe it's one of her daughters

Kgosi: yah could be....and sorry for not knowing your father "you're fucken stupid King...how can you say that" he thought.

Dineo: umm sure...thanks I guess.....ummm it was nice meeting you

She then looked at Richie.

Richie: let's go tuck you in.....

Kgosi made way for them still faking a smile and they went upstairs.....Cole raised his eyebrows looking at Kgosi and Kgosi looked down avoiding eye contact while clenching his jaws.

Cole: let's go tuck you in too ntokazi

Then he looked at Kgosi.

Cole: I'll be right back

Then he picked Marang up bridal style and walked upstairs with her.

Kgosi: damn it!....oooh shit! No no no you can't do this to me.....please don't do this im begging you....

He said pacing around then he sat down and brushed his

head roughly.....after sometime Cole came back and found Kgosi lost in thoughts and he sat down next to him.

Cole: where is Mr KK

Kgosi: busy revamping the backyard garden

Cole: what?

Kgosi: he loves nature....flowers and shit.....ka ne what do they call it....landscaping or shit like that so yah be prepared to have a beautiful garden once he's done

Cole: ok so what was that all about....you only fake smiles and clear your throat like you have a sweet potato stuck on your throat when you're lying

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: let's go talk somewhere private

They got up and went to Cole's study room.

Cole: im listening

Kgosi: I hate that you know me like that Qophelo

Then he sighed and rubbed his beard.

Cole: you also know me like that....so why did you seem shocked when you saw Dee but Dee didn't seem shocked to see you

Kgosi: well we've never met before earlier on

Cole: then why did you seem shocked and don't tell me that lie you told about meeting some woman at the airport that looked like her

Kgosi: well im not gonna insult your intelligence twice so chill
He sighed and sat back.

Kgosi: you know about my ancestors' right....how they operate and how much they speak to me through my dreams and that all the times they have visited me in my dreams and told me something or even showed it to me it always comes true....always

Cole nodded.

Cole: and them warning you in your dreams has saves us a couple of times in our other line of work so yah I know how good they are

Kgosi: yeah and im glad you trusted me enough to also believe in my dreams but this time im not pleased that they did

Cole: what do you mean?

Kgosi: well the thing is after I regained my memory I became troubled by a dream that wouldn't let me be each and every night.....i would dream of myself siting on the throne and besides me was sitting my queen...

He sighed.

Kgosi: and that queen looked like Tirelo's girl and everyone hailed her as queen Mmabontle

Cole: wh...what?

He asked with a shocked expression on his face.

Kgosi: yeah....the entire kingdom of BaKweneng and other neighboring kingdoms were there including the late queens and kings of BaKweneng...they were also hailing for Mmabontle and they all looked happy..... so seeing her today just....i didn't expect to see her and I surely didn't expect to see her as the woman that stole Tirelo's heart.....

He brushed his beard looking down and Cole breathed out still looking shocked....he got up and brushed his hair.

Kgosi: I didn't expect to see someone like her today and she's pregnant for my bro and he wants to take her as his second wife and im happy he's found love I really am but knowing my ancestors im in big shit

Cole: ooh shit!

He said sitting down.

Kgosi: im fucked big time man

Cole: shit...shit....shit!

Then the door opened and Richard walked in and frowned.

Richie: what's up....you two look like someone died

Kgosi cleared his throat and faked a smile.

Kgosi: nah I was just telling him about my plane crash and everything i went through

Richie: damn.....it's still hard to imagine all that you went through man

He said sitting down and Kgosi and Cole looked at each other and they sighed worriedly.

AT BAKWENENG KINGDOM

The royal traditional healer woke up panting from a terrible dream sweating like crazy....he quickly got out of bed and he wore his clothes and rushed out going to his hut...when he got there he wore his traditional healer's cloth around his waist and he kneeled down and took his small goat skin bag that had the ancestral bones inside and he blew inside and emptied the bag on the goat skin mat and he looked at them trying to understand what the ancestors were trying to show him in his dreams....he shook his head and he picked them up and put them back inside the bag .

Healer: BaKweneng mpontsheng tsela enngwe ya go thusa Kgosana ya lona (BaKweneng show me another way of helping your prince)

He emptied the bag on the goat mat again and he read them again and he got the same message.

Healer: ka kopo BaKweneng mmagwe ke yena yo a leng molato e seng kgosana ya lona tse yang yena e seng Kgosana ya lona ga a na molato....ga itsi sepe (im begging you BaKweneng his mother is the one that is at fault not your prince.... he doesn't know anything)

He picked the bones again and held them all on his hands and he threw them again on the goat mat and he read them again and still the same message.....he sighed painfully looking down while shaking his head.

The following day at about 7 in the morning Kgosi was in the Kitchen drinking some coffee lost in thoughts he couldn't sleep the previous night due to thinking too much.....he didn't understand why his ancestors would do this to him they know how much he loves his brother so he wondered why they would want to create a feud between them.... he got disturbed from his thoughts by Dineo walking in.

Dineo: hey

Kgosi cleared his throat.

Kgosi: hi

Dineo: ummm have you seen Richie?

Kgosi: no I haven't seen him since I came downstairs

She sighed worriedly.

Kgosi: did you try his phone since this house is too huge to go to every room looking for him?

Dineo: yeah but it doesn't go through

Kgosi: maybe he went home to take some clean clothes or something

He said getting up and he took his cup.

Dineo: i called his home landline praying that the house help answers instead of his wife and the house help said she last saw him yesterday before lunch time

She said looking worried then Kgosi took out the phone he's using and he dialed his numbers but it send him straight to voicemail.

Kgosi: damn it..... it goes straight to voicemail

Dineo: I have a bad feeling Kgosi..... I just hope he's ok
She said rubbing her belly with a worried look on her face then she turned and walked away without even knowing where she was going.

INSERT..... 25

.
. .

Cole: hey what's up

Kgosi: have you seen Tirelo

Cole: ummm no I've just came out of my bedroom

Kgosi: Mmabontle said....

Cole: whoah Mmabontle?

He said with raised eyebrows.

Kgosi: stop it man this is serious

Cole chuckled.

Cole: she prefers to be called Dineo or Dee if you must know

Kgosi: noted now back to Tirelo

Cole got serious.

Cole: have you tried his phone

Kgosi gave him the “dude?” look and Cole raised his hands up.

Cole: ok dumb question...ummm let me bring my laptop so I can track his watch

Kgosi: he has a tracker on his watch

Cole: it’s a half a million Rand Rolex watch man ofcourse he does or he wouldn’t be Richie

Kgosi chuckled as Cole went to fetch his laptop..... he came back and sat down and got busy on the laptop.

Cole: there he is

He said pointing on the screen.

Cole: but he’s not moving and what the hell is he doing parked on the side of the road

Kgosi: let’s go

He said getting up and Mr Kabongo walked in.

KK: good morning

Cole: morning

Kgosi: father ma just started with breakfast but we won’t be able to join you we have to rush somewhere

KK: ok find me cow or donkey dung my son im sure someone has cows or donkeys around

Cole and Kgosi looked at each other trying not to laugh.

Cole: you mean manor....ok ummm we will find them for you

KK: thank you son

Kgosi: ok I’ll see you later father

Then they rushed out.

Cole: that’s your father asking for amasimba wenkomo ne wembongolo (cow and donkey’s shit)

Kgosi: fosek man

Cole laughed and Kgosi chuckled.

On their way Cole was driving while Kgosi was busy looking at the laptop screen.

Kgosi: why isn't he moving man?

Cole: I don't know I suddenly have a bad feeling man

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: me too

They drove for some time until they spotted his car parked on the side of the road and Kgosi suddenly had a sharp pain on his chest.

Kgosi: mmmh....shit!

He said with his hand on his chest.

Cole: what is it?

Kgosi: something is wrong

He said as he quickly got out of the car and Cole followed him rushing to the car.

Kgosi: Tirelo....Tirelo....

He opened the door and it was empty.

Kgosi: where the fuck is he....

He said getting out and Cole searched around the car and he saw some blood drops on the ground at the back and some on the boot and his heart started beating fast.

Cole: King open the boot!

Kgosi quickly opened it and he rushed to the back and Cole slowly opened it and there he was covered in blood.

Kgosi: fuck nooo....Tirelo...Tee

Cole checked his pulse and it was there but it was faint.

Cole: he's still alive but barely holding on

Kgosi quickly grabbed him and they pulled him out and carried him to their car and Cole drove away in total speed while Kgosi was with Richie at the back.

Kgosi: fuck.....who did this to you man?

He said putting pressure on his bleeding wound on the left side of his abdominal area.

Cole: hold on Richie...don't give up man im almost at the hospital

He said with a panicking voice.

Cole: fuck...this is not happening....this is not happening

He said as he drove in high speed then Richard opened his eyes slowly.

Kgosi: hey man...we are rushing you to the hospital just hold on ok

Richie: please...take care of....Dineo

Then he coughed and some blood came out of his mouth.

Kgosi: you'll take care of her yourself man...just hold on and you'll get to care for her yourself

Cole: Richie don't do this please

Richie: love my child... like he...or she is yours King

Kgosi's tears ran down his cheeks.

Kgosi: Tee don't do this to me man im begging you

He pleaded with him desperately.

Cole: Richie im almost there man....im almost there so hold on!

Richie: she...she's gonna nee...need you and Co...Cole

Kgosi: no she needs you man....she and your baby need you Tirelo so don't do this to her

He coughed again and more blood came out.

Cole: Richie stop talking ok...save your strength man

Richie: they... they are work...working to...together

He whispered using his last strength.

Kgosi: who?

He coughed some more and more blood came out of his

mouth and the car stopped and Cole rushed out calling for help....Kgosi looked at Richard as he stretched his hand as if he reaching for something then his hand got loose and it fell back on the seat and he took his last breath with a single tear from his left eye running down on the side of his face.....Kgosi's tears ran down his face and a sob escaped his mouth..... The door got opened and they found him crying out loud while hugging Richard's body.

Kgosi: noooo....Richie why....don't do this to me....i just got back man please...don't do this to me

The hospital porter moved back looking down sadly and Cole just slid down to the ground and buried his head between his thighs and he cried.

Kgosi: he said "they" are working together

They were sitting on the visitors couches inside the hospital
The police were called in since he died of a stab wound and they answered all the questions they were asked now they were waiting for Cole's mortuary to come and take Richie's body.

Cole: who are they

Kgosi: he didn't say

He said and sniffed while wiping his tears.

Cole: they stabbed him man....they just gutted him like that
He said with an emotional voice.

Kgosi: and the way he was bleeding the knife was pushed in deep and it probably punctured his internal organ

Cole: that's what the doctor said

Kgosi: I didn't hear a single word he said

Cole sighed.

Cole: why didn't he tell either one of us where he was going and who he was meeting

He said with an angry voice.

Kgosi stood up and brushed his head.

Kgosi: we need to retrace his steps

Cole: yeah but right after telling your family about his passing and... also the girls

Kgosi sat down again.

Kgosi: I just got back man.... we should be celebrating and not this why now huh....why now?

Cole: Richie knew the rules...why didn't he let us know where he was going man.....and who the fuck are "they" ngapha uDineo just lost one child and now..... Fuck!

He said getting up and he walked away.

Well Cole told the King (Richie and Kgosi's father) about Richard's passing and the King said they'll take it from here and he was cool with that cause him and Kgosi needed to find the people that killed Richie.

Dineo: hey you back why now huh....why now?

Cole: Richie knew the rules...why didn't he let us know where he was going man.....and who the fuck are "they" ngapha uDineo just lost one child and now..... Fuck!

He said getting up and he walked away.

Well Cole told the King (Richie and Kgosi's father) about

Richard's passing and the King said they'll take it from here and he was cool with that cause him and Kgosi needed to find the people that killed Richie.

Dineo: hey you back did you find him?

She said as she saw them walking inside the house..... then she saw their faces and Kgosi's blood stained shirt and she started shaking.

Cole: Dee

Dineo: where is Richard...where is he?

She said with a shaking voice and Cole got closer to her.

Cole: he's gone

Marang: gone where?

She said walking in slowly with two cups of hot chocolate in her hands.

Cole: babe

Dineo: where is he Cole?

Cole: we found him stabbed and stashed in the boot of his car and he died on the way to the hospital

The cups slipped through Marang's hands and landed on the floor.

Cole: Dee im sorry...but he's gone

He said with an emotional voice and Dee covered her ears and she screamed out loud and Cole pulled her closer and held her tight as she screamed crying her lungs out.

Cole: you need to calm down Dee think of the baby please Marang went to the wall and she slid down to the floor as she cried shaking and Kgosi took off his bloodied shirt and he went to Cole.

Kgosi: I'll take care of her go and make sure that Marang is ok Kgosi picked a crying Dineo up bridal style and he went upstairs with her and Cole helped Marang up and he hugged

her tight as she cried.

Cole: its ok baby...its gonna be ok

Marang: he...he's gone Cole

Cole: I know...i know ok

Then he made her look at him.

Cole: but I want you to do me a favour ok

She nodded sobbing.

Cole: I want you to be strong for Dee....she just lost one baby and now....its Richie so she's gonna need you ntokazi.....i need you to be strong for her to be there for her and I'll be there for you ok

She nodded still sobbing and he wiped her falling tears.

Cole: you promise

She nodded again

Cole: you know I want you to say it

Marang: ye...yes

Cole: good

He then kissed her lips and she ended up kissing him back then they broke it off and he looked into her teary puffy eyes.

Cole: i... I love you ntokazi....i know its....

Marang: I love you too Cole

She said interrupting him and he smiled a bit.

Cole: I know you do and it took losing you to realize that I really do too but never again.....we are never breaking up again ok

She nodded as fresh tears came out and he wiped them then he perked her lips and he held her tight.

Cole: ummm ma and Mr KK Richard passed away

Helper: iyoh hayi...hayi!

She said with her hands on top of her head while Mr Kabongo looked down while shaking his head with his eyes closed.

KK: what happond my son (what happened my son)

Cole: we found him stabbed but he died on his way to the hospital

The helper was now crying and Mr Kabongo sighed painfully.

KK: im sorry for your loss....where is Kgosi

Cole: he's upstairs making sure Dineo is ok

Mr KK nodded and he sighed.

Helper: ooh nkosi yam uDineo (ooh my God Dineo).....ooh Jehovah

She said still crying.

Cole: Ma I need you to be strong and to make sure Marang and Dineo eat they are both pregnant so make sure they feed our kids and also take care of Mr KK here like you have been doing

Helper: ofcourse baba

She said wiping her tears off with her apron.

KK: please when Kgosi is done with Daneo (Dineo) tell him to come see me

Cole: I will

KK: is there any way I can help

Cole sighed.

Cole: Kgosi is gonna need you

Mr KK nodded..... he saw how Kgosi is with Mr Kabongo and how much he respect him and how he seemed happy and free when he's with him which is something he has never seen Kgosi do when he's around the King (his father).....he

behaves and act like the heir apparent to the throne when he's around the King cause that's how he raised and trained him but with Mr KK he acts like a son and he's free.

Kgosi has been sitting on the single couch that was inside the bedroom lost in thoughts.....that scene inside the car up until Richard took his last breath was playing in his head....he closed his eyes and tears gushed out and he clenched his jaws.

Kgosi: fuck!

He then wiped his tears off and he looked at Dineo who was sleeping on the bed....he sighed and got up and he went to stand by the window....then someone knocked at the door.

Kgosi: come in

The door opened and Cole walked in holding two glasses of whiskey.....he walked to Kgosi and gave him his glass and he gulped it down at one go and Cole sighed.

Cole: how is she?

Kgosi shrugged his shoulders.

Kgosi: how's your girl

Cole sighed.

Cole: she's resting now....lets go talk somewhere else

They walked out and went downstairs to the study room and they sat down.

Kgosi: I wish I didn't come back man

Cole: don't say that King

Kgosi: I came back and my brother gets killed by God know who....i shouldn't have come back man

Cole: don't piss me off King Richard was killed by someone im

sure you don't even know cause you've been gone for two years

Kgosi: then why do I feel like me coming back brought bad luck on us man

Cole: stop with this pity party shit man it doesn't suit you
Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: who are your suspect?

Cole: there's a long list man but the ones on the top of the list are Collins and his lap dog

Kgosi: ok but he said they are working together meaning its Collins and his lap dog and someone else

Cole: yeah but I have no idea who it could be.....look I know Richie blamed those two for Dineo miscarrying one twin cause we suspected that they are the ones that helped Mazwi and maybe he went to confront them

Kgosi clenched his jaws.

Cole: but for now we need to concentrate on burying our boy then its game on

Kgosi: yeah....you know I already had plans of us ruling side by side as brothers

Cole: I know man

Kgosi: I swear on my ancestors whoever did this..... will die the most painful death ever experienced by anyone

He said with the scariest look on his face and Cole swallowed.

Kgosi: they better make sure we don't find them

Then he chuckled with a creepy smile on his face and he brushed his beard on his chin slowly while staring into space with that creepy smile still on his face.

Cole: damn it

He said to himself.

Cole: Shadow?

Kgosi turned and looked at him still brushing his beard on his chin.

Kgosi: it's been a long time huh...two years to be exact

Cole: now is not the time man.....he needs to mourn his brother so he can focus when the time comes

Kgosi: I know..... I just needed some fresh air that's all so relax

Cole just looked at him and Kgosi continued to brush his beard looking into space with that creepy smile on his face.

AT VUYISWA AND ZAKHELE'S HOUSE

Vuyiswa was busy in the kitchen when she heard a knock at the door she wiped her hands and went to check who it was and she found two police officers standing there.

Vuyi: can I help you

She wondered how they got in and she saw the gate wide open and she breathed out cause it means Lindiwe went out and she didn't even bother to close the gate.

Officer1: hi mam....im detective Peters and this is my colleague detective Mloi

Vuyi: ok can I help you with something

Mloi: it's about your son mam can we come in

Vuyiswa frowned.

Vuyi: ok

She made way for them and they walked in and they all went to sit down.

Vuyi: what about my son

Peters: mam your son escaped from the police transport that

was taking him to the mental institution three days ago

Vuyi: what?

Peters: yes and few hours later he showed up at the hospital where Miss Marang Ndlovu was admitted but he ran away when security was called then today two hours ago he was found hanged in some apartment

Vuyi: ini? (what)

She said as she sat on the edge of the chair with her eyes popped out.

Moloi: im sorry mam but your son is dead and it looks like suicide

Vuyi: no....no no no

She said getting up while holding her head shouting.

Vuyi: nooo....no no not my son...not my....

She then hit the floor hard as she fainted and Detective Peters rushed to her while Detective Moloi called for an ambulance.

AT THE KWENENG KINGDOM

They whole family was sitting in the lounge waiting for the king to address them.

Q.Motlalepula: My King go diragala eng? (what's going on)

King: ke tshwere ditaba tse di bothoko (I have bad news)

He sighed looking down and he brushed the beard on his chin.

Elder1: Kwena go diragalang? (Kwena what's going on)

King: Qophelo tsala ya ga Tirelo onteleditse mogala a re Tirelo.... (Qophelo Tirelo's friend called me and he said

Tirelo.....)

Then the King sighed painfully and he clenched his jaws.

Q.Motlalepula: what about ngwanaake (my child)

She asked with her heart beating fast.....the previous night she had a bad dream where Richie was drowning and she couldn't help him.

King: Tirelo o fitlhetswe a tlabelwe ka thipa gape a loketswe ka fa gare ga butu ya koloi ya gagwe (Tirelo was found stabbed with a knife and he was stuffed inside the boot of his car)

Everyone: Eng? (what?)

Q.Motlalepula: no no no

King: o tlhokahetse fela ge a fitlha sepetlele (he died as soon as he reached the hospital)

Everyone started crying while the elders just looked down shaking their heads.

Q.Motlalepula: no....no not my son....e seng Tirelo wame (not my Tirelo)....no

She said as she hysterically cried.

Q.Motlalepula: dira tsame di fenny....baloi ba ba leng kgatlhanong le nna ba fitlhetse seo ba neng ba se batla.... ba bolaile ngwanaake.....ba mpolaetse ngwana! (my enemies have won.... witches who are against me have gotten what they've always wanted.....they killed my child....they have killed my child!)

She said shouting hysterically and Queen Boitumelo tried to comfort her but she roughly pushed her away.

Q.Motlalepula: don't touch me you witch....im sure you're happy he's dead....a kere wa gao ngwana wa bowa (your son is coming back) so im sure you send people to kill him fearing that he'll challenge your useless son for the throne!

King: MOTLALEPULA!

He warned her and Queen Boitumelo sadly got up and she asked permission from the king to leave and he sighed and granted it to her and she walked away while wiping her tears off.....she loved Richard as if she gave birth to him and the news that he's gone hit her hard.....she walked out of the main house with her private maid and she went to her private house that was in the same yard as the main royal house and as soon as she got in she let it all out.

26

Shadow: what?

Cole: it's been half an hour now im sure you already had enough air to last you a life time

Shadow chuckled.

Shadow: I see you're Mr. funny guy these days huh

Cole didn't say anything he just looked at him.

Shadow: you don't like me very much do you

Cole: you killed my cat!

Shadow: dude you know what a black cat symbolizes in our black community and seeing that black shit in your office I thought ba simollotse baloi (witches have started) and I just put a bullet between its eyes

Cole breathed out and he shook his head.

Shadow: I didn't know it was there for rats...i get it it's a club deep inside Pretoria CBD but no man.... le gona monna e le gore why o sa letsetsa a professional pet control (but dude why didn't you call a professional "pest controller") or whatever the fuck they call them you didn't have to bring a black cat xemanga xa ntema(black cat) there

Cole just breathed out again and he looked at him with a

straight face.

Shadow: ok harde (sorry) I killed your cat now can we move on

Cole: fuck you!

Shadow chuckled.

Shadow: I didn't take you for a cat lover

Cole: and I didn't take you for a cat killer

Shadow chuckled.

Shadow: touché

Cole: why are you really out man

Shadow looked at him.

Shadow: to calm King down

Cole: he doesn't need you to calm down now try again

Shadow chuckled.

Shadow: two years back he didn't but now he does

Cole: what do you mean by that?

Shadow: he had three other personalities before he left and he came back with 10

Cole: what?

He was shocked.

Shadow: yeah it was me Small and Boris but now there's a hunter named Bukasa Kalaba was created to fool the rebels into thinking he was mentally ill when they raided the village Lufua is a military man and his name means death so you can imagine how reckless and dangerous he is

Cole: damn

Shadow: then there is a serial killer named Mfumu and he's one dangerous mother fucker more dangerous than Lufua

Cole raised an eyebrow and Shadow chuckled.

Shadow: I know right....anyway he was created the time he burned all those rebels alive after Lufua ambushed them and

killed some of them Mfumu then burned all those that were still alive then when their screams died down he threw in the dead ones and watched on with a smile on his face

Cole swallowed hard.

Shadow: you don't wanna meet him believe me if you thought I was the brutal one then you're wrong cause Mfumu is....that motherfucker doesn't have a heart or any conscious his heart is as cold as ice

Cole: the remaining three?

Shadow: the other one is a fisherman Moyo and then there's Mukuna the farmer and Saddam the dealer while King himself is the smart one the wise one

Cole: damn

Shadow: King went through shit man at some point he thought he wasn't gonna make it especially when he went through those third degree burns on his lower back and stomach if it wasn't for Mr Kabongo and his knowledge with herbs he wouldn't have made it

Cole swallowed hard.

Shadow: so when he's angry I need to come out until he calms down or else Mfumu or Lufua might take over and hell will break loose

Cole: why do you suddenly care I mean once you were the unstable one

Shadow: cause those two motherfuckers will get him killed cause they dont give a fuck about the consequences they are not afraid of death

Cole breathed out and he rubbed his hair.

Shadow: while with me if he dies I die too and I can't have that cause this world is too nice and sweet.... not forgetting the girls and their pussies and his fine whiskey so death is a

no no

Cole: this is too much to take in

Shadow: just be glad you didn't witness Lufua and Mfumu in action cause believe me you would look at King differently

Cole sat there looking down trying to let everything sink in.

King: you ok man

Cole looked up quickly cause he could hear the change of his voice.

Cole: King?

Kgosi: yeah...why do you have that look on your face?

Cole sighed.

Cole: shadow

Kgosi: he was out?

Cole nodded and he got up and went to pour them some whiskey.

Kgosi: damn it!

Cole: yeah and he had a lot to say

Kgosi: I bet he did

He said taking the drink from Cole and gulped it all down.

Kgosi: I hope what he told you didn't scare you too much

He said not even looking at Cole.

Cole: voetsek who said I get scared easily

Kgosi chuckled and he looked at him.

Cole: you are my brother and I'll never judge you or turn my back on you...you know that right

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: yeah I know man and the feeling is mutual

Cole: even though you have a serial killer inside of you and also a soldier a fisherman and a farmer

He said and chuckled and Kgosi shook his head chuckling too.

Cole: I never pictured you as a famer or fisherman King

Kgosi: a man has got to do what he needs to do to survive
man

Cole: true

Then Cole's phone rang and he looked at Kgosi before
answering it.

Cole: baba

The King: Qophelo how are you

Cole: trying to be strong baba and you?

The King: in your language gatwe " indoda ayikhali" (a man
doesn't cry)

Cole chuckled a bit.

Cole: true

The King: I called to tell you that we will arrive tomorrow
morning so get everything ready

Cole: noted baba

The King: good

Then the call ended and Cole sighed.

Cole: they are coming tomorrow I hope you're ready

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: the only thing im not ready for is burying Tirelo

They both then went silence with emotional looks on their
faces.

AT RICHIE'S HOUSE

Cole arrived with his house helper and he briefed her and
Richie's helper about the royal family's arrival tomorrow his
house helper was there to help Richie's helper prepare for
the royal family.

Cole: ma I know what you're going through you and Tirelo had a bond that he didn't even have with his own mother.....you took part in raising him and when he moved this side you moved with him and continued to take care of him so I understand your pain

The helper wiped her tears off with her apron her eyes were red and puffy from all the crying she did then Cole's helper brushed her back as she also wiped her tears off.

Cole: I need you to be strong ma I need both of you to be strong cause the King and his elders are coming to take his body home

Cole's helper: don't worry baba we will make sure they are comfortable

Cole: ngiyabonga ma (thank you ma)....another thing Dineo is pregnant

Richie's helper quickly looked at Cole.

Cole: and she's not coping at all and it's not good for the baby.....that baby is the only thing we all have that connects us to Richie.... he/she is his blood

Richie's helper: ooh Jehovah

Cole: apparently Mmabatho miscarried so Dineo is the only one carrying Richard's child....a princess so im sure you know how important that baby is

Richie's helper: too important ntate

Cole: but we know that baby's life is now in danger cause someone will feel threatened by him/her

Cole's helper: ooh Nkosi yam (ooh my God)

Cole: so we need to protect the baby and Dineo at all cost

Them: mmmmh

They said nodding.

Cole: we both know Richie was gonna make sure the baby

calls both of you ogogo and I know you two were gonna spoil him/her rotten so I need both of you to play your grandmothers roles by protecting her and her existence.....meaning everything that you think belongs to Dineo in this house need to be kept in a safe place cause I think Richie kept some things that remind him of her somewhere in here so please find them and keep them in your quarters for safe keeping until I come fetch them cause I don't trust Mmabatho and the queen

They both nodded.

Cole: and don't say anything about Dineo and the pregnancy to anyone please in fact don't trust anyone cause we don't know who killed him and it looks like it's someone or some people he knew that killed him so be careful and keep your ears and eyes opened

They both nodded again.

Cole: ok

He got up and went to Richie's study and he opened his safe and he found a stack of photos of Dineo and him and he chuckled getting emotional he also found his ID and passport and other important documents and he took them and left....he went to the mortuary to deal with some paperwork and to tell the owner that the royal family will be coming in tomorrow.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Dineo and Marang were cuddling in bed as silence filled the room they were both lost in thoughts until Dee spoke.

Dineo: why are we both cursed Mara
Marang sighed.

Marang: I don't think we are I used to think like that when I went through the rape thing and also growing up but now I don't think I am and I also don't think you are
Dee shook her head sobbing.

Dineo: then why me....why would this happen to me Marang
Marang: cause apparently God gives his toughest challenges to his strongest warriors and we both know you're one of the strongest people out there
Dee shook her head.

Marang: yes you are Dee and you know it as for me I think God was testing me and you help me to pass the test by being my pillar of strength so now let me be yours
Dee wiped her tears but more came out.

Dineo: it hurts Marang....i can't believe he's gone I wish all this was a dream

Marang bit her lower lip as tears fell and she held Dineo tight.

Marang: I wish it was too
Then Dee sobbed on her chest.

Marang: im glad you got to experience true love through him Dee and to me he was the big brother I never had....im gonna miss your arguments and you two swearing at each other and your loud noises every time you two had your make up sex
Dee frowned and she looked at her.

Dineo: you gonna miss our loud noises every time we had make up sex?

Marang: ok that didn't come out right
They both giggled and Dee sniffed.

Marang: I remember that time Cole and I slept at his

apartment cause we couldn't take the noise you two were making upstairs.....i thought he was beating the shit out of you Dee

Dineo: what?

Marang laughed.

Marang: mmmmh that was until Cole said you were having rough sex that's why you were screaming like that then I started feeling stupid and embarrassed

Dineo sighed emotionally.

Dineo: I miss him Marang....why go sa swa sfebe sele e leng Mmabatho instead (why didn't that bitch Mmabatho die instead)....i don't think I can go on without him

Marang sighed.

Marang: satan is not yet done with using her that's why
They both chuckled.

Marang: I know you're hurting but please Dee little Richie in here needs to make it.....he/she is our consoler Dee he/she will be the only one that will manage to wipe our tears off
Dee sighed.

Marang: so please Dee this baby needs to make it so less stress please remember if it's a girl she's gonna be the first lady of this country she's gonna be the first woman in your family to fuck the president so good that he'll end up marrying her cause wena you were madam princess and your mother well....

They both chuckled.

Dineo: im not ready to say good bye and I don't think I ever will be

Marang sighed.

Marang: me neither

then they kept quiet

Inside Kgosi's bedroom he was crying silently as he sat on the edge of the bed after some time he calmed down and wiped his face.....he then stood up and went to the closet and he took a blue plastic that has the clothes Richie was wearing they were covered in blood....he took out the golf shirt and he looked at the dry blood on it then out of the blue he heard a voice in his head.

Voice: calm down!

It was shadow....ever since the plane crash he started to hear his voice in his head at first he thought he was going crazy but he only spoke to him when he gets too emotional.... one day Mr Kabongo found him screaming busy telling Shadow to get out of his head and he asked him what's wrong after Kgosi told him what was going on he tried to help him using his knowledge with traditional herbs but nothing helped so he knew he had to get used to him or else he was gonna run mad.

Kgosi: just shut the fuck up man

Shadow: you'll get them but for now you need to keep it together remember you're the calm one

Kgosi sighed and he put the shirt down and took out his jeans.... as he was looking at them he remembered seeing something on the shirt and he put the jeans down and he picked up the golf shirt again and looked at its back.....he saw some dry blood on the upper back of the shirt....the shirt was covered in blood on the front and the back was clean except on the upper back of it while Richard was stabbed on his abdominal area.... he frowned and put the shirt back inside

the plastic and he picked the jean and he felt something inside the back pocket.....he searched inside and found a small chip it was a recording chip created by their IT guy.
Kgosi: mmmmh I hope you recorded those fuckers Tee
He put it down and continued to search the jean and he found a small piece of paper and a phone number was written there he took out his phone and dialed the numbers and a man's voice answered.

Man: sure

Kgosi: sure is this Pule?

Man: no

Kgosi: ooh ok I guess it's a wrong number

Man: yah

Then the guy ended the call and Kgosi dialed Cole's numbers.

Cole: King

Kgosi: call Fingers to come to the house I just found a lead and tell him to bring his DNA preservation kit

Cole: ok but what lead

Kgosi: a phone number one of our recording chips and some blood on the back of his shirt

Cole: ok let me call him and im on my way

Kgosi: sure

He sighed and put the jean inside the plastic and sealed it then he picked them along with the paper and chip and he walked out going to the study room.

KWENENG KINGDOM

Motlalepula: I hope you have good news for me Rabolao

Rabolao: nyaa Kgosigadi (no my queen) im afraid I have bad news

Motlalepula sighed.

Rabolao: your son died because of your sins Motlalepula

Motlalepula: what?

Rabolao: his ancestors could have saved him but they didn't

Motlalepula: I don't understand Rabolao

Rabolao: you tried to kill the heir apparent to the throne more than once Motlalepula in fact you started when he was still inside his mother's womb and they decided to hit you were it hurts the most by not saving your son the time you gonna need him the most

Motlalepula: no....no

Rabolao: the ancestors of the family you're married to are dangerous Motlalepula you touch one of them and they'll hurt you where it hurts the most

Tears ran down Motlalepula's cheeks and her hands started shaking.

Motlalepula: how dare they...all I did was to secure my son's future....im the first wife so my son deserved to be the King!

Rabolao: we both know that's not how it works

Motlalepula: that's how it's supposed to work Rabolao!

She said shouting and Rabolao sighed.

Rabolao: another thing the heir has arrived and the ancestors are not done with you yet

Motlalepula: no we need to do something Rabolao

Rabolao: something like what

Motlalepula: we need to make sure he's dead....its better both our sons die than to have her useless son sit on that throne

Rabolao sighed.

Rabolao: you know I regret ever agreeing to help you it's true when they say that money is the root of all evil

Rabolao then dropped the call and she heard a knock on the door.

Motlalepula: what!

She shouted.

Voice: my...my Queen the King requests your presence in the royal meeting room

Motlalepula: im coming!

She breathed out.

Motlalepula: nx what does this useless man wants

now....aarga man yeses I have important things I need to deal with

She dialed Rabolao's numbers again and a woman answered crying.

Woman: hello

Motlalepula: hello can I speak to Rabolao

The woman cried some more.

Motlalepula: hello?

Woman: he....he's dead

Motlalepula: wait who is dead?

Woman: papa.....he was just hit by...by a lightning now and he....

She continued to cry and Motlalepula's eyes popped out.

Motlalepula: wh...what?

Tu tu tu the phone got disconnected and she sat there with her eyes popped out with her heart beating fast.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Cole arrived first then their IT guy also arrived and he was shocked to see Kgosi.

Fingers: is jy seker jy is nie n spook nie my boss? (are you sure you're not a ghost my boss)

Kgosi: jy is mal (you are crazy)

They all chuckled.

Fingers: wel spook of nie ek is bly jy is hier (well ghost or not im happy you're here)

Kgosi: ek is bly ek is ook hier man hou nou op om vreemd te wees en doen waarvoor jy goed is (im glad im here too man now stop being weird and do what you're good at)

Fingers chuckled and Kgosi gave him the small paper.

Kgosi: I found it inside the jean he was wearing when he was stabbed

Fingers: ok

He did his things on his laptop then he stopped.

Fingers: found it...there it is

They looked at the screen and looked at each other.

Cole: North west?

Kgosi: Brits?

Then Fingers went back to typing and he stopped.

Fingers: umm the simcard is registered to a Modiri Molelekwa

He said as he continued to be busy on the laptop.

Fingers: mmmmh interesting

Cole: what?

Fingers: nigga is some wannabe El Capone boss..... street name is Scarface and he's originally from Madikwe township in the north west and his mother is Pinky and looks like he doesn't know his father

Since his laptop was also paired with Cole's printer he printed out all the information about the guy and Cole went to take all the printed pages and he read through them then he gave them to Kgosì

Cole: what is his connection to Tirelo?

Kgosì: the question should be what is his connection to those two monkeys

Cole went to his safe and he opened it and took out a file that had both Collins and Trey's information and he read through it

Cole: damn it I don't see any Scarface or Modiri here

Kgosì sat there thinking.

Kgosì: if it's not a business connection that they have then it must be personal

Cole: yeah

Kgosì: go deeper fingers get me all the information you can get about his background and dig up every nasty shit he has ever done and still does even now who he fucks and who he meets with the names of his pets helper etc.... just everything you can possibly get

Fingers: roger that bass

Kgosì got up.

Kgosì: I'll leave you to it as for me I need to go and preserve some DNA from his clothes something doesn't add up and I need to make sure we're not leaving anything out

He took the DNA preservation kit Fingers brought with and the plastic that has Richie's clothes.

Cole: well I'll go feed our pregnant women then

He also got up.

Fingers: kan ek pizza bestel.... ek is honger (can I order in pizza....im starving)

Cole: ek het reeds....ek sal n paar vir jou bring (I already did.....I'll bring some for you)

Fingers smiled.

Fingers: ok dankie bass (thanks boss)

He went back to his laptop then Cole and Kgosi walked out.

27

Cole: they are here

Kgosi sighed and he got up and he cleared his throat....The house helpers stood by the door and soon it opened and the King walked in then the helpers bowed he greeted them and walked in followed by the elders and his bodyguards and they all stopped on their tracks frozen with their eyes popped out when they saw Kgosi.

Kgosi: my King and my elders

They all couldn't talk because of the shock they just looked at him with their eyes popped out.

TheKing: Kg...Kgosi?

Kgosi: father

TheKing: is this you?

Kgosi: yes its me....im back father

The King looked at Cole and Cole looked down.

UncleBaboloki: ooh praise our ancestors....Badimo ba rona ga nkake ba re latlha!(our ancestors will never abandon us)

The King slowly walked to Kgosi and he put his hands on his

shoulders and Kgosi looked down with his jaws clenched.
TheKing: you are alive.... you came back son...you came back

Kgosi: yes father

Then out of the blue he hugged him which surprised Kgosi cause they never hug especially like this they just shake hands....after some time they broke the hug off and he turned to the elders.

TheKing: he's back my elders.....my son is back!

He said with a proud voice and the elders came closer and they also hugged him.....Kgosi looked at Cole with a raised eyebrow and Cole tried to suppress his smile looking at him.....They went to sit down.

TheKing: what happened...where were you?

Kgosi told them everything that happened except the gory details of the extreme things he did and they all were shaking their heads shocked by what he told them.

Cole: then days ago he showed up at my door

TheKing: im just glad our ancestors saved you and that they brought you back home

The elders nodded.

Kgosi: we were still planning on our trip back home then the following day Tirelo disappeared....we didn't know where he was and Cole remembered that he had a tracker on his watch and that's how we found him stabbed and stashed in the boot of his car

Mothusi: why is it that you come back and your brother dies Kgosana? (prince?)

Kgosi: askies?

TheKing: Mothusi!

The King warned him.

Mothusi: im just asking Kwena this can't be a mere

coincidence

Kgosi gave him a deadly look that send chills down his spine and he swallowed hard.

Mothusi: im...im sorry Kgosana (prince)

He said looking down and Cole shook his head pissed by Mothusi's remarks.

Kgosi: he said they are working together before he took his last breath

TheKing: who?

Kgosi: I don't know father but whoever they are looks like he knew them

He said and looked at elder Mothusi and Mothusi frowned then Kgosi looked back at his father and Mothusi looked at his brothers but they weren't focusing on him.

TheKing: our ancestors will deal with them for us.....they all will feel their wrath cause no one and I mean no one kills a Kwena and gets away with it

Kgosi: well that's if they get to them first before Cole and I do

He said looking at Mothusi who frowned again and he looked at his brothers then Kgosi's gaze went back to the King.

Mothusi: hebanna!

They looked at him.

Mothusi: its...it's nothing

He said and cleared his throat then the helpers brought drinks for them and they bowed and left.

Cole: my King was princess Mmabatho told?

The King sighed.

The King: yes I just feel for that girl....she just miscarried and now she lost a husband

Mothusi: she's lucky cause Kgosana here is alive so he'll take

over from his brother

Kgosi: take over what?

Mothusi: his household Mmabatho is our daughter in law and we don't owe her family so she still needs to bare us a child

Kgosi: udakiwe lo Qophelo (he must be drunk Qophelo)

He whispered to Cole who smirked shaking his head.

Mothusi: o reng? (what did you say)

Kgosi: I said its better you find someone else to take over from father cause I know my ancestors will never curse me like that

Dingaan: what do you mean by that?

Kgosi: I survived death so I know important things in my life now and marrying Mmabatho it isn't one of them

Mothusi: so taking over from your father isn't important

Kgosi: marrying Mmabatho isn't now can we change the subject.... you are here because of my late brother and not to discuss my future as the heir

Cole: right!

The King all this time he was looking at Kgosi and he could see something was different with him.....he wondered how much trauma did he go through in Congo.

Cole: my King everything is ready so after eating we should get going

Mothusi: Kwena I don't understand why this boy is even here....he's not even family but he's busy running things

Cole looked at him with a raised eyebrow.

Kgosi: keng you wanted that useless son of yours who goes around planting his useless seeds even inside prostitutes to run things?

He said with an angry voice and Cole held his arm to calm

him down.

TheKing: Kgosi that's not how you speak to your elders!

He reprimanded him.

Kgosi: my apologies father

Mothusi: this boy lacks manners I thought almost dying in that foreign country would humble him but I was wrong nxa Kgosi clenched his jaws looking at him and Mothusi looked away also fuming with anger.

Kgosi: who knows maybe you have a hand in that happening to me

Cole: Kgosi!

TheKing: enough!

They kept quiet with Kgosi still looking at his uncle Mothusi with a scary look on his face.

TheKing: Kgosi I said enough!

Kgosi moved his eyes away from Mothusi and he smirked looking down.

Kgosi: im sorry my King

TheKing: my son....a prince in our kingdom has passed on.... we didn't come all the way here for all this nonsense we're here to take my son back home where he will be laid to rest with his ancestors I hope im making myself clear!

He shouted looking angry and they all agreed they also apologized bowing their heads.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Marang: you better finish that food

Dineo: a kena appetite (I don't have appetite)

Marang: you're not eating for one Dee so please eat up
Dineo sighed.

Dineo: jeez fine

Marang chuckled.

Marang: mmmmh now eat up

Dineo: mxm

Marang chuckled as Dineo started to eat her food.

Marang: to think I was supposed to be the one who runs around like a headless chicken making sure I buy you your food cravings

Dineo swallowed sadly.

Dineo: at least you have Cole nna I'll have to go and buy those things myself

Marang: ooh please we both know Cole will run around like a headless chicken for you too and plus Kgosi is around

Dineo looked at her.

Dineo: he may be Ri....he may be his brother but I don't know him like that

Marang: and he's scary man kore he's one of those guys you can't swear at nje

Dineo: mmmmh

Marang: now I see why he's the heir to the throne.... o nale (he has) that thing man

Dineo: that Igwe thing neh

Marang: ooh my God she just cracked a joke

She said hysterically and Dineo gave out a fade smile shaking her head.

Dineo: mxm wa bora

Then the intercom rang and Marang got up to check who it was.

Marang: yes

She answered the intercom.

Woman: hi im here to see Cole

Marang: who may I say wants to see him

Woman: Linda...Shirley's sister can you open the gate he's expecting me

Marang swallowed hard.

Marang: wait a minute please

Linda: look here i.....

Marang went back to the lounge and she took her phone.

Dineo: who is it?

Marang: a re ke Linda (she says she's Linda) Shirley's sister
She dialed Cole's numbers and he answered on the third ring.

Cole: ntokazi

Marang: hey um Linda is here to see you

Cole: what...for what?

He asked with a serious tone.

Marang: I don't know she said you're expecting her

Cole: she's lying im not...look I'll call her and find out what she wants wena don't let her in ok

Marang: ohk

She said with a low tone and she dropped the call and sat down.

Dineo: keng? (what)

Marang: a re he will call her and that I shouldn't let her in

Dineo: ok then why are you sad all of a sudden

She sighed.

Marang: why is Shirley's sister here I mean its not like he was married to her and plus voice ya gae ne e nale attitude nyana (her voice had some attitude in it) when we were talking

Dineo: well a ka nnyela (well she will shit herself) if she tries any shit with Cole....nka ntshetsa stress mo yena shem (I'll

take out my stress on her shame)

Marang: Dee you're pregnant bathong

Dineo: so.... bona im pregnant not disabled nka mmontsha mmagae le ngwana wa ko gaabo wa go ja ke diboko six feet under (I'll show her her mother along with her dead sister who's being eaten by maggots six feet under)

Marang: amen I give up with you shem

Dineo: yeses nka ntshetsa stress mo yena shame (I will take out my stress on her shame) let her try her shit o tla re o

loilwe kao botsa (she'll think she's bewitched im telling you)

Marang just looked at her and she shook her head.

Cole: I heard you're looking for me

Linda: no hi no nothing Cole

She said sounding hurt.

Cole: hi Linda now why are you looking for me

She rolled her eyes and breathed out.

Linda: I heard about Richard so I came to see how you're doing

Cole: heard from who?

She cleared her throat.

Linda: ummm I heard on the news Cole

Cole: what news Linda....which news said Richard Kweneng is dead?

Linda: look ok I didn't call so that you will interrogate me like this i...i saw his car on the news and I recognized it and....

Cole: stop lying Linda...now who send you?

He said sounding angry.

Linda: what?

Cole: you better not have a hand in Richard's death or else I'll bury you alongside your sister and I'll make sure I bury you alive!

Linda: I swear Cole I just came to see....

Cole: you have automatically become someone I don't trust now don't ever set your feet in my house or my work place and lose my numbers!

Then he dropped the call.

Linda: damn it!

She typed a message on her phone and pressed send and she breathed out then she walked away.

The royal family except for Cole were inside the viewing room in the mortuary the elders were washing Richie's body getting him ready to leave the next morning while the King and Kgosi were watching...as for Cole he was waiting outside cause being in the same room as uncle Mothusi suffocated him he wished he could punch his teeth out.....Anyway after his phone call with Linda he went inside the viewing room and he went to Kgosi and whispered to him that they should talk now he went back out and Kgosi followed him.

Kgosi: what's wrong?

Cole: Linda showed up at the house

Kgosi: why is it so hard for that bitch to take the hint nxa

Cole: that's the least of my problems King..... she said she came to see how im doing after the death of Richard

Kgosi frowned.

Kgosi: there's nowhere in the papers where Tirelo's death is trending I mean we didn't even tell the police that he's

royalty and we didn't even give any statements to the press so...

Cole: exactly my thinking....so how did she know this quick?

Kgosi chuckled shaking his head.

Kgosi: im being tested here

Cole: is that why she came back and asked for accommodation?

Kgosi: I told you i don't trust her man!

Cole: let me go back home and make sure the girls are ok and also get some guards in the yard....I'll also tell Fingers to dig up whatever he can find on Linda and to have someone tail her

Kgosi: ok.... I'll join you later on

Cole: sure

They fist bumped and Cole walked away and Kgosi took out his phone and called Dineo's numbers....he got them from Cole and she answered on the fourth ring.

Dineo: Hello

Kgosi: hey it's Kgosi

Dineo: ohh ok...hi

Kgosi: are you and the baby ok?

Dineo: umm yeah

Kgosi: I hope you and Marang didn't open for that psycho
She sighed.

Dineo: ummm no we didn't

Kgosi: good I want you to do me a favour?

Dineo: ok

Kgosi: don't trust anyone Mmabontle that baby you're carrying is a threat to many people and some will come pretending to care and to grieve with you only to have them stabbing you on the back....you're carrying a princess Tirelo's

only child so be careful both you and Marang need to be careful and never trust anyone ok

Dineo: ok....umm is my life in danger Kgosi?

Kgosi: no but we don't know who killed Tirelo so im not taking any chances

She breathed out.

Dineo: ok

She said with a low tone.

Kgosi: and no stress ok

Dineo: I'll try

Kgosi: ok Cole is on his way back home so if you need something call him now and he'll get it for you

Dineo: ok thanks

Kgosi: sure

Then they ended the call and Kgosi breathed out then he turned and went back inside....They were done washing his body and uncle Baboloki was busy chanting their clan names looking at Richie's corpse they will dress him up with his royal regalia attire the following morning before they leave cause he'll be buried later at night at 12h00 midnight on the dot.

AT KWENENG KINGDOM

Mmabatho was laying on the mattress facing the wall.....people have been coming in in numbers to say their condolences from all the different Royal Kingdoms in North west and neighboring provinces as for queen Motlalepula she was crying none stop the fact that the following day her only son her pride and joy was going to be laid to rest broke her

even more and on top of it all it was her fault so guilt was eating her up.... On the other hand she was angry at the King for marrying another wife cause it's what led to her plotting the death of Kgosi she was also angry at Kgosi for his mere existence and she also hated Queen Boitumelo for bearing a son for the King before she did but mostly she was mad-angry at the Kweneng ancestors for choosing to punish her only son for her sins.....

Anyway Mmabatho's phone vibrated indicating that she just receive a message and she read it it was her mother telling her that "she's sick and tired of pretending to be hurt by Tirelo's passing and also having to think of her mother's passing for tears to come out" and Mmabatho replied by saying;

"What about me who's lying on this stupid mattress and is also wearing this stupid doek (head wrap) shawl and this heavy blanket... I mean I also have to think of my miscarriage so tears can come out and I also have to pretend to be heartbroken where else im not aarg"

Her mother replied by "Lol ke yona nyalo yona e" (this is what marriage is all about) and Mmabatho replied with "mxm" and her mother replied with "lol".

On his way to the house Cole received a call from his brother Zakhele and he clicked his tongue before he answered.

Cole: sho

Zakhele: Qophelo unjani? (Qophelo how are you)

Cole: good and you

Zakhele: hai ngigrand (im good).....i was calling to tell you that I reached out to Badanile and Bahle

Cole: ok

Zakhele: yah im taking it one a step at a time with them I don't wanna push too hard

Cole: ok

Zakhele: I thought that's what you always wanted me to do Qophelo now why are you sounding like im boring you

Qophelo: you have absolutely no shame Zakhele so you're doing all that because that's what I've always wanted you to do and not what you want to do?

He asked with a pissed off voice.

Zakhele: that's not what I mean Qophelo and you know it

Cole: look here those twins are your daughters Zakhele so you don't need to report to me as if im your father or is it you trying to brag to me.....listen here ndoda those girls know I love them like their lives depends on it so you didn't have to call me to tell me all that rubbish

Zakhele chuckled.

Zakhele: you think you're all that neh

Cole: I don't think so I know so....anything else?

Zakhele: listen here bro.....those twins are mine they have my blood running in their veins so wena go fuck a baby inside your Marang and stop acting like you're a fucken God or something!

He said with a pissed off tone and Cole laughed shaking his head.

Cole: you're just a waste of sperm Zakhele nx

Zakhele: msunu wakho Qophelo nx.....and ooh my

condolences for your loss Richard was a good guy he didn't have to go out like that

Cole: what?

He asked with a frown on his face.

Zakhele: more reason you should get off your high horse cause we are all disposable Qophelo always remember that

Cole: how do you know he's dead Zakhele?

Zakhele: word on the street says so unless it's all lies

Cole: who told you?

Zakhele: and nou was it a secret?

Cole: Zakhele what did you do?

Zakhele: ukhuluma ngani? (what are you talking about)

Cole: I pray you know nothing about his death Zakhele

Zakhele: why would I kill him if its anyone I would rather see dead is you and not him....anyway send my condolences to the royal family and I'll send your love to the twins

Then he dropped the call and Cole tightened his grip on the steering wheel with his jaws clenched.

Cole: another name added to the list

He sighed then he dialed Kgosi's numbers.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Kgosi was inside the bedroom with Dineo explaining to her about how things will go down the following day.

Kgosi: so we will go with you and Marang but you remain in a royal resort in the kingdom

Dineo: ok

She said with a low tone.

Kgosi: alright rest tomorrow will be a long day

She breathed out then her phone rang and she frowned looking at the screen She then cleared her throat and she answered with a low tone.

Dineo: hello

Collins: hey

Dineo: hi Collins

Kgosi clenched his jaws looking at her then he took her phone and put it on loudspeaker which confused Dineo as to why he did that.

Collin: I heard about your boyfriend im sorry you're hurting Dee

Dineo's eyes filled with tears and she bit her lower lip.

Dineo: mmmh

Collins: where are you I was at your place and I knocked until I got tired

Kgosi shook his head looking at Dineo and she swallowed hard.

Dineo: umm i...

Collins: I wanna be there for you Dee please let me be there for you

He said interrupting her.

Dineo: i... I don't think Richard would want that Collins

Collins: come on Dee you need someone right now and you know im the best person you can lean on...just allow me to be there for both you and Kiddo please

Dineo: ummm thanks for checking up on me but I have people im leaning on...shap

Then she dropped the call and tears fell she got up and went

to bed her phone rang again and she just ignored it and she got inside the covers and faced the other way.....Kgosi also got up and he went closer to the bed and he took her phone and he dropped call and slipped it into his pocket and he bend and kissed her cheek and he whispered to her ear which send Goosebumps all over her body.

Kgosi: don't stress just rest ok

She nodded then he walked out.....when he got out her phone rang again and he answered it.

Kgosi: I see you're one of those people who are persistence neh

Collins: who's this?

He asked with a confused tone.

Kgosi: it doesn't matter now does it

Collins: where's Dineo?

Kgosi: sleeping

He could tell Collins was getting frustrated.

Collins: who the fuck are you and why are you answering her phone.

He said with an angry voice.

Kgosi: like I said it doesn't matter who I am

He said with a chilled out voice.

Collins: it does matter when it comes to Dineo

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: well you pretend to care for her while on the other hand you just killed the man that meant the world to her her baby's father for fucks sake.....how do you sleep at night man
Collins froze.

Collins: ex...excuse me?

Kgosi: once she knows the truth she'll hate even your shadow

Collins: how dare you accuse me of that

Kgosi: cause only those that killed Richard will know he's dead so you just sold yourself

Collins: fuck you...i don't know what you're talking about
Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: how about I plant a seed in Dineo and Marang's head and let's see how they'll react....how about that
He said playing mind games with him.

Collins: im gonna find out who you are and you'll fucken pay you hear me

Then he dropped the call and Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: got you.... you son of a bitch nx
He went to his room.

INSIDE COLE'S BEDROOM

Cole and Marang were kissing passionately with Cole on top of Marang finger fucking her.... she was busy moaning whilst giving him a hand-job...he increased his pace and Marang body shook again as she squirted for the second time all over his hand.

Cole: fuck I love it when you squirt

She moaned and started breathing heavily with her eyes closed Cole then pulled out his two fingers and he took the towel and wiped his hand***

Cole: sit up and make daddy cum ntokazi

***she sat up and Cole told her how she should give him a blow job and she outdid herself...he was groaning and cursing until he came inside her mouth.....she ran to the bathroom and spit out his cum and she used mouthwash to cleans her mouth then she went back and she found him lying on his back with a smirk on his face.

Marang: why are you smiling like that?

Cole: it felt good to come inside of your mouth

She gave him a bored look.

Cole: come here

She went to him and lay next to him with her head on his chest and he kissed the top of her head.

Cole: I want you to do me a favour?

Marang: ok

Cole: I want you to stay away from Collins and his lap dog
She frowned.

Marang: ummm ok but why

He thought she'll become difficult so he was surprised.

Cole: they are also suspects

She raised her head and she looked at him with a shocked expression.

Marang: wh...what?

Cole: yeah I don't wanna keep shit like this from you and Dee cause you know them

Marang: but Cole Collins is a good guy

Cole: he's not trust me....all I know is he's obsessed with Dee and any obsessed man will do anything to be with the woman they want

She swallowed hard.

Cole: im not saying he killed Richie cause I don't have proof that he did but him and his lapdog are also suspects including other people that are our enemies

She sighed and she rested her head on his chest again with her mind all over the place.

Marang: I don't know how to feel about that

He kissed her forehead.

Cole: all I want is for you and Dee to be careful and to not

trust anyone especially those two

She swallowed hard.

Cole: ok?

Marang: yeah

Cole: good....i love you

Marang: I love you too

Dineo felt lips touch her cheek and she smiled cause she knew whom those lips belongs to she opened her eyes with a smile on her face and there he was but a frown quickly plastered all over her face when she saw him holding what looked like a baby in his arms.

Richie: look mommy is awake

He said not even looking at Dineo and Dee's eyes popped out when she remembered that he was dead....her heart started beating fast.

Dineo: Ri...Richie

Richie: she's beautiful I would appreciate it if you call her Gauta she's our little Goldie

Dineo swallowed hard with her heart beating fast.

Dineo: you're here...i thought....Kgosi and Cole said you.... died

She said with tears in her eyes sitting up on the bed.

Richie: I will always be with you and our Goldie here....you don't have to see me to know that im with you Dee

She got out of bed and she heard the baby making baby sounds.

Dineo: am I dreaming.....please tell me this is real and I

dreamed that you were killed

He didn't say anything.

Dineo: Richard?

Richie: only trust Kgosi Cole and Marang and no one else
Dee....your life and Goldie's life is in danger and always
remember that a killer is not written on his or her forehead
so always be wary

Tears were now gushing out and she took a step towards him
and he moved back.

Dineo: baby let me touch you.....i miss you Richard please let
me hold you

Richie: I'll always love you Dee and please make sure Goldie
here knows about me and that she never forgets about me

Dineo: Richard please don't leave me please

She said crying and he put the "baby" on the floor and stood
up straight.

Richie: remember everything happens for a reason

Dee.....don't be afraid to love again

Then he disappeared and Dineo ran to where he was
standing crying....she looked at where he put the child and
only a baby blanket was there.

Dineo: Richard!....Richie please come back.....please come
back!

She said all that screaming whilst looking around...well Kgosi
rushed inside her bedroom when he heard screaming coming
from her room and found her screaming and crying in her
sleep.

Kgosi: Mmabontle wake up....wake up!

He said shaking her and she quickly opened her eyes shaking.

Dineo: Richard...Richie!

She said looking around.

Kgosi: it was a dream Mmabontle calm down

Dineo: he was here...i saw him he was here

She said crying and she jumped out of bed and Kgosi rushed to her.

Kgosi: Mmabontle calm down!

Marang Cole and Mr Kabongo rushed in....Mr Kabongo was holding a vas he took from his bedroom when he heard screaming.

Dineo: Richard!....Richie come back please!

She said crying and running around searching for him and Kgosi grabbed her and he held her tight.

Kgosi: calm down Mmabontle think of the baby please

Marang rushed to them and she brushed a crying Dineo's back.

Marang: Dineo you need to calm down please...please calm down

She said trying so hard not to cry....by now Kgosi was holding her with her head resting on his chest.

Cole: King you go this?

Kgosi: yeah

Cole got closer to them and he held Marang.... his mind was on Kgosi's burned skin on his lower back since he was shirtless.

Cole: let's go ntokazi Dee will be alright

Kgosi: don't worry Marang she'll be fine Cole and Mr Kabongo rushed in....Mr Kabongo was holding a vas he took from his bedroom when he heard screaming.

Dineo: Richard!....Richie come back please!

She said crying and running around searching for him and Kgosi grabbed her and he held her tight.

Kgosi: calm down Mmabontle think of the baby please

Marang rushed to them and she brushed a crying Dineo's back.

Marang: Dineo you need to calm down please...please calm down

She said trying so hard not to cry....by now Kgosi was holding her with her head resting on his chest.

Cole: King you go this?

Kgosi: yeah

Cole got closer to them and he held Marang.... his mind was on Kgosi's burned skin on his lower back since he was shirtless.

Cole: let's go ntokazi Dee will be alright

Kgosi: don't worry Marang she'll be fine you need to rest cause tomorrow will be a long day

Well Cole and Marang walked out with Marang sobbing and Mr Kabongo also went back to his bedroom and Kgosi picked Dee up and he put her gently on the bed and he also joined her and pulled her so she can rest her head on his chest.

Dineo: he was here....i swear he was here

She said sobbing.

Kgosi: not here but in your dream Mmabontle

She sniffed and wiped her tears.

Kgosi: what did he said to you

Dineo: he said the baby's name is Gauta and that I should only trust you Cole and Marang

Kgosi: what else?

She sniffed and told him everything Richard said.

Dineo: I saw him Kgosi he was here and...and he spoke to me She said crying and Kgosi tightened the grip around her and kissed the top of her head.

Kgosi: I think he came to say his goodbye to you and to make

you aware of the dangers lurking around you
She sniffed.

Dineo: im not ready to let him go Kgosi im not

Kgosi: I know Mmabontle but sooner or later you have to remember you have a life growing inside of you and that life is gonna need you more than ever....it's hard I know but do this for Tirelo make sure his Goldie makes it ok

She nodded.

Kgosi: now rest tomorrow is gonna be a long day

She closed her eyes and Kgosi hummed a slow song for her until sleep took over and he chuckled when he heard her snoring lightly.

Kgosi: mmmmh I see you're a snorer....interesting

They left early in the morning to make sure the girls settle in well before the two of them leave them to go to the royal house for the funeral.....Marang and Dineo were sleeping on the backseat while Mr Kabongo and the two house helpers were in another car being driven by one of Cole's men.

Cole: you ready to see everyone

Kgosi: no....having to explain the horror I went through is just not something im looking forward to

Cole: yeah I get you

Then they kept quiet a bit.

Cole: I saw the burned marks

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: yeah one of the things I don't wanna talk about

Cole: noted

Kgosi: but im sure Shadow will love to share that experience

They chuckled.

Cole: mxm that one likes attention

Kgosi: don't let him hear you say that

Cole: a voetsekele kwa (he can go to hell)

They laughed.

They finally arrived at the royal lodge and they went inside while the house helpers and Mr Kabongo waited in the reception area where they were served tea and cookies.....as for the employees there they were shocked to see Kgosi after he disappeared for two years.....the manager took them to the royal suit even though Mmabatho booked it for her father.

Cole: Mmabatho is gonna flip

He said chuckling.

Kgosi: she's the daughter in law and im the heir apparent so she'll get over it

The manager held her laugh.

Cole: you like it ntokazi

She nodded she was still shocked at how beautiful the royal suite is.....just standing in the middle of the room she felt out of place.....Kgosi looked at Dineo but he could see her mind wasn't here.....he looked at the manager and told her she can leave he'll take it from here and she left looking disappointed.

Marang: it has a Jacuzzi

She whispered to Cole who smirked looking at her.

Cole: yeah

Marang: wow

She looked at Dineo and attempted to go to her but Cole pulled her towards the balcony and Kgosi went to Dineo who was now sitting at the edge of the bed and he sat next to her.

Kgosi: you like it

She shrug her shoulders and her eyes filled with tears then she let them fall and Kgosi pulled her closer and she rested her head on his hard chest sobbing.

Kgosi: I need you to be strong Mmabontle.....you need to be strong for Gauta please

She nodded while sniffing.

Dineo: can...can I lay down for a bit

Kgosi: yeah

He tucked her in and sat there looking at her as she slept....

Cole and Marang walked in and Marang went to lie next to Dineo and they cuddled while Cole and Kgosi went to the balcony.

Kgosi: she's not coping man....last night she was talking and crying in her sleep she was just restless

Cole: truth of the matter is she loved him man

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: I can see that

Cole: meaning you have a lot of proving yourself to her just like I did with ntokazi

Kgosi: Tirelo told me about what she went through

Cole: it wasn't easy man but today she's carrying my child and im ready to wife her

Kgosi: for real?

Cole chuckled.

Cole: for real man.....fuck age difference im gonna wife her ass

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: good for you man

Then Cole's phone rang and he answered.

Cole: yah

Voice: it's the King's guard we are at the T-junction

Cole: ok we're on our way

Then they ended the call.

Cole: its time man

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: let's get this over and done with

They went inside and found the ladies sleeping Cole woke

Marang up and told her they are leaving but he'll be back

later and that they should order in whatever they want to eat

then they left with Mr Kabongo and their house helpers.

Collins: fuck it!....I've been trying her numbers and Marang's numbers and they are not going through man

Trey: you still haven't found out who that fucker that answered Dineo's phone is

Collins: no but he knew a hell lot of shit and he even suspects us for that stupid boy's death

Trey: damn it....we need to find out who he is and take him out

Collins: yeah...im just worried that he might actually plant a seed in Dineo and Marang's heads and all of this shit we did would have been for nothing

Trey: this is more than us wanting the girls man so all this is not for nothing....the girls are a cherry on top

Collins: I love Dineo man to me she's not a cherry on top she's the main course.....i just wish I at least got her pregnant

before I left it would be easy now to make her mine
Trey: this girl is driving you crazy man
He said not pleased with Collins.

29

ROYAL LODGE

Dineo: I can't believe this is happening to me

Marang: me too but you need to be strong for the little one
Dee

Dineo sniffed and she wiped her tears off.

Dineo: in my dream he said I should name her Gauta

Marang frowned.

Marang: really?

Dineo chuckled.

Dineo: yeah really

They both laughed lightly.

Marang: e be a thomile.... keng e kare o nna ledlozi la go
tshwenya so (he has started....it looks like he's gonna
become a troublesome ancestor)

They both laughed lightly.

Dineo: mmmmh o right setse a thomile (mmmmh you're
right he has started)

They laughed lightly again.

Marang: mmmmh Kgosi seems protective of you and the
little one which makes me happy cause once the family
knows about little Goldie at least you'll have him by your
corner

Dineo sighed.

Dineo: yeah

She thought about what happened in the early hours of the morning where she woke up to Kgosi's hard dick poking her ass in her sleep....she would move forward and he would pull her closer and hold her tight and he said " go back to sleep Mmabontle" as if it was that easy to fall back to sleep with his rock hard dick poking her ass.....anyway she finally fell back to sleep with his hard rod poking her it was hard sleeping but thankfully the pregnancy helped her sleep cause no sane and sober person can sleep peacefully with a rock hard dick poking their ass.....she quickly shook off that memory from her head and they continued talking while eating.

The convoy drove inside the royal yard and people started crying the guards rushed to the cars and opened the doors as soon as they parked and they bowed their heads as they got out of the cars....gasps were heard all over the yard when Kgosi stepped out of the car with his shades on.....mumbles were heard all over with others frozen still with their eyes popped out.....they started singing a church song and the maidens of the BaKweneng Kingdom along with princesses from other neighboring kingdoms were drooling over Cole and Kgosi as they stood there with their buffed up bodies and their shades on....The dome casket was taken out of the hearse and the church song continued as it was wheeled inside slowly....the King followed behind it facing down and he was followed by prince Kgosi Cole and the elders and Kings from other kingdoms

The casket was wheeled to the royal room where the women were sitting on thatched mats.....Queen Motlalepula cried loud when the casket was wheeled in...Well it was put in the middle of the room and the elders covered it with a crocodile skin and they even put a spear on top of the crocodile skin on the floor guards surrounded it by flowers and clay pot filled with traditional beer and another one was filled with water from the Kingdom's ancestral river.... Queen Boitumelo stood up slowly when Kgosi and Cole walked in..... As for Mmabatho and her mother they sat there shocked.

Q.Boitumelo: Kgo...Kgosi?

Kgosi: Ma

Q.Boitumelo: my... my son....you...you're back...you're alive Kgosi swallowed hard as he saw tears running down his mother's cheeks....she started hyperventilating and Kgosi rushed to her and caught her before she could hit the ground she was taken upstairs and her private maid watched over her until she wakes up.... Downstairs Kgosi went to stand next to his father the guards then led the other kings to sit down right after Kgosi and his father sat down....Queen Motlalepula was busy crying along with other women while Mmabatho faked a sniff every now and then she would take a peek at Kgosi every chance she got and she would swallow hard and drool at how good looking he still is.

At four in the afternoon a line was formed by everyone who wanted to see Richard for the last time.... after the viewing was done everyone was asked to leave the royal room and

only The King Kgosi the elders and the royal traditional healer was left behind with a closed door.....Richie's body was taken out of the casket and put on the crocodile skin mat and it was stripped naked the traditional healer then did his things on the corpse by applying muti on it and other things.....they then dressed the corpse and put it back inside the casket and made the corpse to hold a spear smeared with muti that will search for anyone responsible for his death and deal with them accordingly.

Cole: how is she?

Marang sighed.

Marang: she cried herself to sleep again.....im worried about her

Cole sighed.

Cole: just keep an eye on her I'll see you later

Marang: ok

Cole: you sure you're ok

Marang: yeah im just worried about Dineo

Cole: just keep an eye on her until I get there

Marang: ok

Cole: I love you ok

Marang: I love you too

Then they ended the call.

Voice: lucky girl

He turned and frowned.

Cole: Dimpho

He said with a bore tone.

Dimpho: that's princess Dimpho to you

Cole: ungazongihlanyela wena

She frowned.

Dimpho: I see you haven't changed

Cole: and I see you're still annoying and not so attractive

He said with a straight face and she gasped hurt by what he just said.

Dimpho: still mad that I tried to pin my pregnancy on you I see

She said trying to sound not hurt by what he said.

Cole: I swear I would have killed myself if that baby was mine

Her face fell.

Dimpho: you know you could've been a prince even though it wasn't by blood

Cole: Dimpho I have all the money I need and im still making more now why would I want to be tied down to that stinking kingdom you're from married to an annoying bitch like you

Dimpho: ENOUGH!

Cole: enough what....truth hurts huh?

The princess was now fuming.

Dimpho: I wonder if that poor woman you're dating knows the kind of asshole you are

Cole smirked.

Cole: she's the reason I breathe that's how much she means to me

Her face fell then Cole saw Kgosi from a distance looking

"different" he looked like he was about to explode or

something he then went after him leaving the princess

there.....Mr Kabongo also saw Kgosi's state and he also went

after him they got to his bedroom and they found him on his

"fours" on the floor breathing heavily.

Kabongo: lock the door son

Cole locked the door.

Cole: King?

He was just breathing heavily with his body shaking then Mr Kabongo walked to him and crouched next to him.

Kabongo: let it all out son don't hold it in

Kgosi didn't say anything but his breathing pattern got heavier.

Kabongo: let it all out

Kgosi: he....

That's all he could say in a whisper tone.

Kabongo: let it all out son

He commanded him.

Kgosi: he....

Cole: you need to let him go King.....just let him go

He said with a breaking voice.....Then Kgosi got up and he started throwing things all over screaming.....then he punched the wall over and over until he couldn't anymore while Mr Kabongo and Cole looked down emotionally.....Kgosi then slid down the wall and he sat on the floor sobbing.... Cole and Mr Kabongo went to join him and sat next to him.

Kgosi: they killed him.....seeing that scar again just.....they cut him up like some animal

He sniffed.

Cole: they gonna pay King and you know it

Kgosi sniffed again then he wiped his face.

Kgosi: he's really gone man

Kabongo: but he will always be in your heart my son that is one thing those evil people will never take away from you

Cole: its true King Richie will always be in here

He hit his chest.

Cole: always and he even left us little Goldie for us and right now Goldie and Dee need you focused man you're the wise and calculative one amongst us so don't let those fuckers change that

Then he looked at Mr Kabongo.

Cole: sorry for the strong language thaima

Kgosi chuckled then Cole got up and he helped Mr Kabongo and Kgosi up then Kgosi fixed his clothes.

Cole: you need to take care of those bloodied knuckles

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: yeah

Cole: let me call in a maid to clean this room for you and to sterilize those cuts

Kgosi went to sit on the bed while Cole went out.

Kgosi was now standing on the balcony smoking around 8 at night Cole left to go be with the girls and Kgosi was waiting for the burial time where only him the King male elders and selected guards will go bury the prince.

Voice: I didn't know you smoke

He knew that voice every well he turned and there she stood looking beautiful as ever.

Botlhale: hi

She said smiling.

Kgosi: hi

She walked closer and stood next to him.

Botlhale: I cant believe you're really here.....i thought

She breathed out.

Kgosi: I was dead?

She kept quiet a bit.

Botlhale: I waited Kgosi

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: for what a few months?

Botlhale: you know how my parents are Kgosi so after a few months they married me off to another prince

Kgosi: ooh well they did good cause you weren't my chosen one to begin with

She frowned.

Botlhale: what?

Kgosi: does he make you happy?

He said changing the topic and she looked away.

Botlhale: he's not you

Kgosi chuckled asking his head.

Botlhale: I still love you Kgosi I never stopped even though I thought you were dead

Kgosi: well you should transfer all that love to your husband
Then his phone rang.

Kgosi: Cole

Cole: talk to Dee man this crying she's doing is not good for Goldie

Kgosi: give her the phone

Kgosi moved away from Botlhale but she could still hear him talk and Cole gave Dineo the phone.

Dineo: hello

She said with a low tone.

Kgosi: I thought we talked about this Mmabontle...i thought we were on the same page

She sniffed.

Dineo: it hurts Kgosi

She said with blocked noses and a hoarse voice.

Kgosi: I know that but think of the baby Mmabontle please
She sniffed.

Kgosi: do you want me to come over there
She sniffed.

Dineo: no its fine

Kgosi: how do I concentrate on burying Tirelo when I know
that you and my princess are not ok

She sniffed and Botlhale's breathe hinged.

Dineo: I'll try harder I just....its hard and every time I try to
sleep I see him smiling while holding the baby and...its just
hard Kgosi

She said crying and Kgosi sighed and he rubbed his beard
with the hand that was holding the cigarette which was the
sexiest thing Botlhale has ever seen.....she swallowed hard
biting her lower lip.

Kgosi: I understand but just do it for me please....just be
strong for princesses' sake

She sniffed.

Dineo: ok I'll try

Kgosi: I'll see you tomorrow morning ok

Dineo: ok

Then she gave Cole the phone back.

Cole: King

Kgosi: tomorrow were taking them to see a doctor im
worried man

Cole: yeah even Marang has been crying and I hate seeing
her like this

Kgosi: im worried about Dee and the baby man all this stress
is not good for both of them

Cole: I know but at least Richie will be laid to rest and now
we will concentrate on them

Kgosi: yeah...look we will talk later and please keep a close eye on her man

Cole: will do shap

Kgosi: shap

Then he sighed and he took a long puff from his cigarette and he exhaled it out through his nose and mouth and Botlhale felt her panties getting wet instantly....she cleared her throat.

Botlhale: so anyone special in your life

He looked at her briefly.

Kgosi: yeah now give me some space I'd like to be alone

He face fell.

Botlhale: ummm ok....im still around so we should catch up

Kgosi: im not interested Botlhale I have more important shit I need to deal with than to catch up with an ex now go to your husband im sure he's looking for you

He said with a cold tone and she swallowed painfully hurt by his sudden coldness towards her.

Botlhale: I can leave him you know....i don't love him Kgosi it's you my heart belongs to

Kgosi: leave Botlhale and stop tell me useless shit!

He said looking at her with a scary look and she walked away with tears in her eyes.

Kgosi: nx

Well at twelve o'clock on the dot Richie was laid to rest in the most respectable way his casket was inside a two-wheeled horse-drawn vehicle (a horse cart) while all the men including the King was walking besides it as they went to the cemetery at night.....Right now they were back from the

cemetery and now some people were leaving while others were gonna stay behind to help cook food that will be eaten after the memorial service of Richard in a few hours' time..... Mr Kabongo saw Kgosì looking suspicious getting inside a car and driving out.....he sighed and went to where there was some light and dialed Cole's numbers and he answered on the third ring.

Cole: thaima

Kabongo: my son listen carefully your brother just drove out and I do not think he is in control I have seen that look before and I think it is Mfumu

Cole: which one is Mfumu?

Kabongo: the serial killer

Cole: shit....ummm what should I do

Kabongo: when he comes back ask him questions he will answer so you know what he did and if you will need to clean after him

Cole: God

Mr Kabongo sighed.

Kabongo: you will get used to it my son...i have

He said with a low tone.

Cole: maybe I should follow him

Kabongo: no do not.... let him do what he has to do do not disturb him or your life will be in danger

Cole: ok I'll wait for him

Kabongo: let me know when he is back because he hates crowded spaces so im sure he will come to you since it is crowded here

Cole swallowed hard.

Cole: ok

They ended the call and Mr Kabongo sighed painfully he

hated that side of Kgosi and he wished there was something he could do to get rid of all those personalities but he couldn't he tried everything and nothing worked so he learned to live with them.....it wasn't that bad cause Mfumu and Lufua hardly came out and the fact that Mfumu is out means even Shadow failed to keep him inside....He saw Cole's helper walking towards him and he smiled meeting her half way.

30

There was a knock on the door and Cole went to the door and asked who it was and it was Kgosi he opened the door and there stood Kgosi and he smirked looking at Cole and Cole swallowed cause he could see it wasn't Kgosi who was standing in front of him he walked in and glanced at Marang and Dineo sleeping peacefully on the bed and he went to the balcony with Cole following behind him.

Kgosi: do you have something strong...i had a long and tiring early morning

He spoke with a central African accent it was 5 in the morning and Cole hardly slept worried about him.....Cole went back inside and came back with a glass of whiskey and he gave it to him and he gulped it down at one go.

Mfumu: do you play chess my brother

Cole: sometimes

Mfumu: well I do and im good at it

He said looking at Cole it was chilly outside and Cole was wearing his jacket while Kgosi was only wearing a grey vest and sweatpants.

Mfumumu: anyway I went by your house to change I hope you don't mind

Cole: nah it's cool

Mfumumu: back to playing chess.....do you know that the queen's job is to protect or shield the king in a game of chess?

Cole: yeah

Mfumumu: and if the queen falls then the king is left exposed

Cole sighed.

Cole: I know

Mfumumu: guess what.....the queen is dead and the king is left exposed

Cole's heart nearly stopped as he thought he was talking about Queen Motlalepula.

Cole: what...what do you mean by that man

Mfumumu chuckled.

Mfumumu: I gutted her like an animal and also chopped her to pieces after she sang like a canary and you won't believe the shit she said

He laughed.

Cole: who's this queen?

He asked with his heart beating fast.

Mfumumu: Queen Belinda

He said with a smirk and Cole face became pale instantly.

Cole: Shirley's sister?

Mfumumu: Kgosi hated her and he didn't trust her and he was right not to

Cole: what do you mean?

Mfumumu: there's 7 of them

Cole: huh

Mfumumu: 7 man can you believe it 7 against two and that two

is you and Tee

Cole swallowed and he clenched his jaws.

Mfumumu: there's still gonna be funerals in the royal family.....

heh people are gonna die....

He chuckled.

Cole: who are those 7 people?

He smirked with an evil look on his face.

Mfumumu: Collins Trey Queen Belinda and.....

Then he chuckled.

Mfumumu: Zakhele

Cole looked down and he breathed out then he clenched his jaws he shook his head not believing what he was hearing he had a feeling his brother Zakhele was involved somehow but for him to be directly involved hit him hard and also made him angrier.

Mfumumu: the remaining three she never met them face to face or told who they are but im certain one of them is that Scarface fool

Cole breathed out and he stared into space.

Mfumumu: anyway the queen is gone now the King or rather the Kings are vulnerable and exposed.....so let the games begin

He said with a smirk.

Mfumumu: im gonna catch a short nap wake Kgosi up in two hours' time

Then he went inside and he lay down on the couch and closed his eyes then Cole called Mr Kabongo.

Mmabatho was fuming with anger she couldn't believe that

her father had to go back home to sleep even though she booked him into the royal suite in the lodge just because Kgosi moved him from a royal suite to an ordinary room just like that her parents weren't happy with what happened that even her mother decided to leave with her husband even though they ended up being offered a room in the royal house they just felt disrespected by Kgosi's actions....Anyway the memorial service went on just fine with Botlhale trying to find ways to talk to Kgosi who just ignored her the whole time.

Kgosi: you asked to see me princess

Mmabatho looked at him with a serious look on her face.

Mmabatho: yes....ummm prince Kgosi im not happy with what you did

Kgosi: what I did?

Mmabatho: yes

Kgosi: ok enlighten me cause I don't recall ever doing anything to you

Mmabatho: I booked the royal suite for my father and I learned that you moved him to another room that commoners use

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: so you called me here for that

She huffed angrily.

Mmabatho: I don't appreciate you disrespecting my father the King like that and also disrespecting my orders as the princess

Kgosi: tell me here is this your father's kingdom

She gasped.

Mmabatho: excuse me

Kgosi: or perhaps you're the heir to the throne of this

kingdom

He asked with an annoyed voice.

Mmabatho: I don't like your tone prince Kgosi!

She said trying to sound brave.

Kgosi: then you should never ask to see me so you can talk to me about stupid nonsense.... nx you know what I don't have time for this nonsense

He walked out leaving Mmabatho embarrassed.

PRETORIA

Collins was pacing up and down waiting for Trey to find out more about what happened to Belinda things were now looking bad someone killed Belinda and they didn't know who yes she was now a liability to them but her death shone unnecessary light on them and he hated that....She was killed in the apartment Collins got for her in most horrific way her body was chopped up into pieces and put inside an oven and grilled then Collins Zakhele and Trey's names where written on the wall with her blood...it was just a horrific scene to witness. The person even send a video to Collins of the scene.

Trey: do you think that fucker Cole is responsible for this

Collins: I don't know but that mysterious man that answered Dineo's phone might be responsible...there was something about his voice man

Trey: eish let's hope Belinda didn't say anything incriminating about us to the fucker that killed her

Collins: eish

Trey: all this doesn't make sense are you sure it wasn't that

fucker Cole who answered the call

Collins: no that man's voice is deeper and there's something about him man.....i can't put my finger on it but there's something man

Trey: damn it this fucker is ruining our plans we need to find out who he is and quickly

Collins didn't say anything he just kept quiet thinking hard then his phone rang and he answered.

Collins: yah

Zakhele: what is this im hearing man

He said sounding angry.

Collins: we need to find out who this fuck is man then his phone rang and he answered.

Collins: yah

Zakhele: what is this im hearing man

He said sounding angry.

Collins: we need to find out who this fuck is man he wouldn't just write strangers names on the wall for the fun of it

Zakhele: this is not what you said will happen man you need to fucken fix it!

He said sounding angry.

Collins: will you take a chill pill....i have everything under control

Zakhele: how when our names are written on the bloody wall it's just a matter of time before the fucken police knock on our doors

Collins: they won't I got this now chill the fuck down!

Zakhele: you better you got what you wanted now it's time you do what you promised me....i know Cole is responsible for Mazwi's death somehow and I want him dead that bastard ruined my family and I want him to join his dead

father!

Collins: it will be done now relax

Then Zakhele dropped the call.

Collins: nx stupid fool

Trey: I could tell he was ranting like a bitch

They laughed.

Collins: the hate this fool has for his brother is shocking

Trey: if only he knew we're the ones who ended that useless boy's life and not his brother

They laughed.

Collins: he's a mama's boy that one he doesn't know how shit works in the real world

Trey: mmmmh and he's a good scapegoat

They looked at each other then they laughed.

Trey: let me call Scarface and tell him about the recent developments he may help us find out who that fucker is

Collins: mmmmh

Collins tried Dineo's number for the umpteenth time and it still send him straight to voicemail.

Collins: nx

BAKWENENG KINGDOM

It was now in the afternoon and Kgosi and his father were on their way to the traditional healer's house he called for them. The King didn't know why he called for them and he wasn't pleased cause the healer made it clear that they should come to his house (but in respectable way ofcourse) as for Kgosi he knew what the meeting is about and he was nervous about

the outcome of it...anyway they arrived and guards opened the doors for the King and the prince and they walked inside. As soon as they walked inside the house Cole and the girls stood up Marang and Dineo looked nervous to be in the presence of the King and they weren't happy that Cole tricked them into coming here.....He greeted them and he sat down and so did Kgosi Cole the healer and the girls.

TheKing: wise one I hope what brought me here is important cause I should be resting now

Healer: it is important my king

Then he looked at Cole.

Healer: don't keep the King waiting

Cole gave Kgosi the "wtf" look and Kgosi smirked.

Cole: ummm baba this is Dineo

The King looked at Dineo who looked scared.

Cole: she's the woman Tirelo wanted to take as his second wife

The King frowned.

Cole: he loved her baba and she's pregnant

Silence filled the room after some time the King spoke.

King: Tirelo never said anything about a second wife to me Qophelo

Cole: the first Queen and princess Mmabatho knew baba

TheKing: what are you boys trying to say to me?

He said with a serious tone.

Kgosi: she's carrying Tirelo's one and only child my King the day I came back we sat down and talked and he was happy to have met her....he couldn't wait to tell you about her and for you to meet her

TheKing: young lady where are you from

Dineo: so...soshanguve

TheKing: I take it she's not royalty

He asked Cole.

Cole: she doesn't know her father baba

The king shook his head.

Healer: can we talk privately my King

He said getting up and the men got up and followed the healer to his traditional hut they got in and sat down on the thatched mat.

The King: what's going on Moseki

Healer: there's a problem Kwena

TheKing: what problem?

Kgosi: she's the chosen one for me

TheKing: what?

Healer: he's right Kwena....she's the future queen of BaKweneng

The King looked at them like they are crazy.

TheKing: your first wife has to be of royal blood Kgosi you know that

Kgosi: I know my king but our ancestors showed me her as my queen

Healer: and remember she doesn't know her father so she could be of royalty and not know it

The King kept quiet thinking hard.

Kgosi: another problem is she has already met Mmabatho and Queen Motlalepula knows about her

Cole: another thing she's carrying Tirelo's child so yah

TheKing: why is all this happening Moseki why would our ancestors do this

Healer: we never question the ancestors Kwena you know that

TheKing: what if Tirelo was still alive then what Moseki

Healer: she wasn't chosen the day prince Tirelo was killed
Kwena

The king looked at him with a frown.

TheKing: what do you mean

Healer: boys excuse us

Cole and King walked out they went back to Marang and
Dineo.

TheKing: what is going on Moseki what is this im hearing?

The healer sighed.

Healer: your first wife is the cause of all this my King

TheKing: heh?

Healer: she did something unspeakable and the ancestors
took her son to hurt her where is hurts the most

The King looked at Moseki shocked.

Healer: they didn't have Tirelo killed all they did is they didn't
protect him from his killers...they didn't protect him my King
and your first wife is to be blamed

TheKing: what did she do?

He asked with a commanding voice.

Healer: my King you know how the ancestors work they show
me what they want me to see all I know is your wife is the
one that has to confess.... all I can say is she tried to change
fate but what she doesn't know is you can only bend it a little
but you cannot change it

The King took off his hat and he brushed his bald head.

TheKing: what's going on in my family Moseki?

The Healer sighed.

TheKing: what if Tirelo was still alive then what would have
happen between him and his brother

Healer: that would have brought the BaKweneng kingdom to
its knees cause Tirelo loved this girl and at the same time she

belongs with Kgosi so we both know what would have happened.....if prince Kgosi didn't disappear he would have met her first and Tirelo would still be alive

The King sighed and he kept quiet trying to let it all sink in he wondered what his first wife did so horrible that the ancestors had to hurt her by taking the apple of her eyes.

TheKing: Tirelo is my son too Moseki my blood now why didn't they save him for my sake then

He said with an angry voice.

Healer: don't question the ancestors Kwena trust me you don't want to anger them

The King just shook his head.

Healer: we have to wait for her to give birth before the family knows about the baby.....her life will be in danger Kwena and remember that baby she's carrying is your late son's only child

TheKing: my mind thinks clearly after a good rest so we will talk tomorrow

Healer: Kwena!

He said bowing his head and the king got up and he walked out.

AT THE LODGE

Dineo: you could've warned me at least Cole

She said sounding angry.

Cole: would you have agreed if we did

Dineo: it doesn't matter but it would've been my decision to go and meet the king or not

Cole: you just don't get it do you Dineo.....you don't get how important that baby is and how much we need the King's support....you slept with Mmabatho's husband and now you're pregnant while she lost her child do you think she'll let you give birth to Tirelo's only child while she failed to carry hers

She blinked fast looking at him.

Cole: this is not about you being ready to meet the king but for you to have him on your corner cause Mmabatho will come guns blazing....you don't know what that woman is capable of

Marang: she heard you Cole now let her be
She said pulling Dineo towards the bed.

Cole: Marang!

Marang: no!...she heard you now chill

All this time Kgosi was sitting down on the couch looking at Dee.

Cole: nx

He went to the balcony and Kgosi shook his head and followed him.

Kgosi: she's a feisty one I see

Cole: mxm you just sat there and said nothing

Kgosi: I didn't wanna intrude

Cole: voetsek intrude se kak (intrude my left foot)

Kgosi laughed.

Kgosi: I love the bond they have you'd swear they are blood sisters

Cole sighed.

Cole: yah it's amazing how they have each other's backs....i remember the day Lindiwe and Vuyiswa attacked them Dineo ravaged both of them to a point that Lindiwe ended up in

hospital...well apparently she ended in hospital cause
Marang pushed her but it was a team effort

Kgosi: for real?

He said looking amused.

Cole: im telling you man...they showed them flames

Kgosi breathed out and he brushed his beard.

Kgosi: im more worried about how she'll take the news that
she's my chosen one

Cole: knowing Dee my advice is make her fall in love with
you....but first let her mourn for Richie then make her fall in
love with you cause if you just tell her that she's the chosen
one for you...o tlo go bitsa ka marete left right and center
man (she'll insult you by your privates left right and center)

Kgosi: what?

Cole: piss her off and you'll see

He laughed but Kgosi frowned.

Kgosi: im a prince man so she has to respect me

Cole: mmh Richie said the same shit and he ended up
accepting that he's a prince to others but just her boyfriend
to her

Kgosi: a ka nnyela (she'll regret it)

Cole laughed and his phone rang and he answered.

Cole: fingers

Finger: im done you and King need to see this

He said sounding excited

Cole: you're even speaking English is it that bad?

Fingers laughed.

Fingers: you won't believe what I found out boss....as soon as
you get back let me know...and tell King the DNA test results
are also back and...damn kurough (its bad)

Cole chuckled.

Cole: ok I'll let him know
They ended the call.

31

Q.Boitumelo: Badimo ba bakwena!.....I can't believe you went through all that my son

She said crying...well he told them about the crash but not the airy details about the rebels multiple personalities and what they did when he was still back in Congo.

Kgosi: I made it out alive ma so it's ok

Lethabo: but abuti (brother) how did you survive a plane crash I mean no one can survive that

His younger sister said and Kgosi smiled.

Letlamoreng: if you watched more of the important stuff on tv rather than chick flicks and reality tv shows you'd know there are people who survive airplane crashes

She said rolling her eyes...she's Queen Boitumelo's second born while Lethabo was the last born.

Lethabo: mama she's rolling her eyes at me

She said sulking.

Letlamoreng: really Lethabo?

Lethabo: keng you like rolling your eyes at me mos

She said sulking.

Letlamoreng: cause most of the time you like acting like a baby

Lethabo: I am a baby

Letlamoreng: a 15 year old baby

She chuckled.

Letlamoreng: please....

She rolled her eyes again.

Lethabo: ma she's rolling her eyes at me again!

Kgosi chuckled shaking his head....this right here is one of the things he missed.

Kgosi: ok enough you two

Lethabo pulled a tongue out for her elder sister and

Letlamoreng showed her a fist and Kgosi laughed while the queen just shook her head.

Q.Boitumelo: this is what I have been dealing with since you were gone

Kgosi: I see....well you two can argue and tease each other all you want cause siblings do fight every now and then but as long as you two will have each other's backs at all cost and love each other then all this will be music to my ears

Q.Boitumelo: no no no....that's not happening this can't be music to your ears Letukile....no

Laughter.

Letlamoreng: bathong mama

Q.Boitumelo: hai hai yho.....le ya ntsofatsa lena (you're making me old)

More laughter.

Lethabo: we missed you abuti it wasn't the same without you

Kgosi: I missed you and your crazy fights too

They laughed while Kgosi chuckled....this right here was one of the main reasons why he fought hard to come back home.

Letlamoreng: so ntate Kabongo saved your life by putting his own life at risk?

Kgosi: yeah....that old man is a God's sent....if it wasn't for him I would be dead by now

Q.Boitumelo: he really is God's sent

Kgosi: mmmmh and that's why I want to make sure he's as

comfortable as possible.....i want him to enjoy his old age years without worrying about anything

Lethabo: yeah

Kgosi's phone rang and he got up answering it.

Kgosi: Mmabontle is everything ok?

His mother and sisters raised their eyebrows looking at him as he walked out.

Letlamoreng: Mmabontle?

She said looking at her mother.

Q.Boitumelo: keng? (what?)

Letlamoreng: a re Mmabontle....do you know any Mmabontles mommy?

Lethabo laughed.

Q.Boitumelo: wa phapha wena (you're too forward)

The girls laughed.

Botlhale: hi

Kgosi turned and frowned.

Kgosi: let me call you back ok

Dineo: ok

She quickly dropped the call and Kgosi clenched his jaws.

Kgosi: what is it Botlhale

Botlhale: can we talk

Kgosi: im listening

She walked closer and looked into his eyes.

Botlhale: im sorry Kgosi

Kgosi: about?

Botlhale: for giving up....for not listening to my inner voice when it kept telling me that you are alive out there

He chuckled shaking his head.

Kgosi: what it is this Botlhale?

Botlhale: I still love you Kgosi I was trying so hard to move on and learn to love Tau before you came back and now his presence annoys me

Kgosi: so o re ke dire eng Botlhale (so what do you want me to do) with that info huh.....you're fucken married and I have someone so just go back to your husband and stop being one of those loose woman

Tears ran down her cheeks and she wiped them.

Botlhale: im prepared to leave him Kgosi.....i just want you please

Kgosi: well I don't now if you'll excuse me

He walked passed her then she grabbed his arm he looked at her hand and then at her face with a frown on his face.

Botlhale: Kgosi please

Kgosi: you sound desperate Botlhale and its not a good look on you

She swallowed hard.

Kgosi: you made your choice you moved on and I don't blame you cause im sure I would have done the same thing so just concentrate on your marriage and stop all this

She let go of him and looked down.

Botlhale: then...then what should I do with all this love I have for you

Kgosi: easy.....give it to your husband

Tears continued to run down her cheeks.

Kgosi: you weren't my chosen one to begin with Botlhale and I believe things are the way they are supposed to be.....im being nice now cause I care about you but this should be the last time you approach me to talk about this nonsense....we

will never be now get that through your thick skull!
Then he walked away and she just busted out with a loud sob.

AT VUYISWA AND ZAKHELE'S HOUSE

Vuyiswa: when is your mother moving out Zakhele?

Zakhele: angizwanga? (excuse me?)

Vuyiswa: undivile Zakhele (you hear me Zakhele) ndidiniwe mna (im tired)...she's a monster these days

Zakhele: listen here Vuyiswa this is my house and my mother will stay for as long as she wants

He said with a pissed off tone.

Vuyiswa: OUR house Zakhele...OUR house

Zakhele: hei....do you know how much this house costs
heh....what about the furnisher and all the cars?

He said looking pissed and she looked at him with an emotional look on her face.

Zakhele: good since you don't know then don't talk to me about shit you know nothing about nx!

Vuyiswa: we are married in community of property so what is yours is mine now I want that old-hag out of my house or I'll kick her out myself!

Lindiwe: I'd like to see you try you gold digger!

She said walking in and Vuyiswa chuckled.

Vuyiswa: imagine umbulali (a murderer) calling me a gold digger

Lindiwe: what did you just say?

Vuyiswa: don't act surprised Lindiwe we both know you had

your husband killed

Lindiwe: HEH NANSI INGULUBE IYANGINONELA!

Zakhele: THAT'S ENOUGH VUYISWA!

Vuyiswa: ENOUGH YANI ZAKHELE....YOU HAVE FAILED AS A FATHER AND NOW YOU'RE ALSO FAILING AS HUSBAND.....OUR SON IS DEAD BECAUSE YOU FAILED HIM AND NOW YOU'RE LETTING YOUR MOTHER TREAT ME LIKE SHIT!

Lindiwe: uthi OUR son?....we both know Mazwi wasn't Zakhele's so don't make my son feel guilty for another man's child!

Vuyiswa jumped on Lindiwe grabbing her by her dress.

Vuyiswa: ucinga ukuba ndinjengawe Lindiwe heh (you think im like you Lindiwe) just because you pinned a pregnancy on Qophelo's father you think every woman is like you huh Zakhele got between them.

Zakhele: that's enough Vuyiswa....how dare you grab my mother like that...uyahlanya!

He said shouting at her.

Vuyiswa: you are a coward wena Zakhele...i wish I chose Qophelo instead of you cause he's more of a man than you'll ever be

A slap landed on her cheek so hard that she staggered back and lost her balance and fell on her ass.

Zakhele: you fucken bitch...how dare you compare me to that bastard!

Vuyiswa laughed with tears gushing out.

Vuyiswa: he knows his father and he also knows where his grave is what about you huh....did your mother tell you who your real father is?

Zakhele: shut up!

Lindiwe: you did good my son this thing needs to be taught a lesson nxa

Vuyiswa got up and fixed her dress and her shoulder scarf.

Vuyiswa: you two clearly don't know me....nicinga ukuba (you think) im some weak ass woman who cant stand for herself neh

She pointed at Lindiwe.

Vuyiswa: wena ulibele ukuba (you forgot) you're also a woman and you have children too

Lindiwe: hai suka nx..... and just so you know my son is gonna fix his relationship with his daughters my twin granddaughters and if you know what's good for you you'll accept them or voetsek!

Vuyiswa wiped her tears off chuckling.

Vuyiswa: in who's house?

Lindiwe: usho ukthini (what do you mean)..... this is their fathers house!

Vuyiswa: try me and bring those bastards here and I swear I'll poison them....try it...and wena Zakhele I regret the day I met you....you're a failure and worthless always hiding behind your mothers skirt....even gay men are more manly than you nxa

Zakhele: VOETSEK VUYISWA....UTSHELA MINA

LODOTI....MINA UZAKHELE? (you're telling me that rubbish...me Zakhele)

He said pointing at her.

Vuyiswa: yes wena...as long as you still let her control you our marriage and your life you'll always remain weak nxa

Then she walked out wiping her falling tears.

Zakhele: VUYISWA!

Lindiwe: let her go nxa.....witch!

Zakhele went to sit down feeling extremely angry...firstly it was Cole who called him weak and now his own wife called him that too worst part is she even thinks Cole is way better than him.

Lindiwe: don't worry about her....she needs to learn that you're the husband and im your mother and that im not going anywhere

Zakhele sighed again and he clenched his jaws feeling like shit for laying a hand on her even though he feels she deserves it.

Lindiwe: and how did she expect you to save a son that is not yours

Zakhele: he was my biological son ma

Lindiwe: what?

Zakhele sighed and he swallowed hard.

Zakhele: he was DNA tests confirmed it.....

Lindiwe: ooh

She sighed.

Lindiwe: what about Vuyelwa?

Zakhele: what about her ma

Lindiwe: her ears and nose

Zakhele: Ma!

He warned her.

Lindiwe: she doesn't look like you and her mother unless you adopted her without my knowledge

Zakhele got up shaking his head and he walked to the door.

Lindiwe: uyaphi? (where are you going)

He ignored her and walked out.

FOUR HOURS LATER!

The door opened and in came Vuyiswa holding a big brown

envelope followed by two police officers Zakhele got up from the couch with a frown on his face....his eyes landed on her left cheek and it was swollen and her left eye was also swollen and closed.

Zakhele: Vuyi what happened to your face

Officer1: is this him?

He asked Vuyiswa who nodded looking scared then the officer went to Zakhele.

Officer: Zakhele Zulu you are under arrest for the assault of your wife Vuyiswa Zulu you have a right to remain silent anything you say or do will be used against you in the court of law

The officer continued to read Zakhele his right while cuffing him.

Zakhele: wait...wait...i didn't do that to her I swear....when she left here she was fine I swear I didn't

Officer2: o betseka basadi wena...ankere o nagana gore o Van Damme wena so didimala (you beat up women....you think you're Van Damme right so keep quiet) and save your speech for the judge

Lindiwe walked into the TV room and her eyes popped out.

Lindiwe: hey nenzani! (what are you doing)

She said rushing to her son.

Lindiwe: let my son go!.....niyenzani! (what are you doing)

Officer1: mam please step back and let us do our job please

Lindiwe: what job when you have my son in cuffs?

Zakhele: ma tell them I didn't do that to her face....i didn't do that to her face ma you were there please tell them!

He pleaded with her mother and Lindiwe's eyes landed on Vuyiswa who smirked as soon as her eyes landed on hers.

Lindiwe: you witch...you evil witch...how dare you...how dare

you lie against my son!

She shouted pointing at Vuyiswa who quickly hid her smirk and she pretended to be scared....the other officer blocked Lindiwe from reaching Vuyiswa while the other one pushed Zakhele towards the door.

Zakhele: Ma call Qophelo.....plead with him ma I can't sleep in a cell

The officer pushed him outside with Lindiwe shouting.... Well Zakhele was put in a police van and the officers asked Vuyiswa if she'll be fine and she said she'll be fine but if Lindiwe attacks her she'll call them.....they left even though they felt like Vuyiswa should go and stay with a relative cause Lindiwe was fuming with anger so they feared for Vuyiswa's safety but Vuyi assured them that she'll be fine.

Lindiwe: mathakathi wenja that's what you are....you got my son arrested for a mere slap.....a stupid slap

She spat at her and Vuyiswa dropped her handbag and the envelope on the couch.

Vuyiswa: you have 15 minutes to pack your rags and get the hell out of my house you worthless hag or else you'll go join your useless son in that cell

She said looking at Lindiwe with a disgusted look on her face.

Lindiwe: angiyindawo uyangizwa.....angiyindawo nja ndini (im not going anywhere.....im not going anywhere you useless dog).....this is my son's house!

Vuyiswa: and I own half of every shit he owns so before I call the cops to come and drag you out go upstairs and pack you stupid rags and fuck off my house!!

Lindiwe: heh...heh....i swear with my late husband's grave you'll pay dearly for this.....i swear you'll pay with your useless life for this nja ndini

Vuyiswa laughed.

Vuyiswa: you swear with your late husband's grave the same husband you got killed....awunazintloni Lindiwe (you have no shame Lindiwe)....now get out of my house!

Lindiwe: IM GONNA DEAL WITH YOU OR ELSE MY NAME IS NOT LINDIWE.....NGIZOKUKHOMBISA MABELE WENYOKA NGIYAKUTSHELA DOTI! (I'll show you a snake's breasts im telling you rubbish)

Vuyiswa laughed.

Vuyiswa: GET OUT BEFORE I THROW YOU OUT NX....RHAAAA!
NDILILA UNYANA WAM APHA AND UBUSY UYANGISHOUTISA
NXA....NDICELA UHAMBE LINDIWE! (im mourning for my son
and you're busy making me shout here.....please leave
Lindiwe)

BAKWENENG KINGDOM AT THE ROYAL LODGE

Cole was cuddling with Marang inside one of the chalets he booked into he was asking her questions about her family and she answered as honest as she could even though she didn't fancy touching that sensitive topic.

Cole: do you know why im busy asking questions about your family and more especially about your mother?

Marang: to know more about me?

Cole: well yeah but the main reason is I want to send my elders to your family to pay damages and lobola

She froze for a bit then she raised her head to look at his face and he perked her lips.

Marang: you...you what?

Cole: ngifuna ukushintsha isibongo sakho ntokazi (I want to change your surname ntokazi)

Marang: ummm....are you saying what I think you're saying?

Cole: yeah..... ngicela ungivumele ngiguqule isibongo sakho sibe ngesami (please let me change your surname to my own)

She swallowed hard.

Cole: please ntokazi marry me

Her heart was beating fast and her eyes got filled with tears.

Marang: you want to marry me?

Cole: yes so allow me to send my uncles to your home

Tears ran came out.

Marang: you...you sure?

Cole: 1 million percent sure

She chuckled.

Cole: so uthini muntu omuhle (so what do you say beautiful)

She blushed and nodded as more tears were coming out.

Cole: is that a yes.....please tell me it's a yes

She chuckled.

Marang: yes...yes I'll marry you

Cole: haw madoda...SHE SAID YES....YOU HEAR THAT PEOPLE SHE SAID YES!

He shouted with Marang laughing then his phone rang interrupting him and he answered.

Cole: Lindiwe this is not a good time

Lindi: mfana wami unjani (my boy how are you)

Cole chuckled.

Cole: are you high or drunk Lindiwe

Lindiwe: don't insult me Qophelo....we may not see eye to eye but im still umama okzalayo! (a woman that gave birth to you)

Cole: ok umama ongizalayo ufunani? (ok a woman that gave birth to me what do you want)

She sighed.

Lindiwe: its your brother.....he's in trouble Qophelo and you need to help him

He perked Marang's lips and got out of bed he was only in his boxers....they just had one steamy session.

Cole: uthi (you say) I need to help him?

Lindiwe: he's your brother Qophelo...whatever differences you two have you need to put them aside and help him

Cole chuckled.

Cole: lalela la Lindiwe (listen here Lindiwe) I don't have time for nonsense.....only when it suits you and your son then he's my brother!

Lindiwe: will you stop being selfish for once in your life Qophelo!

Cole chuckled bitterly.

Cole: call his real father and ask help from him and leave me the fuck alone nx

Then he dropped the call and almost threw his phone against the wall but stopped when Marang called out his name she got off the bed butt naked and hugged him from behind.

Marang: calm down baby

He was breathing fast clearly angry with his jaws clenched.

Marang: we love you and we don't want to see daddy angry cause he's scary when he's angry

He sighed and turned around and he looked down at her.

Cole: I love both of you too much

She stood on her toes and kissed his lips he kissed her back and soon it got heated and he grabbed her ass and pulled her up and she wrapped her legs around his waist and he went

back to the bed with her and they had another steamy round.

MEANWHILE

Kgosi was lying on bed with his back...He was inside the Royal suit he booked for Dineo and Marang with Dineo's head on chest sleeping after he walked out on Botlhale he left the palace and went to buy Dineo what she was craving after she finished eating she went to lay down and when he heard her sniffing he knew she was crying so he went to join her on the bed and he held her tight until she fell asleep.....

His phone beeped and it was a message from Cole he was telling him about Zakhele's arrest and that made Kgosi to smile....he kissed Dineo's forehead and breathed out.
Kgosi: damn that weak ass just made things easy for us
He chuckled.

TO BE CONTINUED.....

32

AT KWENENG KINGDOM

The King: the lawyer called and he said he'll come tomorrow
Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: im glad Tirelo left a Will or yeses
He whistled shaking his head.

The King: mmmmh yena o dirile sentle (he did good).....monna o dira jalo especially monna o a sentseng kwa ntle (especially a man who made a baby outside his marriage)

Kgosi: mmmmh

He said nodding.

The King: I had time to think about you and that girl and I must say everything is just too complicated son

He said changing the topic.

Kgosi: tell me about it my King

He sighed.

Kgosi: the day I'll officially make her mine I'll have to deal with princess Mmabatho and mmeMotlalepula and some of the elders not forgetting the rest of the kingdom once princess Mmabatho makes it known that Mmabontle was Tirelo's other woman

TheKing: I had my fair chance of people questioning my choice of a queen when I took Motlalepula as my wife so good luck

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: Qophelo a re (says) she's feisty and a pain in the..... (he cleared his throat) and that her defense mechanism is her loose and rotten tongue

The King: Badimo ba baKwena!(the Gods of baKwena) another Motlalepula?

Kgosi laughed.

Kgosi: no...no...no she's nothing like her....Mmabontle actually has a kind heart my king

He said defending Dineo.

The King: what are you trying to say about my Queen Kgosi?

Kgosi cleared his throat.

Kgosi: what matters is that she bore you beautiful children and you love her

The King: is that so?

He said raising his eyebrow and Kgosi chuckled....this was the first time since he was born he's having a conversation like this with his father.....he wondered if things changed when he was gone or his father the king just changed now after losing Richard.

Kgosi: se se golo ke bophelo Kwena (what matters is life Kwena)

The king laughed and Kgosi joined him.

THE FOLLOWING DAY

Lawyer: I see we are all here

Kgosi: yeah you can start

Lawyer: ok but before I start is a Dineo Bokone sitting amongst us

Mmabatho frowned.

Mmabatho: why would she be amongst us Mr Peters

Lawyer: her name is listed on the Will so she needs to be here as well for the reading of this Will

Mmabatho: Never! That home wrecking whore is not allowed here!

Kgosi and Cole clenched their jaws looking pissed.

Lawyer: im afraid my late client made it clear that the Will should not be read without her present

Mmabatho: WHAT! HOW CAN TIRELO DO THIS TO ME...HOW DARE HE EMBARRASS AND DISRESPECT ME LIKE THIS!

She said looking angry.

Q.Boitumelo: Mmabatho respect yourself and those mourning clothes you're wearing!

She said reprimanding her.

Q.Motlalepula: Boitumelo didimala (keep quiet) this is my daughter in law and not yours.....o tsena kae wena (where do you fit in)....she has every right to be angry when her husband's mistress is put on her husband's Will ankere wa gago ngwana o busy o faker his own death left right and center instead gore a nyale so leave Mmabatho alone! (your own child is busy faking his own death left right and center instead of getting married so leave Mmabatho alone)

Kgosi's jaw twitched as anger took over.

Cole: calm down King

He whispered to Kgosi and Q Boitumelo chuckled shaking her head....as for Letlamoreng she squeezed tight her skirt to stop herself from saying anything that will be deemed disrespectful while Richard's elder sister Mpho nodded with some attitude plastered on her face.

Uncle Baboloki: THAT'S ENOUGH!.....HOW DARE YOU DISRESPECT THE KING LIKE THIS.....HE'S SITTING RIGHT HERE AND YOU HAVE THE ROTTEN NERVE TO SHOUT AND SAY NONSENSE TO EACH OTHER IN FRONT OF HIM!

King: Qophelo make sure she get here as in now so Peters here can read my son's Will once and for all

Mmabatho: NEVER! THAT WILL HAPPEN OVER MY DEAD BODY!

Kgosi: that can be arranged!

King: ENOUGH!

He roared and the room went quiet.

King: do as I said Qophelo!

Cole: yes my king

He got up bowed to him and walked out to go fetch Dineo and Marang.

King: and you Mmabatho you dare disrespect my presence like this....you dare question my orders

Mmabatho looked down.

King: im talking to you!

He said with a firm tone.

Mmabatho: forgive me my king

Q.Motlalepula: Kwena she didn't.....

King: keep quiet Motlalepula! Did I say open that horse pipe you call your mouth?! Did i?

He said with an angry voice and she quickly kept quiet as for the lawyer he was now uncomfortable cause the King's anger could be felt throughout the room....he wasn't shouting but the firmness and bold tone of his voice send shivers down one's spine....Letlamoreng smirked looking at her elder sister Mpho who shot her a death stare back.

Uncle Dingaane: moya fatshe Kwena....moya fatshe (calm down Kwena....calm down)

Kgosi all along was trying to calm himself down.....after some time Cole walked in with Dineo while Marang was left with Cole and Richard's house helpers in the living room.

Mmabatho started breathing heavily with her hands shaking as she looked at Dineo while Queen Motlalepula just looked at her with a face full of disgust....Dineo sat down between Kgosi and Cole and she looked down while everyone was just staring at her.

Lawyer: is your name Dineo Mmabontle Bokone Miss?

Dineo: yes

Queen Boitumelo and Letlamoreng's eyes popped out and

they looked at each other then they looked at Kgosi who had a serious look on his face....he was still angry with what Motlalepula said to his mother.

Lawyer: ok we can start...

He gave out envelopes to each and every member of the family that where from Richard.

Lawyer: you'll read them privately...now to the Will

He took out a CD and gave it to Kgosi.

Lawyer: please put in inside the CD player

Kgosi did and he went and sat down then a video played showing Richard and Queen Motlalepula busted out with a loud cry.

Q.Motlalepula: ooh my baby....my son....my son

Everyone swallowed hard looking emotional except for uncle Mothusi who just wanted this Will reading to be over and done with.

Richard: ooh shit the fact that you all are watching this means im gone im dead and that ke ledlozi la lona (im your ancestor)...oops eish sorry dad and boUncle for swearing Then he chuckled and he cleared his throat then Kgosi and Cole chuckled too.

Richard: first and foremost I Richard Tirelo Kweneng a legal adult and a prince of the BaKweneng Kingdom in the north west province being of competent and sound mind do hereby declare this to be my last Will and Testament and do hereby revoke any and all Wills and codicils heretofore made jointly or severally by me. I further declare that this last Will and Testament reflect my personal wishes without any undue influence whatsoever

He paused.

Richard: I hereby appoint Mr Simon Peters as

Executor/personal representative of this Last Will and Testament. Should the aforementioned individual be unavailable unable or unwilling to serve as Executor/personal representative when needed then I nominate and appoint Miss Megan Peters as the alternate Executor/personal representative of this Last Will and Testament. Immediately following my death the Executor will be authorized to exercise all provisions of this Last Will and Testament and to use the assets from my estate to make necessary arrangements without any unnecessary delay for the payments of personal debts which I doubt I have and obligations

He sighed and put the paper down.

Richard: and if what im about to say doesn't correspond with what is written down on paper then Cole mfowethu you better bankrupt Peters then make sure he meets Ghost along with his daughter and make sure his practice is burned to the ground

Kgosi and Cole chuckled while Peters swallowed hard.

Richard: and just for confirmation Cole another CD will be delivered to you watch it to confirm if it corresponds with this video and the written will....now all of you listen carefully cause im about to translate that deep English for school dropouts to a simple one.....

They all laughed.

Richard: this is an updated Will and Testament of me Richard Tirelo Kweneng the son of King Letukile Kgosietsile Kweneng Martha Motlalepula Kweneng and Hilda Boitumelo Kweneng
Q.Motlalepula: ashu ngwana o ke mmelegeng just betrayed me! (a child I gave birth to just betrayed me)

King: quiet Motlalepula!

She kept quiet looking angry by Richard recognizing Queen Boitumelo as her other mother.

Richard: a brother to Letukile Kgosietsile Kweneng Junior Deborah Mpho Smith Karen Keletso Ntabeni Anna-Bella Letlamoreng Kweneng Sharell Dipuo Kweneng and the naughty and loudmouth Mary-Ann Lethabo Kweneng...well if dad has illegitimate children out there who found their way home then askies bonnake for not staying long enough on this wicked world to meet ya'll

Then he chuckled.

Richard: im joking my King and I meant no disrespect I was just lightning up the mood cause yeses I can tell it's already tense there

The King smiled shaking his head and so did Kgosie and Cole while Dineo wiped her tears off because she missed him so much.

Richard: and Ma you may have given birth to me but MmeBoitumelo is also my mother even though she didn't give birth to me so chill

Kgosie Cole and Letlamoreng chuckled.

Q.Motlalepula: nxa

Richard: anyhoo to a more serious issue.....the lady named Dineo Mmabontle Bokone that is sitting with ya'll in there is not there by mistake

Kgosie: "fuck no Tirelo man"

He thought.

Richard:well she's the love of my life and the mother of my unborn child

Kgosie and Cole closed their eyes when he said that because they didn't want the family to know as yet about the pregnancy and Dineo swallowed hard looking down.

Mmabatho: ENG? (what)

Q.Motlalepula: WHAT?

Uncles: hebanna! (gosh)

AT THE POLICE STATION

Zakhele: what did he say?

Lindiwe clicked her tongue.

Lindiwe: he refused to help you but don't worry I got you a good lawyer

Zakhele sighed and he clenched his jaws.

Zakhele: im sure he was happy that I got arrested

He said bitterly.

Lindiwe: don't worry he'll also get what's coming for him nx

Zakhele: I can't believe Vuyiswa did this to me

Lindiwe: I always knew she was an evil witch... I mean she slept with brothers for God's sake.....i should've seen that as a red flag but she bewitched me so that I like her mthakathi nxa(witch)....can you believe she kicked me out of the house

Zakhele: ini? (what)

Lindiwe: but don't worry by the time im done with her even her ancestors won't recognize her nxa

Zakhele sighed looking down.

Zakhele: did you at least manage to leave with my wallet and phone

Lindiwe: don't worry I have them with me.... I was thinking that until you get bail the lawyer should freeze all your accounts so that witch doesn't get to spend your hard earned money

Zakhele: what about the lawyer's fees ma and plus you need a place to stay and you also need to eat

Lindiwe: don't worry yourself about that I'll use my own money and plus the lawyer I got for you is good so you might even be out before your accounts are frozen

Zakhele: ok tell him to freeze them

Lindiwe: right now he's busy trying to get you bail and as soon as he's done he'll come see you

Zakhele: ok ngiyabonga ma (thank you ma)

Lindiwe: I'll do anything for you mfana wami (my boy) and each and every person that betrayed you and turned their backs on you will pay dearly

KWENENG KINGDOM

The lawyer paused the video cause Mmabatho was busy shouting like a mad woman with Mpho and Queen Motlalepula also insulting Dineo....Keletso wasn't available she went back to Eastern cape the day after the funeral and Dipuo and Lethabo are under age so they weren't allowed in the meeting.

Mmabatho: YOU HOME WRECKING WHORE....SO YOU GOT PREGNANT ON PURPOSE.... IM SURE YOU FED TIRELO A LOVE POTION MOLOI KE WENA....YOU RUINED MY MARRIAGE AND NOW YOU CAME WITH THAT BASTARD TO COME CLAIM WHAT IS MINE!

Kgosi: SHUT UP MMABATHO!

He said getting up...he was slowly losing it as for Dineo she

was sobbing silently.

Cole: KGOSI CALM DOWN!

Q.Boitumelo: Letukile....

Kgosi: the three of you will keep quiet and let the will to be read....Mr Peters here has better things to do than to watch you acting like uncultured barbarians.....you have disrespected Tirelo's memory and the King of this kingdom enough man!

Mmabatho: TIRELO IS MY HUSBAND OK SO YOU EXPECT ME TO KEEP....

Kgosi: don't make me lay down your dirty laundry in front of everyone to hear Mmabatho or else you'll leave this Kingdom butt naked as a punishment.....don't dare me!

She kept quiet alarmed by what he just said.

Uncle Dingaan: what dirty laundry motlogolo (nephew)

Kgosi: that topic is for another day Uncle don't worry about it.....anyone else that has something else to say!

Mpho: you have no right to talk to my mother the first queen of this kingdom like that especially in front of this concubine who sleeps with married men!

Dineo clenched her fists getting angry and Cole saw her.

Cole: not in front of the King Dee

He whispered to her.

Kgosi: look at the founder of concubines insulting another woman..... you also cheated on your husband by sleeping with that short politician with a big potbelly two years ago just so you feel relevant since your husband has time for young girls and not you and I wonder how many more politicians have you slept with since then

Her face fell and Letlamoreng raised an eyebrow looking at Mpho shocked by the news.

Q.Motlalepula: O RENG WENA MOSIMANE KE WENA! (what did you say boy?)

King: THAT'S ENOUGH...ENOUGH MAN YESES!

The room became quiet and Kgosi bowed his head respectfully and he sighed.

Kgosi: my apologies my King.....Mr Peters you can press play
He sat down.

Letlamoreng: hebanna so Mrs perfect is a cheat...yah ne go go bobeshem (I cant believe it)

She whispered to herself and her mother nudged her....Mr Peters pressed play.

Richard: frankly i don't care what you say about her and my baby but.....i do apologize to my parents and uncles for not telling them about her and my intentions about her....dad im sorry im disappointing you

The King sighed.

Richard: but this also means im leaving a physical piece of me behind so I hope my disappointment turns to a blessing because of her

Dineo closed her eyes looking down and tears just ran down her cheeks.

Richard: and the baby is mine so never question that baby's identity....now to my hard earned money....

He sat properly.

Richard: listen good everyone it's my money ok....mine and I'll distribute it anyhow I want if you don't get a cent from me just know that you don't deserve it so go out there and hustle like I did.... and there's no contesting My Will cause all the money and shares are mine lankutlwa...mine....good!

Well he shared his assets fairly to all his siblings parents and uncles....him

parents and uncles....him Cole and Kgosi has a thing of buying land all over so he first left acres of land each to his uncles and the rest he left for his father and some money.

Richard: to my forced wife Emelda Mmabatho Kweneng I leave you our matrimonial house in Pretoria everything in it and all the cars and a lump sum of R200 000

Mmabatho: what?.....is that all.... im his wife how dare he leave mere change for me....how dare he!

She said getting worked up and Kgosi and Cole chuckled proud of what Richard just did.

Uncle Baboloki: didimala man Mmabatho! (keep quiet Mmabatho)

Richard: remember it's my money people!

Mmabatho: nxa

Richard: and as for my Anglo-American shares and other shares from different companies which Mr or Miss Peters will name for ya'll which cost roughly around 5 million dollars which in Rands costs around 70148900.00 (seventy million one hundred forty-eight thousand nine hundred) all go to my unborn child Dineo is carrying

Everyone except Kgosi Cole and the King shouted "WHAT?"

Richard: when Kgosi my elder brother comes back home cause I believe he's still alive out there then the proxy to handle my unborn baby's assets befalls on him and Cole until she's 21 years old then she'll take over....the lawyer will give you Cole and Kgosi all the conditions of holding the proxy for my baby girl

People where breathing through the wound about this part of Richard's Will.... others were even sweating and shaking because of extreme anger.

Richard: and if the baby doesn't make it which I double will

happen cause my ancestors ga ba tsube nyaope (are not drug addicts) then all the money should be distributed equally amongst my siblings parents Dineo and Cole but be rest assured if there's foul play with the loss of the pregnancy then all the money should buy a big land and a hospital should be built in my memory

Queen Motlalepula took off her head wrapper and she fanned her face using it cause she couldn't believe Richard would do this to her and her siblings.

Richard: Cole and Kgosi ya'll are richer than me
They chuckled.

Richard: so ya'll don't need my cents but you hold the one of the most expensive proxies in the continent so make my baby and her mother richer bafowethu
They chuckled emotionally.

Richard: ok anything else Peters will read it for ya'll on the written Will and remember this is my money...mine so contest it and you'll lose every penny I left for you....just let me rest in peace man or ke ya go le pokela (I'll haunt you all)anyway let me love and leave you all.....Kwena!

He bowed and the video stopped playing.

Kgosi: you'll contact me for my signature

Cole: me too

Lawyer: will do so

They shook his hand.

Kgosi: thank you

Then Mmabatho let out a loud cry while Queen Motlalepula sobbed while saying" Tirelo has killed me...my own blood my only son betrayed and abandoned me! "

Kgosi: let's go Mmabontle

She got up and walked out With Kgosi and Cole leaving

everyone shocked to the core....as for the King he chuckled shaking his head he knew Richard is crazy but this was beyond his expectations....in a way he was proud of him for making that video or else his kingdom would be in shambles and battle grounds would be drawn by now.

A WEEK LATER

Queen Motlalepula was depressed she still couldn't believe that Richard did that....her own son left her just R 200 000 the same amount as Queen Boitumelo and Mmabatho this issue has been giving her sleepless nights and still does even now on top of it all Kgosi and Cole held a proxy worth millions that belong to her own grandchild as if that is not enough Mmabatho is threatening her about the abortion she forced her to do so Queen Motlalepula uphefumla ngenxeba strong (she's breathing through the wound).....anyway she knocked on the door and peeked in.

Q.Motlalepula: Kwena

King: Motlalepula

Q.Motlalepula: can we talk?

King: make it quick I have to go to a council meeting

She sighed and went to sit down.

Q.Motlalepula: are we fighting Kwena?

King: I don't now are we?

Q.Motlalepula: not that I know of

King: then we are not

She sighed.

Q.Motlalepula: you have been cold towards me Kwena you

don't even touch me anymore

The king looked at her intensely.

King: you know Motlalepula my ancestors always protect their own and if you mess with one of their own they become dangerous and they'll hit you where it hurts the most....i just thought I should share that with you

The Queen swallowed hard and the King got up.

King: so if you wronged one of their own speak up now so a ceremony to cleans you and to also ask forgiveness from them can be done

Q.Motlalepula: o batla go reng Kwena (what are you trying to say Kwena).....what is it that you're insinuating

King: im the king Motlalepula and I know each and every important thing in this kingdom I may not know it at that exact moment but at the end of the day I'll know it....i chose you cause I love you and saw a future with you gore what possessed you into becoming this shadow of yourself I don't know but know this Tirelo's death is not in vain

She got up.

Q.Motlalepula: are you saying I had my son killed Kwena!

King: YOUR PROBLEM IS YOU FORGET THAT TIRELO WAS MY SON TOO....MY SON!

Q.Motlalepula: OOH PLEASE YOU HAVE KGOSI YOUR PRECIOUS HEIR SO DO NOT PRETEND LIKE YOU LOVED TIRELO THE SAME AS YOU DO TO THAT STUPID BOY!

Q.Boitumelo: THAT'S ENOUGH MOTLALEPULA!

She said walking in.

Q.Motlalepula: this is my husband Boitumelo so wena o tsena kae mo ditabeng tsa monna le mosadi wa gagwe heh!! (where do you fit in on matters that involve a man and his wife)

King: Mmagwe Kgosi Monnamogolo Lefika will bring mogwapa wa phala (old man Lefika will bring a biltong meat of a springbok).... keep some for me

He said looking at Queen Boitumelo.

Q.Boitumelo: ok my king

He then looked at a fuming Motlalepula.

King: now I know that my ancestors always knows what's best for us and they should never ever be questioned..... now listen carefully Motlalepula tomorrow at 11 hundred hours (11am) I want your family here in my palace so they will explain to me why basa go laya on how to handle yourself as a queen but more especially as a wife when I married you and after im done with you follows that disrespectful daughter in law of yours

He said pointing at her and her face fell then the king walked out.

Q.Boitumelo: that should be the last time you disrespect our king like that Motlalepula...how dare you!

Q.Motlalepula: hai voetsekela kwa nxa (piss off nxa)

She walked out and Queen Boitumelo sighed shaking her head.

TO BE CONTINUED.....

33

AT THE WAREHOUSE

Kgosi: how is Zakhele doing in that jail cell
Cole sighed.

Cole: not good....he got beat up pretty bad

Kgosi: I get he's your brother but he's not getting out of that place until he talks Cole

Cole: I know....i just....feel bad....but not as in that I want to let him go scot free but because all of this is because of Lindiwe....she created this him and if she loved me like she does with him im sure I'd be a naïve weak ass pussy like him

Kgosi: I understand gore lore lo ojwa lo sa le metsi but the truth is some of the decisions he makes are not MaLindi's fault or influence

He sighed.

Kgosi: but do not worry I won't kill him because I know he doesn't have it in him to kill but he's gonna pay dearly for being involved

Cole: and I wouldn't want it any other way.....i want him paralyzed because that way Lindiwe will suffer too

Kgosi chuckled

Kgosi: now I see why you pretended to feel sorry for him so I won't waste him and you get to make them suffer

Cole chuckled

Cole: tsek

they laughed

Cole: so how's Dee...wait wait....i mean Mmabontle

Kgosi chuckled

Kgosi: she's good but she's still taking Tirelo's death hard man....she tries to be strong but it's hitting her hard

Cole: and I hope you're giving her the needed space for her to deal with her loss right since ya'll live together now

Kgosi: ofcourse what do you take me for

Cole: I see how you look at her man...that's love

he thought Kgosì would snub him by telling him he's crazy but he just kept quiet with a frown on his face

Cole: wow you love her

Fingers walked in rushing

Fingers: jammer...jammer my lieflike base (sorry...sorry my sweet bosses)

Kgosì: im not even gonna ask why you are even late

Fingers: Beast called a meeting and it took longer than anticipated

Cole: security contractor shit neh

Fingers: yeah and while we're on that topic im gonna be out of the country for a while but ya'll know how to reach me if something urgent comes by

Kgosì: will you ever leave that life...i mean you say you left the secret service job but security contractors are the same shit to me

Finger: will you ever leave your illegal businesses and concentrate only on your legal ones?

Kgosì: fotsek

They laughed

Fingers: exactly my point!

***more laughter and Kgosì shook his head...well Fingers is their IT guy and he's also part of a company that deals with private security...in simple terms he's part of a private military company under their leader Beast but he's been with Cole and Kgosì for a long time even before he joined the secret service and he still stayed close to them even after he joined Beast's company as an IT specialist..... They trust each other which is what has kept them close even today and he calls them boss for fun not because they are his bosses ***

Fingers: so back to business about the motherfuckers that are suspects in the killing of our bro

he said sitting down and he opened his laptop and clicked on it then he took out a brown envelope inside his laptop bag

Fingers: DNA results

Kgosi took it and opened it then he read through it

Fingers: I did as asked and Beast helped with acquiring all the suspect's DNA and we got a hit....that blood belongs to Collins

Cole: that fucken bastard!

he said looking angry

Fingers: but looking at the shirt and where the blood was I think someone else stabbed him while Collins held him from behind unless he held him from behind after Richie wounded him and he reached his hand to the front and stabbed him

Cole: im sure his side kick is the one that stabbed him

Fingers: uhhh...welllll.....i have my theory

they looked at him...they looked angry now that they had proof

Fingers: you know how I get when im doing research on people I just go all in until there's nothing left to find so King remember the info I gave you before you decided to disappear on us

Kgosi: yeah...that Mmabatho has a child

Cole: wait what?

he asked shocked

Kgosi: yeah remember I had a meeting with you and Tirelo then I had to flight out to Egypt in a hurry for that meeting with that Arabic piece of shit who likes acting like he's a fucken God

Cole: yeah

Kgosi: that meeting was about that....i was gonna tell ya'll when I get back but shit happened

Cole: holly shit! She has a child.....wait but Richie broke her virginity so how is that possible I mean he even had a sheet with blood on it that he showed to the elders as proof that she was a virgin

Fingers: these days you can do a temporary surgery for hymen reconstruction man

Kgosi: yeah I remember you told me about that

Cole: meaning after ntokazi gives birth she can do it and I get to break her virginity

Kgosi: wa gafa...o ka bona mmao (you are mad...I'll fuck you up)....that girl has been through the most to go through all that shit for you

Cole: ah ah ngiyadlala man khanti yini udlaliswa ngemali?

Kgosi: tsek!

Cole: mxm

***Fingers laughed ***

Fingers: anyway since I found out that Scarface and Princess Mmabatho communicate

Cole: wooh...wait a minute.....what?

he interrupted him sounding shocked

Fingers: yeah

He took out some papers inside his laptop bag and gave them to Cole.

Fingers: those are his call records and I circled Mmabatho's numbers and you can see how many times they call each other.....I also hacked into his smartphone and that's why ek se as jy weet jy is n moeilikheidmaker of dat jy is n boef (I say if you know that you are a troublemaker or that you are a

thug) never have a smartphone a burner phone is the way to go cause it can't be hacked or traced...anyhoo then I got hold of the little girl's DNA sample and walaaaa....he's the baby daddy

Kgosi and Cole looked at each other

Cole: damn!

he was shocked

Fingers: that's not all..... you know Mmabatho was pregnant right so guess what.....Richie's mother forced her to do an abortion

they frowned at him shocked by that

Kgosi: wh...what?

he said with a confused look on his face

Fingers: smses between Mmabatho and her baby daddy claim that the pregnancy was his and not Richie's and the Queen forced her to abort

Cole got up and he walked around letting it sink in while Kgosi just looked at Fingers

Kgosi: what did you just say?

Fingers: that's what I found out man.....so my theory is if the baby daddy found out about the forced abortion we now know why he's working with those two fools so he could be the one that stabbed our boy....a life for a life typa shit

Cole was even shaking from extreme anger while Kgosi had his jaws clenched....he was trying by all means to control his anger

Fingers: so yeah this is deeper than some guy wasting our boy because of a woman

Cole: how do you want this handled King?

Kgosi: hit them where it hurts the most first....make them suffer first and im not only talking about physically before

killing them

Fingers: mmmmh I like that.... revenge is best served cold man ask me I know....bring them to their knees first....let them see their whole fortune disappear right in front of their eyes then boom make them beg you to kill them....that's how I'd do it cause Richie did nothing man so he didn't deserve what happened to him so killing them just like that would be way too easy for them...they need to suffer....all of them

Kgosi: how long will you be gone?

Fingers: a week..... two weeks tops

Kgosi: good we will talk when you get back

Fingers: ok now let me love you and leave you....i have a plane to catch

Cole: don't die

Fingers laughed.

Fingers: I know you'll miss me so I won't

Cole chuckled they bro hugged and Cole walked him out leaving Kgosi shaking with anger.

Well Zakhele's bail was denied (courtesy of Cole) and he's been in jail awaiting trial and it's been hell for him Cole especially Kgosi made his stay there a living hell....

Anyway he now has a visitor so he's taken to a private room he didn't think much about the private room cause he thought it was his mother who paid to see him in there or his lawyer but when he saw Kgosi sitting there with a straight face on his face he turned and looked at the guard.

Zakhele: take me back to my cell please

Kgosi: SIT YOUR WEAK ASS DOWN!

he roared

Guard: sit before o kereya mpama! (you get a slap)

Zakhele swallowed hard and he turned and went to sit down and the guard walked out closing the door on his way out to give them privacy

Kgosi: make it quick and short....who's involved in my brother's murder

He said giving him an intimidating look.

Zakhele: go fuck yourself along with your stupid friend Qophelo!

Kgosi chuckled and he got up

Kgosi: well I'll be sure to let the boys know that you are ready to be someone's bitch now preferably Scara's bitch

Zakhele's eyes popped out and he started shaking

Zakhele: wh...what....you can't do that

Kgosi: well I can....good luck

Zakhele: wait

Kgosi stopped walking and he turned and looked at him

Zakhele: I didn't kill him

Kgosi: I didn't say you did...i mean I know you don't have the balls to do it

Zakhele sighed looking down

Zakhele: does it make you two feel good about yourselves when you tell me how weak I am

Kgosi: you are weak cause you let your mother control your life and your marriage.....a man which can't make his own decision or a man who always runs to mommy with every time bad things happen to him is considered weak in my world....im close to my mother but she knows im man

enough to handle my shit without her help

Zakhele swallowed hard

Kgosi: are you gonna talk now or should I leave

Zakhele kept quiet a bit

Zakhele: its Collins Trey scarface....

then he looked up at Kgosi

Zakhele: your uncle Mothusi and his eldest son

Kgosi clenched his jaws

Zakhele: and I think the Queen Mmabatho's mother is also involved but im not sure

Kgosi: what about Mmabatho

Zakhele: I don't know about her

Kgosi: ok

he opened the door then he stopped

Kgosi: for your information Cole didn't have Mazwi killed.....Collins and his lapdog did to make you turn against your brother and they succeeded....they used you and you fell for it...now you see why we always say you're weak

he walked out and slammed the door leaving Zakhele shocked to the core with what Kgosi said

AT KGOSI'S HOUSE THREE WEEKS LATER

He's living with Dineo at his house "just until she gives birth" he told her but he knew this was a permanent stay for her.....He has been taking good care of her and giving her space too so all in all they are good housemates if I may call them that.

Kgosi: what's wrong?

He asked Dineo who rested her head on top of the counter in the kitchen looking flushed.

Dineo: morning sickness entshwere ka di washene (is showing me flames)

Kgosi: huh?

She raised her head to look at him.

Dineo: morning sickness Kgosi

Kgosi: what's that is it something serious?

Dineo: Amen!

She said defeated.

Kgosi: don't say Amen....is my princess ok

He said with a serious tone and Dineo chuckled.

Dineo: relax will ya its normal to have morning sickness when you're pregnant

Kgosi: you sure?

Dineo: yeah

He got close.

Kgosi: where does it hurt?

He said checking her temperature.

Dineo: I just feel nauseas Kgosi I'll be fine

She said removing his hand on her forehead.

Kgosi: im not taking any chances go and change im taking you to see a doctor

she gave him the "wtf" look

Dineo: it's just morning sickness bathong

Kgosi: go and change Mmabontle!

Dineo: o serious?

Kgosi: go and change

Dineo: Kgosi its just morning sickness you can even Google it

Kgosi: ke somang Morning sickness a sickness is not something you take lightly Mmabontle especially when

you're pregnant.....something could be wrong with Gauta and you're here telling me it's just morning sickness....don't piss me off Mmabontle just get ready so we can leave!
Dineo was just too shocked to even argue with him.

AFTER THE DOCTORS APPOINTMENT

Dineo: I can't believe you took me to a doctor because of just a mere morning sickness

Kgosi: don't be a smart ass ok

She shook her head smiling and looked outside the window.....She saw that they were taking another route so she looked at Kgosi.

Kgosi: we gonna do some shopping

She nodded.

AT THE MALL

They did their shopping and took everything to the car then they went back to eat at Spur restaurant ... Well they were escorted to their table and they sat down and ordered their food.

Kgosi: you ok?

Dineo: mmmmh

She said nodding....they waiter brought them their drinks.

Kgosi: can I ask you a personal question?

She sighed.

Dineo: ok

She said sitting back looking at him.

Kgosi: did your mother ever tell you about your father
She frowned.

Dineo: why are asking me that

He cleared his throat.

Kgosi: I just want to know.....i mean if you don't know your
daddy it could happen that you're related to Tirelo and I
She sighed.

Dineo: Kgosi im not stupid so please if you want us to get
along don't treat me like some naïve little girl

Kgosi frowned looking at her.

Kgosi: you think that I think you're stupid

She gave him a bored look and Kgosi looked at her with a
serious look on his face.

Dineo: don't give me that intimidating look Kgosi a sickness is
not something you take lightly Mmabontle especially when
you're pregnant.....something could be wrong with Gauta
and you're here telling me it's just morning sickness....don't
piss me off Mmabontle just get ready so we can leave!

Dineo was just too shocked to even argue with him.

AFTER THE DOCTORS APPOINTMENT

Dineo: I can't believe you took me to a doctor because of just
a mere morning sickness

Kgosi: don't be a smart ass ok

She shook her head smiling and looked outside the
window.....She saw that they were taking another route so

she looked at Kgosi.

Kgosi: we gonna do some shopping

She nodded.

AT THE MALL

They did their shopping and took everything to the car then they went back to eat at Spur restaurant ... Well they were escorted to their table and they sat down and ordered their food.

Kgosi: you ok?

Dineo: mmmmh

She said nodding....they waiter brought them their drinks.

Kgosi: can I ask you a personal question?

She sighed.

Dineo: ok

She said sitting back looking at him.

Kgosi: did your mother ever tell you about your father

She frowned.

Dineo: why are asking me that

He cleared his throat.

Kgosi: I just want to know....i mean if you don't know your daddy it could happen that you're related to Tirelo and I

She sighed.

Dineo: Kgosi im not stupid so please if you want us to get along don't treat me like some naïve little girl

Kgosi frowned looking at her.

Kgosi: you think that I think you're stupid

She gave him a bored look and Kgosi looked at her with a

serious look on his face.

Dineo: don't give me that intimidating look Kgosi I don't get shaken easily

Kgosi: is it?

Dineo: mmmmh...kgante where is our food....im starving

She said looking around.

Kgosi: answer my question Mmabontle

She sighed.

Dineo: well I know there's more to you just making sure that we're related or not but im too hungry to argue with you.....anyway all I know is he worked at the mines ko Brits while mom was working as a domestic worker gona ko Brits....she told him that she's pregnant and he was happy "apparently" he then told her that he's going back home to let his parents know and she never saw him again.... he never came back

Kgosi: mmmmh.... so did he ever tell her where he's from

Dineo: from some Tlokwe village in the north west province

He frowned.

Kgosi: what is his name?

Dineo: Lerole Mogakolodi so why did you wanna know about my sperm donor

Kgosi: just making sure you're not related to us

She rolled her eyes.

Dineo: yeah right.... so about what happened this morning

Kgosi: you're not gonna let that go neh

She giggled.

Dineo: nope.... bona since im gonna live with you until I give birth even though I think it's absurd I suggest you do some research about pregnancy as a whole so we don't go through that embarrassing moment again neh

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: mxm wa phapha (you're forward)

She laughed then she stopped and looked down with a sad face when a picture of Richard played in her head.

Kgosi: its ok to laugh and be happy Mmabontle....we both know the kind of man Tirelo was and he would want you to be happy

She swallowed hard.

Kgosi: remember the dream you had every time you feel like you're betraying him by allowing yourself to be happy

She swallowed hard some more biting her lower lip.....she missed Richie so much that every time she laughed or stopped thinking about him for even a minute she feels like she's betraying him and his memory.... being sad all the time makes her feel closer to him so every time she become happy she feels guilty....Well the waiter brought their food and she thanked him and they started eating.

Voice: ooh Dineo is this you?

Dee looked up and she was met by one of the girls that liked to bully Marang and she frowned looking at her.

Dineo: wow so o sa phela vele Shandis? (wow so you're still alive Shandis?)

She asked with a bored tone.

Lady: its Candice

Dineo: whatever Candice... Shandis...same shit to me

Kgosi raised an eyebrow looking at her he could tell she didn't like Candice at all...Candice the looked at Kgosi with a flirty smile on her face .

Candice: hi im Candice

She extended her hand for a handshake and Kgosi just looked at it with a frown on his face and she pulled it back

embarrassed....she cleared her throat and looked at Dineo who had an amused grin on her face.

Candice: so where is shy Marang

Dineo: Happy....she's pregnant and engaged to one of the most handsome and rich men in this country and he treats her like a queen gosh you should even see their house cars....in fact she's finishing her studies and also swimming in money....she's no longer that shy and sweet Marang you used to bully

Kgosi chuckled cause what she just said was unnecessary.

Candice: I wasn't bullying her bathong I was just toughening her up a bit

Dineo: toughening her up ya masepa....you were bullying her le nko ya sphara e kare double garage ya go tsena di truck(a) (with a big nose which looks like a double garage for trucks) Kgosi brushed his beard holding in his laugh.

Candice: mxm I almost forgot gore ga ona mekgwa.....so what about wena what do you do for a living....still in school or you also scored yourself a rich guy

She mocked her with a chuckle.

Dineo: well what I do for a living is I breathe.... haaaah fuuuh haaah fuuuh in and out like humans do...wena? (what about you)

Kgosi laughed.

Candice: I see you're still rude and bitchy

Kgosi wanted to reprimand her but Dineo beat him to it.

Dineo: and I see you're still ugly and a bad dresser....with the way blessers ba go jang left right and center ka teng (with the way blessers are fucking you left right and center) you should afford to do a face reconstruction at least

Kgosi: wow....

He said chuckling and Candice's face changed she looked angry now.

Candice: I don't even know why I wasted my energy by greeting you nxa

Dineo: cause you saw a potential new dick that's why...gape wena gao fete ke pipi (a dick never passes you by)

Kgosi: Mmabontle!

He reprimanded her but she just ignored him.

Candice: heh this girl

She said fixing her long wig but you could clearly see that Dineo was getting under her skin.

Dineo: now walk on before o re kgamisa ka dijo (now walk on before you make us choke on our food)

Candice: you're such a bitch Dineo

Kgosi: ok that's enough!

He warned her.

Dineo: and you're still dirty ugly and a whore and I keep asking myself what kind of muti are you using to make men look your way cause yuh girl....o mobe (you're ugly)

She said with a face full of attitude.

Candice: o tla nnyela Dineo...who the hell you think you're talking to like that!

Dineo: skobo! (ugly duckling)

Kgosi: I said that's enough now walk on lady before you piss me off!

He said with an intimidating tone and Candice looked at Dineo with her eyes going up and down with a disgusted look on her face then she clicked her tongue and walked away looking angry.

Dineo: next time you see me pretend like you don't know me mogirl ok!

She said it louder which made people to look at her and Candice showed her the middle finger and Dineo chuckled.

Dineo: what?

Kgosi: was that necessary?

Dineo: she used to bully Marang where we used to work so yah it was necessary plus she's part of my hit list

Kgosi: did you just say hit list?

He asked surprised.

Dineo: yep if a was a witch the people on that top ten list would either be dead running mad or suffering tremendously

Kgosi laughed shaking his head.

Kgosi: you crazy...so who's on that list

He said drinking his beer.

Dineo: firstly it was Mazwi but he's dead so he's off the list then it was Cole after he hurt Marang but I scrapped him off after they fixed things so now it's My so called father Marang's mother Mmabatho Richie's mother Vuyiswa Cole's mother Candice wa sfebe and my evil aunt and the remaining two spots are for the person that stabbed him and each and every person that was involved in Richie's death so yah....

Kgosi: mmmmh

He said looking at her intensely as if he's reading her.

Dineo: so yah they are all lucky im not into witchcraft shem or else masepa ne a tlo betha fene (shit would hit the fan) She continued to eat while Kgosi continued to look at her.

Cole: so when will you call your mother ntokazi it's been three weeks now

She didn't answer him she just sighed.

Cole: ntokazi?

Marang: I don't know

Cole: what's that supposed to mean....Marang I want to pay your bride price as in yesterday do you understand that
She sighed.

Marang: yes but.....but my mother and I don't see eye to eye
Phelo

Cole: just let her know that she will have visitors that's all
please

She sighed.

Marang: she's gonna insult me and call me names...i just....i can't im sorry

Cole: just call her ntokazi...please....i know you don't get along with her but I need to do things the right way...ngiyakucela sthandwa sam (please my love)

She sighed and slowly took her phone and dialed her mother's numbers

Cole: put it on loud speaker

She did as it rang for some time then it got answered.

Voice: hello

She froze.

Voice: hello?

Marang swallowed hard.

Marang: ma....mama

They kept quiet for some time.

Her.mother: Marang?

Marang: eeh ke nna mama (yes it's me mom)

Her.mother: o batlang? (what do you want)

Marang closed her eyes briefly as her mother said that harshly.

Marang: how are you?

Her.mother: o nagana gore ke byang after o fetsa gonrugisa ka koko wa moshimane o le o itseng o go rapile (how do you think I am after being insulted by the grandmother of that boy you claimed raped you)

She swallowed hard as tears filled her eyes.

Marang: ummm ne ke re ke go botse gore next week Saturday o tlo nna le baeng (ummm I thought I should tell you that next week Saturday you'll have visitors)

She said ignoring what her mother said.

Her.mother: baeng ba eng? (what visitors)

Marang: Qophelo asked me to marry him and ba batlo ntsha magadi le didamages (and they'll also pay dowry and for damages)

Her.mother: hehe so oimile Marang? (hehe so you're pregnant)

She swallowed hard.

Marang: eeh (yes)

Her mother laughed out loud and Cole clenched his jaws as Marang wiped her falling tears.

Her.mother: heh heh ke rapilwe then brugudlu ke imile....o imisitse ke mang Maria mma Jeso...keng ke moya oo halalelang? (he he I was raped then all of a sudden im pregnant...who impregnated you Maria Jesus's mother....is it the holy spirit?)

Cole: ok that's enough!

He said with a bold voice.

Her.mother: ke mang oo....wait ke mo loudspeaker? (who's that....wait am I on loud speaker?)

Marang was just sniffing.

Her.Mother: ke yena papa ngwana oo....so yena he didn't rape you but Mazwi nyana wa batho slept with you and ke rapist heh? (is it the baby's father.....so he didn't rape you but poor Mazwi slept with you and he's a rapist huh?)

Cole: your evil and cold heart is what will make you remain poor while Marang lives in a mansion and drives an expensive car

Her.Mother: o reng wena? (what did you say?)

Cole: I said nothing good will come your way because of that evil heart you have..... angazi nokuthi (I don't know) why im even surprised cause its clear you're satan's bitch!

Then he dropped the call looking angry.

Cole: ntokazi im sorry

Marang: I told you I don't wanna call her!

She said crying.

Cole: you had to call her ntokazi it was the only way

Marang: no it wasn't...i told you I don't want to but you forced me!

She said getting up and walking away.

Cole: Ntokazi

He said getting up too and going after her.

Cole: Marang

Marang: leave me alone

She said still crying.

Cole: sthandwa sam

She got inside the bedroom and she slammed shut the door and locked it.... Cole tried to open the door but she locked it.

Cole: Marang open this door

Nothing.

Cole: Marang stop playing open this door now!

Still nothing.

He turned the handle and pushed the door with force.

Cole: MARANG OPEN THIS DOOR NOW BEFORE I BREAK IT...OPEN IT!

Still nothing then his heart started beating fast.

Cole: Ntokazi im sorry for forcing you to call your mother ok now open up so I can see that you're ok

Still nothing.

Cole: MARANG!

Still nothing.

Cole: ooh shit...ooh shit

He said stepping back.

Cole: step away from the door cause im about to break it down!

Still no response.... so he kicked the door hard three times before it broke down and he rushed in....he found her laying on bed facing the other way sniffing....he sighed with relief and rushed to her.

Cole: baby

She didn't say anything...he got on top of the bed and she was silently crying.

Cole: hey look at me

She opened her eyes and he flipped her making her face up and he got between her legs and he wiped her tears off while looking down at her.

Cole: don't ever scare me like that ntokazi ok...dont ever in your life scare me like that uyangizwa (you hear me)

She just looked away with tears coming out.

Cole: im talking to you

She just nodded and he sighed.

Cole: look at me

She did slowly.

Cole: I love you

She looked away.

Cole: look at me ntokazi

She did.

Cole: I said I love you

She sniffed.

Cole: I said I love you Marang

Marang: I love you too

She said with a low tone.

Cole: ngiyaxolisa yezwa (im sorry ok).....it wasn't my intension to force you to call her I just didn't think she'd be like that and say all that

She sniffed and wiped her nose then he perked her lips.

Cole: she can say whatever she wants about you...insult you anyhow she feel like but she will never make me love you any less

Marang: what will it take for her to believe that I was raped....I've always been a good daughter to her even though she treated me like garbage

She said crying.

Cole: look at me

He said wiping off her tears.

Cole: guess what sthandwa sam....you don't need her to be happy.....you don't need her to believe you.... and you don't need her money to survive all you need from her is for your lobola to be paid then you wont see her or talk to her if you don't want to

Marang: her words always break me Phelo that's why I don't call her or ever go home

Cole: im sorry ok

She nodded and he kissed her lips and she kissed him back....the kiss got heated and clothes started falling off and moans and groans filled the room.

AT KGOSI'S HOUSE

Dineo: I swear that evil woman needs to be beheaded and her head thrown inside a pit toilet nxa....who the hell does she think she is....nxa I don't even know why Marang called her.....ke moloi nthwela....serathae sa moloi...mpya ya mosela wa sathane....in fact ke sefebe sa moloi nxa(that thing is a witch....a bastard witch....a dog with satan's tale....in fact she's a witch that is a whore nxa)

She said to herself a bit louder that Kgosi who was walking past her bedroom door that was slightly opened....she had a towel wrapped around her body she just taken a shower right after she spoke to Marang on the phone so she was fuming with anger....he scanned her body from up to down and he swallowed hard as his manhood was getting hard.

Kgosi: fuck!

He thought. Then Dineo took something from the bed and it was a thick black veined dildo with balls on it and his dick became flaccid instantly and he opened the door wide with a frown on his face.

Dee: the fuck Kgosi!

She said holding the towel tight so it doesn't fall while her other hand held her dildo hiding it behind her.

Kgosi: what the fuck is that!

Dee: why didn't you knock...you're invading my privacy man

Kgosi: what the hell are you doing with that shitty thing
Mmabontle?

Dee: what are you doing into my room without knocking?

Kgosi: drop that thing to the floor

Dee: get out of my bedroom Kgosi before ontlatsa
motete....etswa! (before you piss me off...out!)

Kgosi: I said drop it to the floor Mmabontle!

He said with a bold scary tone.....he was suddenly angry and
he didn't even know why.

Dee: you have no right to...

Kgosi: I SAID ON THE FLOOR!

He roared which made her jump a bit startled.

Dee: fine tsey! (fine take)

She said shoving it to his chest and he let it fall to the floor.

Kgosi: what are you doing with this shit

Dee: leave Kgosi

She said as she turned to walk to the bathroom but Kgosi
grabbed her upper arm and turned her around roughly and
that made her to let go of the towel and it got loosened and
fell to the floor leaving her naked....she quickly picked up the
towel and wrapped it back around her body but not quick
enough for Kgosi to not see her nicely shaved fat pussy and
baby bump.

Dee: get out!

She said going to the door and holding it open leaving Kgosi
frozen where he was standing with his mouth slightly open
and his jaw dropped.

Dee: I said out Kgosi!

He composed himself and he put his hand inside his pocket
and fixed his boner then he went to the night stand and took
some tissue and went to pick that dildo up with it and he

went to the door.

Dee: leave my dildo!

He ignored her and walked out of the door.

Dee: KGOSI GIVE ME BACK MY SHIT!

She said following him all the way downstairs with only her towel wrapped around her body.

Dee: KGOSI DON'T PISS ME OFF.... GIVE ME MY SHIT BACK!

He ignored her and walked towards the French door that led to the backyard and she followed him...The house helper came to see what was going on cause Dineo was shouting.

Helper: ooh Jehovah!

She exclaimed and quickly turned when she saw the big veined dildo on Kgosi's hand and she rushed away calling Jesus's name over and over.

AT ZAKHELE AND VUYISWA'S HOUSE

The past three weeks has been hell for her Zakhele did freeze his personal account business account and their joint account only leaving her personal account unfroze she has expensive taste so surviving only on the money that is on her personal account was a bitter pill to swallow.....she soldiered on for a week and that was it for her her daughter needed her allowance and she needed to send money to her parents back home in the Eastern Cape for their upkeep and also pamper herself so the following week she went to the police station to drop the charges against Zakhele and that's when she got the shock of her life.....Zakhele was admitted in hospital and his condition was critical they said he was

attacked by other inmates..... She went to the hospital and Lindiwe chased her out embarrassing her in the process

She promised her daughter a big birthday party they said he was attacked by other inmates..... She went to the hospital and Lindiwe chased her out embarrassing her in the process

She promised her daughter a big birthday party her birthday is in four weeks' time and she's a little short of cash she thought of selling some things in the house or one of her cars but it was an embarrassing thing for her to do and plus there's no guarantee that all those things will get sold at this short period of time.....She was in the back porch with a glass of wine on her hand and a small platter of different cheese crackers and fruits.

Vuyi: ooh fuck it!

She put the glass down and picked her phone and dialed a number.....it rang for some time.

Cole: what the hell do you want?

She sighed.....she would never get used to him being his cold towards her even though its been years.

Vuyi: hi

Cole: ufunani Vuyiswa (what do you want Vuyiswa)

Vuyi: I need help Qophelo.....i need you to borrow me some money Zakhele froze the accounts and Vuyelwa's birthday is coming up and you know your niece likes the finer things in life.....she's like her mama

She chuckled nervously.

Cole: and what makes you think I'd help you

She sighed.

Vuyi: cause you once loved me and Vuyelwa is your niece

Qophelo

Cole chuckled.

Cole: you mean not by blood but by marriage right

Vuyi: excuse me?

Cole: we both know she's the one that is not Zakhele's child while Mazwi was his..... I always said Mazwi isn't his just to hurt him and I thought he would do a DNA test to prove me wrong but I guess my brother isn't that smart

Vuyiswa swallowed hard with her heart beating fast.

Vuyi: how dare you Qophelo.....how dare you question my daughter's paternity and insult me in the process!

Cole: we both know im right so go fuck yourself and never call me again...fucken bitch!

He then dropped the call leaving her shocked hurt and..... more shocked.

AT KGOSI'S HOUSE

Kgosi was busy melting the dildo with a blowtorch while Dineo was crying for him to stop.....She then sat down on the ground as she sobbed defeated....Kgosi put the blowtorch down and went to her.

Kgosi: get up!

Dineo: I hate you....i fucken hate you Kgosi....in case you're blind I need that dildo cause im pregnant...my hormones are driving me crazy and im always horny Kgosi and you just melted it....you killed my dildo....you killed my dick and I hate you!

He pulled her up roughly with her screaming that he should let her go.....he then grabbed her hand and put it on his

slightly hard dick and she froze.

Kgosi: you wanna be fucked right....then this will fuck you anyhow you want.....this should be the first and last time you poke my princess with that shitty thing wankutlwa Mmabontle!

She sniffed and swallowed as his dick was growing hard on her hand.

Kgosi: every time you're horny just send an sms and I'll come fuck you any how you want....now stop acting crazy and crying over a fucken silicone!

She wiped her tears off with her other hand....as for the hand on his dick it was shaking a bit cause nigga was packing pretty big....it was thick and she could tell it was long too....she wanted to pull her hand away but it was like it was glued there.

Kgosi: you done being crazy?

His dick was getting harder and harder and it wasn't hard to feel it cause he was wearing sweatpants....his dick twitched and she felt a river going down the inside her thighs and she closed her thighs with her clit twitching.

Dee: ooh God

Kgosi: let's go take care of that itch

Dee: huh?

She quickly came back to her senses when he said that and she pulled her hand away from his dick.

Dee: umm i...i don't think....ummm that won't...be necessary She then cleared her throat and turned rushing away with her now sticky thighs and Kgosi shook his head chuckling.

AT THE HOSPITAL

Lindiwe and Zakhele's real father were sitting in the waiting room waiting for visiting time to come so they can go see him.

Tom: I can't believe this happened to my son

Lindiwe: and I blame that witch Vuyiswa if she didn't get him arrested none of this would have happened to him

She said wiping her tears off.

Tom: he beat up his wife Lindi what did you think was gonna happen

Lindiwe: he only slapped her and she left the house and came back with a totally swollen face and a blue eye.....clearly she planned all this

Tom sighed.

Tom: I just can't accept that he can't walk anymore...i cant

Lindiwe: the doctor said with a lot of dedication to physical therapy then he might walk again

Tom just shook his head with a frown on his face....then

Lindiwe's phone rang and she answered it.

Lindiwe: hello

Voice: Malindi unjani? (Malindi how are you)

She froze.....she knew that voice very well and only one person calls her that.

Voice: put me on loud speaker I want to talk to your boyfriend too

She slowly did with her heart pounding hard and her hand shaking.

Voice: ngizwile bathi uMazwi (I heard that Mazwi) is in hospital and he can't walk anymore

Lindiwe: no...no you're dead.... we buried you Qophelo
She said with a shaky voice and Tom froze too with his eyes
popped out

Senior: what you meant to say is you and Tom had me killed
right?

Lindiwe: wh...what...no we....i

Senior: well I just wanted to tell you two to sleep with one
eye opened....im back baby...ooh and Tom your wife just got
the proof she wanted to divorce your cheating ass and take
half of your shit and guess what im gonna help her take every
shit you own

Tom: wh...what?

Senior: and know that I have eyes and ears everywhere so
don't even think of getting her killed you piece of shit!
Then he dropped the call leaving them shaking with fear.

35

Dineo lay down on the bed with her mind still on what
happened earlier with Kgosi....Her mind went to the size of
his dick and she sighed loudly she took a pillow and put it on
her face and she screamed on it.

Dineo: why did I let him make me touch his gigantic dick
mara

She said to herself.

Dineo: gosh!

She said with a frustrated voice then she breathed out.....the
was a knock on the door and she kept quiet hoping whoever
it is would go away.

Kgosi: are you ok in there Mmabontle?
She put the pillow again on her face and she swore on it.
Kgosi: Mmabontle!
She took it off her face and breathed out.
Dineo: yeah ke shap (yeah I'm ok)
Kgosi: im going to Cole's place should I bring to something on my way back
Dineo: ummm yeah hotwings tsa ko chicken licken
Kgosi: ok call me if you need anything else
Dineo: ok
Kgosi: and I mean anything....if you know what I mean
She threw the pillow towards the door as she mumbled swear words at him but it landed in the middle of the room.
Dineo: tsamaya Kgosi tuu!(leave Kgosi please)
He chuckled.
Kgosi: shap
Dineo: mmmmh
She heard footsteps walking away....she sighed and she went to pick the pillow from the floor and went back to the bed then she sat on the edge.
Dineo: im sorry Richie....im sorry I touched.....i touched his dick
She said as tears filled her eyes.
Dineo: what happened was wrong in so many ways and im sorry
Tears ran down her cheeks.
Dineo: he's your elder brother and im pregnant with your baby....i...i
She sniffed.
Dineo: I shouldn't have allowed him to make me touch his thing...im sorry Richie

She said now crying.

Dineo: im really sorry Richie....i hope you forgive me wherever you are....you know im not that kinda girl Im just horny...your baby is making me horny and he just burned my dildo then he.....

She sniffed.

Dineo: he even saw me naked Richie.....im sorry

She said crying.

Dineo: im sorry baby I hope you forgive me and him

She sniffed.

Dineo: I miss you so much Richie....so damn much it hurts.....it hurts Richie.....i need you so bad your baby needs you

She continued to cry until she calmed down then someone knocked on her door.

Kgosi: Mmabontle

Dineo: y...yes

Kgosi: I'll see you later ok

Dineo: ok

Then silence.

Kgosi: are you sure you're ok in there

Dineo: yeah

He sighed.

Kgosi: ok I'll see you when I comeback

Dineo: sure

Kgosi sighed again and he walked away.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

Kgosi and Cole were drinking sitting in the lounge with the Tv playing highlights of English premier league matches.

Kgosi: I think I messed up

Cole: wenzeni?(what did you do)

Kgosi: I freaked out and....

Cole: wooh you “freaked” out?..... About what?

He asked with an amused look on his face.

Kgosi: will you just shut it and let me finish

Cole chuckled.

Cole: ok ok continue....

Kgosi: mxm...anyway

He told him what he did and Cole busted out laughing.

Cole: ooh shit....you did what?

He said as he laughed some more.

Kgosi: will you stop laughing....i think she’s mad at me man

Cole continued to laugh.

Cole: of course she’s mad in fact she’s angry....fuming angry

Kgosi: mxm

Marang: I hope she kicked your balls for what you did nx

She said walking passed the lounge going to the kitchen area.

Kgosi: wh....

Cole did a face and a hand gesture indicating that he should keep quiet.

Marang: I don’t understand who the hell you think you are burning people’s properties nxa

Kgosi looked at Cole with an angry frown on his face.

Cole: its hormonal and moody day....whatever is said to you ignore it and apologies

Kgosi: jy is mal (you’re crazy) I’m not the one who fucked a baby inside of her so don’t tell me that shit man

Cole: mfowethu remember Dineo is pregnant and you just

burned something she needs that will help her in her time of need...if you think Ntokazi's behavior is disrespectful then you don't know Dee

Marang came back from the kitchen holding a bottle of water.

Marang: I hope o go biditse ka marete nxa... the nerve....imagine burning her dildo....her expensive dildo... im sure wena ba go rumile....o no tsoga basung lesilo to burn people's things....waitsi le tlwaela batho Kgosi (I hope she called you by your private part...the nerve.... Imagine burning her dildo....her expensive dildo....I'm sure they send you.....you just woke up from the dead lesilo and you burn people's things...you're disrespectful Kgosi)

She walked passed them and she went up the stairs clicking her tongue....then Cole chuckled shaking his head.

Kgosi: wa keketega le tlhogo e kima ekare lerete la bramani(you're busy laughing with that big head of yours as if it's a bull's testicles)

Cole busted out laughing.

Cole: fosek San.....entlek ngiyenzi mina (what did I do)

Kgosi: nx

Cole: relax will ya...after a few hours she'll greet you with a smile and even ask you when you arrived that's how crazy their hormones drives them and plus ntokazi is still mad that Friday she's gonna face her evil mother for the lobola negotiations

Kgosi sighed and shook his head.

Cole: mmmmh they carry the baby and we take in insults mood swings like men

Kgosi: no man ba itirisa batho ba (they are faking it these people)

Cole laughed

Cole: don't let them hear you

Marang came down the stairs and Cole cleared his throat.

Cole: sthandwa sam(my love)

Marang: waitsi keng Kgosi o tletse ka dichila wena....do you know how much that dildo costs....o tlo mofa your own dick now that you burned hers heh?....do you know she called me crying wena Kgosi....o monna o mo byang mara heh.....o tsene keng Kgosi (you know what Kgosi you're full of shit.....do you know how much that dildo costs.....will you give her your own dick now that you burned hers huh?.....do you know she called me crying Kgosi.....what kind of a man are you huh?...what came over you Kgosi)

Cole and Kgosi looked at her with a surprised and confused expression.

Marang: and wena Cole if you burn my own dildo even though it was bought with your money I swear ka your unborn child ko go kgaola pipi o robetse im telling you(I'll chop off your dick while you're sleeping) try me

Cole: wooh wooh woohwooh....wait....what dildo Ntokazi? He said with a frown on his face and she walked back to the stairs.

Cole: Marang what dildo are you talking about!

He said getting worked up.....he then got up and went after Marang..... Kgosi chuckled and he got up and walked to the door....he knew Cole won't let it go until he gets rid of the dildo too even though he laughed at him for melting Dineo's dildo.

KWENENG KINGDOM

Ever since a meeting with Queen Motlalepula's family she has been spending more time in her bedroom....well she apologized to the king and the throne for being disrespectful she was even fined with a live cow and goat and ever since then she spends more time alone in her bedroom.....a meeting with Mmabatho's family was also arranged and Mmabatho has been fuming with anger because of that because that meant she'll be forced to apologize for disrespecting the King and apologizing is something she hates doing....Everyone in the palace is walking on egg shells cause of the manner the King has been dashing out meetings and fines left right and center to anyone who disrespects him and the throne.....he's angry and everyone in the palace and the kingdom can feel it.

INSIDE MMABATHO'S BEDROOM....

Its been an four hours since the King announced that he called for a meeting with her family for the disrespect she has showed towards him and the throne and she's still fuming with anger.....she has a feeling that Kgosi knows about her deep secret about her being a mother to an 8 year old daughter and the worst part is only her mother knows that the little girl is biologically hers..... she fears that he might tell her secret in that meeting since he will be present as the heir to the throne.....Well both her and her mother lied to the rest of her family including the King and his other wife that she adopted the child when she went away "to study in

UCT” when in actual fact she went away to hide a pregnancy and came back with a two year old and she along with her mother and the royal traditional healer lied that she adopted the baby at an orphanage with the traditional healer backing their well-planned storyshe was lucky cause the baby looks like the father so they believed her but what she didn’t know was that Kgosi did a background check on her before he disappeared when her marriage to Richard was arranged out of the blue by his mother....Anyway she picked her phone and dialed a number about her being a mother to an 8 year old daughter and the worst part is only her mother knows that the little girl is biologically hers..... she fears that he might tell her secret in that meeting since he will be present as the heir to the throne....Well both her and her mother lied to the rest of her family including the King and his other wife that she adopted the child when she went away “to study in UCT” when in actual fact she went away to hide a pregnancy and came back with a two year old and she along with her mother and the royal traditional healer lied that she adopted the baby at an orphanage with the traditional healer backing their well-planned storyshe was lucky cause the baby looks like the father so they believed her but what she didn’t know was that Kgosi did a background check on her before he disappeared when her marriage to Richard was arranged out of the blue by his mother....Anyway she picked her phone and dialed a number it rang for some time until he answered.

Scar: Mmaagwe princess (princess’s mother)

She sighed.

Batho: hey Modiri how are you?

Scar: im good now that im talking to you....dintshang motho

waka (what's up my person)

Batho: we have a problem Modiri

Scar: botsa daddy bothata keng (tell daddy what's wrong)

Batho: I think Kgosi the prince knows about princess Modiri that she's mine

Scar kept quiet a bit.

Scar: so that useless prince came back from the dead to cause trouble

Batho: it looks like it Modiri

Scar: ekare o tlo mpompa pipe ya motete mfananyana o (he's starting to piss me off this boy)

Batho sighed.

Batho: re ya go dira jang jannong Modiri (what are we going to do now Modiri)

Scar: don't worry I'll handle it ok mabebeza

Batho: ok Thanks

Scar: so vele vele ke ya goja kuku after ngwaga Mmabatho (so I'm really gonna eat that pussy after a year Mmabatho)

She laughed.

Batho: if ga o batle makgome then yep (if you don't wanna get sick then yep)

Scar sighed.

Scar: ok

Batho: but I have a plan and I hope it will work out without any hassles

Scar: what plan?

Batho: if you deal with Kgosi by killing that bitch called Dineo or whatever her stupid name is I know it will distract him cause him and Cole were left in charge of protecting that bastard child...then I'll convince mama to convince papa to propose to the BaKweneng King to make Kgosi to marry me

to strengthen the bond between two kingdoms....I'll still be queen after the current King's rein then I'll make you one of the richest men in the north west....we will rule this kingdom in secret baby while the prince will be my puppet

Scar kept quiet letting it sink in.

Scar: you do know for you to achieve all that you'll have to be an obedient princess

Batho: don't worry I know how to play the perfect princess....I'll apologize and blame Tirelo's cheating ways.....ill say his cheating ways led to me being disrespectful blah blah blah

Scar chuckled.

Scar: yeeer you always have an ace up your sleeves neh mabebeza

Mmabatho giggled.

Batho: you know it

Scar: mara eish I don't like that I have to share you again

Mmabatho

Batho: I always share you Modiri....wena e kgothatse ka gore no one gives it to me like you do the same way I know for a fact no one give it to you like I do

Scar laughed.

Scar: let's not go there mabebeza cause already king kong is getting excited

She giggled.

Batho: go and fuck that ass less bitch of yours....you know it excites me every time I leave you hard and you fuck her thinking of me

They both laughed.

Scar: jy is mal wena(you're crazy) and that fucken turns me on

She giggled.

Batho: anyway my person wena take care of that bitch and distract the prince and I'll handle the rest

Scar: yes mam....i love you Batho

Batho: I love you too baby.....Mwah

She blew a kiss over the phone and ended the call then she laughed.

Batho: a rich unborn bastard my princess ass nxa

She laughed again.

Batho: karma bitch....karma is coming your way nxa

AT KGOSI'S HOUSE

Dineo tried masturbating but the itch was still there she knew all she wanted was a dick whether fake or not to enter her honey pot and she'll be sorted but having Kgosi take care of that itch was a no no cause first and foremost he's Richard's elder brother and secondly..... he's Richard's elder brother so yah.....Anyway she walked out of her bedroom and she went downstairs all the way to the backyard where the maid's cottage is and she knocked then the helper opened.

Helper: Ausi

She said with the outmost respect.

Dineo: ausi Matlhabe ke kopa thuso hle (sister Matlhabe I need your help)

Matlhabe: ok do you want me to make food for you and the little one?

Dineo: nope.....ummm do you perhaps have condoms on you

Matlhabe looked at Dineo with her eyes popped out.

Dineo: don't look at me like that I know o na le bae (you have a boyfriend) around so please e one fela (just one)

Matlhabe: bathong Ausi

She said looking embarrassed.

Dineo: it's not a sin to be in position of condoms ausi

Matlhabe cause you are protecting yourself ...Aids ya bolaya ga e kgethe gore o le yellow bone or darker or o nale kuku e monate or not ...e betha fela shem(Aids kills it doesn't choose whether you are light skinned or darker or you have a delicious pussy or not....it kills shame)

Matlhabe just laughed embarrassed while shaking her head.

Matlhabe: Dineo weeh nare o tsenwe ke reng (what's gotten into you)

Dineo: di hormones dintshwere ka diwashene (hormones are showing me flames)

Matlhabe: amen

She wanted to ask about what she saw Kgosi holding earlier on but she decided not to.

Dineo: I mean no disrespect sistaz but I know gore o dikonka le garden man o le o mo fine le di muscles(you're dating that fine muscled garden man)I can already see bana ba lona tlabane ba le cute blaen (your future kids will be cute as hell)....I can see how he looks at you but eish our handsome prince Kgosi doesn't know gore go nale pudi engwe e busy e ja letjobana la ka mo gae free of charge nc nc nc (that there's a goat that is busy eating our beautiful flower free of charge nc nc nc)

She said shaking her head.

Matlhabe; yho Modimo waka!

She said hysterically going back inside and she came back

with two condoms and Dineo laughed.

Dineo: thank you....o re ke go ratelang (why do you think I love you)

Matlhabe: tsamaya tuu ausi (go please)

Dineo laughed.

Dineo: don't make a baby until a ntsha magadi and o mmoitse gore o tura blaen (until he pays for your bride price and tell him you're don't come cheap)

Matlhabe laughed defeated.

Dineo: kao rata wautlwa (I love you ok)

She said walking away.

Dineo: ooh and later on please make for Kgosi that cucumber salad he loves so much

Matlhabe; ok

Dineo: shap

She went inside and took the only remaining cucumber from the fridge and she smiled going upstairs with it.

36

COLE'S HOUSE

Cole: Im gonna ask you for the last time Marang where the hell is that piece of shit....where is it?!

He asked with an angry tone and Marang sighed.

Marang: and like I told you a million times I was playing I don't have a dildo Phelo

She said with a low tone.

Cole: then why did you say you have it!

Marang: cause I was angry at Kgosi

She said sulking and he looked at her for some time with an intense look.

Cole: if you have it Ntokazi you better get rid of it before I find it....that's all im saying

Then he walked out leaving their bedroom upside down....he searched the entire bedroom looking for it and found nothing.

Marang: yah neh.... go jola le bakgalabe (dating old men)

She shook her head and started cleaning the room.

BRITS

Guy: so you won't tell that guy Collins about your plan bozza

Scarface: nxa why would I do that....I don't report to his kwerekwere ass (foreign ass)

He said with an angry look on his face.

Guy: haarde (sorry) boss I was just asking

Scarface just drank his beer.

Scarface: I got what I wanted from him now he can voetsek (piss off)

Guy: sure bozza

The guy chuckled.

Guy: I know you like that bossman fuck bana ba baloi (fuck children of witches)

They both chuckled.

Scarface: I want a clean job Lebby....I want that bitch and the thing inside her stomach dead....rautlwana? (do we

understand each other)

Lebby: sure bossman

Scarface: take Tibi with you....he needs to prove his loyalty and grow some balls....he's too weak for my liking

Lebby: sa wara (don't worry) I'm gonna turn him into a killing machine once I'm done with him

Scarface nodded and he drank his beer

Lebby: so how do you want it done?

Scar: I want them tailed for three weeks tops and once you know their movements then you strike...i want it to look like a hijacking gone wrong.....that bitch should be shot on her stomach and forehead also shoot the foolish prince but don't kill him we still need him

Lebby nodded.

Scar: I want that bitch dead Lebby no mistakes

Lebby: you know me bozza....i never make mistakes

Scar: good and I want proof

Lebby: sure

They continued to drink.

Collins: what are you doing here?

He asked his wife.....his wife and child now live with him permanently even though that's not what he wants courtesy to his "mother" who forced him to....ever since they started living with him he's been annoyed by her to a point that her presence pisses him off.

Collins: what are you doing here Cleopatra?

Cleo: I brought my husband lunch
She said smiling but Collins didn't return it.
Collins: if I want food I'll order it
He said with an annoyed tone and Cleo's smile slowly faded.
Cleo: do I annoy you Bupe?
He huffed.
Collins: I'm busy Cleo just drop the food there and go back home
He said going back to typing on his laptop.
Cleo: what did I do to you for you to treat me like this Bube?
She asked with a pained voice.
Collins: I need to work so you can eat and feed your baby
now stop acting crazy and let me work!
Her eyes got filled with tears.
Cleo: I'm your wife Bupe in case you forgot and that child is also yours not mine alone
Collins: so?
She chuckled as tears rolled down her cheeks.
Cleo: I say I'm your wife and you're saying so Bupe....have things gotten to that now
Collins: you connived with my mother and forced me to allow you to come and live with me here..... I told you I'm not ready to live with you here but no Cleo knows better right
Cleo: so it's wrong for me to want to live my husband and child under one roof?
Collins: take it anyhow you want I don't care
There was a knock on the door and she wiped her tears off then she turned and walked to the door with the lunch she came with....she opened the door and bumped into Trey she didn't even greet him she just walked away..... Trey walked in surprised by Cleo walking passed him like that without even

greeting him.

Trey: and then?

Collins: don't mind her

Trey: she looks like she was crying man

He said with a worried tone.

Collins: let's not talk about her....so did you get her new numbers

Trey sighed looking towards the door and he looked back at Collins.

Trey: damn you're obsessed and it's not even funny

He shook his head sitting down.

Collins: fuck off man

Trey chuckled.

Collins: so?

Trey: I got them

Collins quickly got up from his chair.

Collins: you're not fucking with me right

Trey: nope

He gave him a piece of paper and Collins quickly dialed the numbers and he breathed out loud when they rang and soon she answered.

Dineo: hello

Collins swallowed hard.

Dineo: hello?

Collins: Dee....its Collins

She kept quiet a bit.

Dineo: oooh hey

She said slowly cause she wondered where he got her new numbers.

Collins: I've been worried about you Dee I wanted to be there for you when you were going through the pain of losing your

baby daddy but you changed numbers and you haven't been to your place

She just kept quiet cause she didn't know what to say to him.

Collins: are you ok though?

Dineo: im getting there and you?

He smiled.

Collins: im good now that im talking to you....what about the baby

She cleared her throat.

Dineo: she's.... growing

Collins: ooh it's a girl

Dineo: ummm yeah

Collins: ok I guess our next child together will be a boy then

He said and chuckled.

Dineo: askies?

He cleared his throat as Trey shook his head looking down.

Collins: ummm I mean...

Dineo: umm Collins I have to go im actually busy with something....bye

She interrupted him.

Collins: before you

Tuu tuu tuu....she dropped the call and he clicked his tongue.

Trey: really man....did you have to do say that....you just chased her away you moron

Collins: I didn't I wanted to be there for you when you were going through the pain of losing your baby daddy but you changed numbers and you haven't been to your place

She just kept quiet cause she didn't know what to say to him.

Collins: are you ok though?

Dineo: im getting there and you?

He smiled.

Collins: im good now that im talking to you....what about the baby

She cleared her throat.

Dineo: she's.... growing

Collins: ooh it's a girl

Dineo: ummm yeah

Collins: ok I guess our next child together will be a boy then

He said and chuckled.

Dineo: askies?

He cleared his throat as Trey shook his head looking down.

Collins: ummm I mean...

Dineo: umm Collins I have to go im actually busy with something....bye

She interrupted him.

Collins: before you

Tuu tuu tuu....she dropped the call and he clicked his tongue.

Trey: really man....did you have to do say that....you just chased her away you moron

Collins: I didn't she knows im kidding

Trey: does she?

Collins: yeah....Dee is special man and she understands me so she knows I was just pulling her leg even though I wasn't

Trey frowned looking at him then he just shook his head cause he could see his friend was obsessed with Dineo to a point of no return.

Trey: ok if you say so

Collins just typed a message for Dineo asking her if they could meet up for drinks then he send the message and smiled waiting for her response but it didn't come.

Collins: why is she taking long to reply?

He said getting worked up.

Trey: maybe she's busy and she didn't hear the message come in

Collins: yeah maybe..... I should just call her then

Trey: you're being weird man.....trust me you don't wanna scare her off by being too much

Collins sighed and he went and sat down.

Collins: thanks for getting me her numbers man....now my heart is at ease cause I can reach her.....now all I need to do is show her how much I love her and she'll be mine again

Trey: sure

He said looking at Collins with a worried look on his face.

AT KGOSI'S HOUSE

Dineo was sitting in the kitchen watching their house help Matlhabe making Kgosi's favourite salad with "that cucumber"she smiled thinking of what she did with it then she heard the door opening and closing....it was now around 6 in the evening.

Kgosi: Mmabontle!

He called out to her and Matlhabe looked at her.

Matlhabe: go.....when the prince calls you you hurry to him ausi

Dineo frowned.

Dineo: ke prince ko mmae le ntatae e seng mo nna...mo ke Kgosi wa go fisa pipi ya ka ya go tura (he's a prince to his mother and father not to me.....here he is Kgosi who burned

my expensive dildo)

Matlhabe: ooh badimo ba BaKweneng (ooh Gods of BaKweneng)

She said shaking her head and Dineo got up.

Dineo: ke mo pitori mo sistaz....jy moet vaker (this is Pretoria sister....you should be clever)

Matlhabe shook her head and continued with what she was doing while Dineo went to Kgosi.

Dineo: hi

Kgosi: give me your phone

Dineo: askies?

Kgosi: your phone Dineo!

He snapped at her and she raised an eyebrow at him.

Dineo: calm down and let's try this whole scene again from the beginning

Kgosi: Mmabontle I don't have time for your games ok....just give me your damn phone!

Dineo: nna le wena ra jana Kgosi? (are we perhaps fucking Kgosi)

Kgosi: what?

Dineo: ke re nna le wena ra jana na (I said are we perhaps fucking)....yes or no?

Kgosi: of course not

Dineo: now keng ekare o itebetse so (now why is it that you're crossing boundaries)....why are you talking to me as if you know how my clit looks like or how wide my pussy entrance is....

Kgosi looked at her with a confused look on his face.

Dineo: nna le wena ga re jane so ga reya tlwaelana to a point mo eleng gore (we are not fucking so we are not up to that level where) you'll demand my phone like that

Kgosi clenched his jaws looking at her.

Dineo: you ask nicely and if I say no it means no so lets try that again abuti (bro)

He looked at her for some time without saying anything then he chuckled shaking his head and he walked away going upstairs.

Dineo: give me your phone...give me your phone as if ke e reketse ke ntatao mxm (as if your father bought it for me mxm)

She whispered to herself and she went back to the kitchen and found Matlhabe eating a slice of “that cucumber”.

Dineo: le rata dilo bo Matlhabe (you love things Matlhabe)
Matlhabe laughed embarrassed.

Matlhabe: im sorry ausi I just couldn't help myself I also love cucumber

Dineo: le rata dilo shem mara ejang (you love things but eat)
She chuckled a bit.

AROUND 8

Kgosi and Dineo were having supper.....Kgosi was busy enjoying his favourite salad and Dineo was watching him at the corner of her eye smiling each time he ate it.

Kgosi: what?

He asked Dineo because he could feel that she kept stealing glances at him.

Dineo: nothing

He continued to eat while she also ate her food that didn't have the cucumber salad....after they ate their food in silence Matlhabe came and cleared the table.

Dineo: you love this cucumber salad neh

Kgosi got up.

Kgosi: yeah

Dineo: do you know what I loved

He looked at her.

Dineo: my expensive dildo

He huffed.

Kgosi: i did what I had to do Mmabontle....so you wanted to poke my princess with that shitty thing is that it

She chuckled shaking her head.

Dineo: well I hope you enjoyed that cucumber cause it did its job satisfying me earlier on....it picked up where my poor dildo left off

Kgosi: what?

He asked with a confused look on his face.

Dineo: ankere you burned my dildo Mr arsonist well I fucked myself with your cucumber earlier on

Kgosi frowned.

Kgosi: Mmabontle!

She walked towards the stairs.

Dineo: ooh and I fucked my ass with it too right after taking a shit

Kgosi looked at her with a horrified look on his face.

Kgosi: wh...what?

Dineo: next time stay clear off my things

She swayed her ass walking up the stairs leaving him shocked.....he felt his stomach turn...he sat down brushing his face over and over as the inside of his mouth filled with salty saliva.....he couldn't believe what Dineo just told her especially the " I fucked my ass with it too after taking a shit" part.....he then felt his stomach turning again and he started sweating.

Kgosi: fuck...fuck

He said with his hand on his stomach and he suddenly felt nauseas and he quickly got up and rushed to the bathroom where he vomited out all he just ate.

INSIDE DINEO'S BEDROOM

She had her bedroom door locked and she was lying in bed chatting with Marang on her WhatsApp and she was busy laughing as Marang told her about Cole acting crazy cause she told him she also has a dildo she then told Marang about Collins call and Marang begged her to stay away from Collins cause he's dangerous and before she could ask her why she's saying that she then heard a loud bang on her bedroom door which made her jump up a bit....her door got hit a couple of times with force and she suddenly felt uneasy.

Kgosi: DINEO OPEN THIS DOOR NOW!

He roared.

Kgosi: DINEO I SAID OPEN THIS DOOR BEFORE I BREAK IT DOWN!

She slowly got up from the bed and she rushed to stand by the bathroom door with her heart beating fast.

Kgosi: o jesa nna masepa a gao Dineo?.....o jesa nna masepa a gao! (you're making me eat your shit Dineo.....you're making me eat your shit)

He said with an angry tone and her heart pounded hard.....she put her right hand on her belly swallowing hard.

Kgosi: you think im Tirelo wena neh! you think I'll take your shit like he did?!

She didn't say anything she just rushed and took her phone

and went back to stand by the bathroom door again ready to call the police cause he sounded really angry.

Kgosi: the day im gonna fuck you I'll leave you paralyzed and o tlile gonlatswa foro (you'll lick my ass hole) right after I take a shit as punishment.....i see you think you're crazy well guess what im 10 times worse than you if not a 100 times worse
nxa

She bit her lower lip feeling scared cause even his voice sounded a bit different because of the anger.

Kgosi: o jesa nna masepa (you're making me eat shit) all because I got rid of your plastic dick.....you clearly don't fucken know me little girl you gonna learn to respect me....i don't take shit from anyone including my own mother so who the fuck do you think you are!

He kept shouting and tears filled her eyes.

Kgosi: nxa and you better not stress my princess if you know what's good for you

She then heard footsteps walking away and a door slamming hard and she breathed out and rubbed her belly.

Dineo: I think mommy went overboard baby

She spoke to her unborn baby.

Dineo: eish

She went to sit down and sighed.

Dineo: mxm hai fok man o tla ba strong its not like ke mo tshelletse Galephirimi mo dijong mos (mxm fuck it man he'll be fine its not like I poured rat poison on his food)

She said sulking.

Dineo: he should be honored to eat my shit "like he keeps saying" mxm

She continued to sulk.

37

THURSDAY

Two days later Kgosi hasn't said anything to Dineo and now it's getting to her he doesn't tell her when he leaves anymore and he doesn't even ask about the baby if she's ok or not nigga doesn't even eat with her anymore....last night she kept awake thinking hard and she realized that she went too far.....Anyway she walked to the kitchen hungry as hell and she stopped on her tracks when she found Kgosi making himself a peanut butter and jam sandwich she swallowed hard and cleared her throat.

Dineo: hi

She said with a low tone.

Kgosi: mmmmh

He said not even looking at her and it stung a bit.

Dineo: ummm about what I did.... I m sorry Kgosi

He didn't say anything.

Dineo: I lied I didn't use it on my ass.....i was just mad and I said that

Still nothing.

Dineo: I know I can act crazy sometimes but I didn't mean to disrespect you I was just angry

Kgosi: so what am I supposed to say now that you said all that nonsense?

She frowned.

Kgosi: I don't have time for your shit Dineo.....take that stupid apology and shove it down your fucken ass cause it won't

erase what you did

He switched on the kettle again as Dineo stood there shocked and hurt by his response.

Kgosi: you're fucken disrespectful and I wonder how disrespectful you were to Tirelo nxa

Dineo: don't bring Richard into this!

He turned and looked at her.

Kgosi: I see you think this fucken world revolves around you huh....you think you're all that just because you're carrying a multimillionaire child

Dineo chuckled bitterly.

Kgosi: well guess what little girl without that child you're nothing...a fucken nobody!

That hit her hard and tears filled her eyes and she started breathing fast.

Kgosi: without that child all you are known as is a fucken home wrecker with daddy issues so check yourself little girl next time you wanna try that shit with me....i can fucken end you like that for disrespecting me like that

He spit venom and he snapped his fingers.

Kgosi: the only reason you're still breathing for the shit you just did is because of that child so know your fucken place and stay there!

He said with the coldest tone ever and Dineo quickly turned and rushed away as tears ran down her cheeks she didn't want him to see her crying.....his words cut deep.

Kgosi: nx

He said and clenched his jaws trying to calm himself down....he finished making his coffee and went to sit down and eat....he was still angry with what Dineo did and the disrespect he felt and still feeling even now is just too much

for him to just let it go just like this.

THREE HOURS LATER

Kgosi left the house and that's when Dineo left her bedroom to go make herself something to eat Kgosi's words still rang in her head and they were getting to her..... She couldn't believe he said all that to her.

Dineo: mxm

She wiped her tears off and made herself a cup of tea.

TWO HOURS LATER

She was sitting at the back porch watching Mr Kabongo busy on the garden he started....he was watering the plants while humming a song....she smiled a bit looking at him then her smile faded and tears filled her eyes she wondered how it feels like to have a father....how to be disciplined and also protected by him and not to mention the love....she wondered how it feels like to call someone papa or daddy.....Tears ran down her cheeks she covered her face crying....all the pain of not knowing her father that she managed to suppress all these years came pouring down on her like a volcano....she cried until she felt a hand on her shoulder she opened her eyes and it was Mr Kabongo he sat down next to her and pulled her to his chest and she let it all out.....After some time she calmed down and Mr Kabongo went to get her a glass of water mixed with sugar and she drank it.

Dineo: thank you

Kabongo: who hurt you my daughter?

He asked with his unique accent and Dineo looked down sniffing.

Kabongo: tell me who hurt you and I'll deal with him

Dineo giggled when he made punching gestures.

Kabongo: I still have it in me to punch someone's face so tell so I'll go deal with them

Dineo: I had a fight with Kgosu and he said some hurtful things to me

She sniffed.

Kabongo: what was the fight about if you don't mind me asking

She sighed.

Dineo: i...i did something stupid and also lied.....i know he felt disgusted and disrespected but he shouldn't have said what he said

Her eyes got filled with tears again.

Dineo: he called me a nobody pa....he said without this baby im carrying im a home wrecker and a nobody with daddy issues

She cried a painful cry and Mr Kabongo sighed and he comforted her.

Kabongo: I take it what you did to him bruised his ego
She nodded still crying.

Kabongo: but that doesn't mean he should say things like that to you

He patted her back gently as she cried.

Kabongo: shhh stop crying my child you'll end up upsetting my grandchild

After some time Dineo calmed down and she wiped her face

and Mr Kabongo sighed.

Kabongo: there's something you need to know about Kgosì.....when he's angry he becomes something unspeakable..... and remember he's royalty so they are taught certain things and certain things are instilled in them since childhood.... people back at the kingdom respect him and it's worse cause he's the next in line to be crowned King so im sure what you did didn't just bruise his ego but disrespected him and his position as the heir to the throne Dineo looked down.

Kabongo: I don't know what you did to him but for him to hurt you with words like that might have been big.....im sure he felt disrespected

He sighed.

Kabongo: look here my daughter I know you feel like he should act like a prince in his kingdom and not here but it doesn't work like that....i found out that his kingdom is also recognized by other kingdoms in and around the country to as far as Egypt and even the government recognize and respect it....did you see how everything is in that Kingdom each and every household has a five room house built by the kingdom there are tar roads everywhere and lights on the streets.....every house hold has running tap water and there are schools a clinic and many other things in that kingdom and I heard they are about to build a hospital too that's how advanced they are.....the moment you enter that kingdom it's like you're in a different place all together compared to other neighboring places....i have been here for a short period of time but I can tell how powerful they are Dineo sighed.

Kabongo: they didn't wake up one day and decided to

rule...those people are well respected all over and they care for their people

Dineo: I hear you pa

Kabongo: so in everything you do my child never forget who Kgosi is because besides being a prince he's also dangerous when he's angry ok

She nodded.

Dineo just spoke with Marang about tomorrow which is a Friday they were going to Marang's home to sleep there cause on Saturday it was lobola(dowry) negotiation day...Marang wasn't looking forward to it but she knew she has to go.....Dineo didn't tell Marang about her argument or fight with Kgosi cause she had her own things that are stressing her talking to Mr Kabongo help a bit but she was still hurt by Kgosi's words and how cold he was towards her.....Anyway they finished talking and her phone rang again and she answered.

Dineo: hello

Collins: im still waiting for an answer Dineo

She sighed and rolled her eyes.

Dineo: hi Collins

Collins: why are you doing this to me Dee

He asked with a pained tone.

Dineo: what are you talking about now?

Collins: you know I love you Dee and I'll do anything for you but you treat me like shit and you disregard my feelings

She sighed.

Dineo: that's not what im doing Collins im just going through

a lot

She said with a low tone she was still heart broken by Kgosi's words.....She never cares when people insult her or call her names but what Kgosi said and how he said it to her reached her already cracking heart and shattered it to pieces.

Collins: I just wanna be there for you Dee for now I'll settle for friendship until you heal....i just wanna be there that's all
She sighed.

Dineo: hai Collins nna I don't know what to say nou

Collins: lets met up for lunch tomorrow so we can talk properly please

Dineo: Collins i....

Collins: please Dee I need to see you

He interrupted her then Kgosi's call came through....she looked at her screen and rolled her eyes.

Dineo: fine lunch tomorrow is ok I guess

Collins: shit....thank you my beautiful queen you won't regret it I promise you

He said with an excited tone.

Dineo: I hope so and its lunch as friends Collins then Kgosi's call came through....she looked at her screen and rolled her eyes.

Dineo: fine lunch tomorrow is ok I guess

Collins: shit....thank you my beautiful queen you won't regret it I promise you

He said with an excited tone.

Dineo: I hope so and its lunch as friends Collins I don't wanna be called a home wrecker again

She said the last part with a low tone.

Collins: don't worry Cleo and I are getting divorced so relax and plus we're friends right?

She rolled her eyes.

Dineo: you know what let's rather do breakfast cause I just remembered that I have somewhere to be let's say around 10 or 11 in the morning

She wanted to get over and done with cause she knows the whole meeting up thing with him will be about how much he loves her.

Collins: even 7 in the morning will do for me as long as I get to see your beautiful face

He said with a charming voice and she chuckled a bit shaking her head.

Dineo: ummm I gotta go friend... go shap (bye)

Collins laughed.

Collins: friend neh

Dineo: yep...shap

Collins: bye beautiful

They ended the call and Dineo switched her phone off cause Kgosididit didn't stop calling her.....on the other side Collins was busy dancing in his office looking happy.

Collins: finally now things are coming together....ooh my Dee He smiled then he sat down and dialed a number.

Voice: hello

Collins: do it tomorrow in the afternoon she goes to church around six in the afternoon and comes back home around 8

Voice: go it!

Collins: make it look legit man I don't want this shit coming back to me

Voice: I've done this many times with 100% success rate so relax

Collins: good..... you'll get the rest of your money after the job is done and I'll add an extra something if no suspicions

arise

Voice: now were talking..... consider it done.....shap shap

Collins: shap

He dropped the call and deleted the number then he sat back and smiled picturing his date tomorrow with Dineo.

Kgosi walked inside his house not looking pleased at all he found Mr Kabongo drinking his tea while watching Tv.....He greeted him and as he was about to climb the stairs Mr Kabongo called him Kgosi went to sit next to him but he was anxious to go upstairs.

Kgosi: is everything ok

Mr Kabongo shook his head.

Kabongo: im disappointed in you my son

He said with a disappointed voice and Kgosi frowned.

Kabongo: whatever she did to you does not amount to what you said to her worst part while she's pregnant

Kgosi cleared his throat.

Kabongo: you said she's the chosen one for you by your ancestors but you're pushing her to hate you.....trust me my son you don't want to be married to a woman that despises you....you do not want that

Kgosi sighed.

Kabongo: there are many ways to punish the one you love and you telling her she's a nobody with daddy issues is not one of them unless you lied to me about your feelings towards her

Kgosi: I just lost it dad i....

Mr Kabongo raised his hand to stop him from talking.

Kabongo: you lose it out there Kgosi but not here.....you can be a monster all you want out there but not here especially towards her!

He said with a reprimanding voice and Kgosi looked down clenching his jaws.

Kabongo: im really disappointed with you son im not going to lie.....you need to fix things cause if that girl loses that baby because of stress it will be your fault....you know she doesn't know her father and you still said all that to her....you know she's not royalty or from a rich family and you still called her a nobody..... just because you're royalty doesn't mean you should look down on other people cause royalty or not we are all gonna die and be buried and our body will all rot and gets eaten by maggots

Kgosi: dad i...

Kabongo: don't interrupt me when im talking boy!

Kgosi kept quiet and he clenched his jaws looking down while he played with his royal ring on his pinky finger.

Kabongo: you will not be one of those men who abuse their wives whether physically mentally or spiritually or any other way you hear me....now go and apologize for your hurtful words before you make me angry!

Kgosi: you don't even want to know what she did

He said with a harsh tone.

Kabongo: I said don't make me angry boy.....now go upstairs and fix things before I punch all teeth out!

Kgosi sighed shaking his head and got up then he went upstairs...it wasn't the first time he was scolded by Mr Kabongo and he was sure it wasn't the last time...he always

called him out on his bullshit and the fact that he did now even though he knows that he's of royal blood makes him appreciate him even more cause back at the kingdom people are too scared to reprimand him when he's done wrong things including his parents and uncles they would just tell him to not do it again and leave it like that but not Mr Kabongo.....

He knocked on her door a couple of times until the door opened his face softened when he saw her swollen eyes....he swallowed hard feeling like shit now.

Dineo: can I help you

He cleared his throat.

Kgosi: im sorry

Dineo: askies?

Kgosi: im sorry about my harsh words.....i was angry and shit happened

He's not one to apologize when he's wrong unless he's forced to and now was one of those times he's forced to apologize.....he hated it to the core but here he was standing before Dineo who made him eat a cucumber she used to service herself with apologizing and guess what she just gave him a bored look.

Dineo: is that all?

He frowned.

Kgosi: yeah

Dineo: ok

Kgosi: so we good?

Dineo: no

Kgosi: bathong.....I just apologized Dineo....do you know how fucken hard that was

Dineo: and I heard you but its my choice to forgive or not unless you want to insult me for not forgiving you

He looked at her like she's crazy.

Kgosi: you're serious?

Dineo: no offense but do I look like im laughing or joking around

Kgosi chuckled getting pissed.

Kgosi: you know what its fine.....now I want to know what business you're doing talking to that son of a bitch Collins
She frowned.

Dineo: how do you....

He interrupted her.

Kgosi: it doesn't matter all I want to know is what the hell
Dineo!

Dineo: who I talk to is none of your business Kgosi

Kgosi: it is my business if that mother fucker is a suspect in my brother's death!

Dineo froze with her eyes popped out.

Dineo: wh....what?

Kgosi: stay away from that man Dineo he might be after that baby you're carrying to eliminate anything that belongs to Tirelo so he can have you all to himself....if you ever loved Tirelo you'll stay away from that bastard

She just stood there frozen looking at him then her mind went to her conversation with Marang warning her to stay away from Collins and tears filled in her eyes with her bottom lip trembling.

THE FOLLOWING DAY (FRIDAY)

Dineo's phone was off and it was driving Collins crazy he was losing his mind cause it was now around 1 in the afternoon and he still couldn't get through to her....He's now even contemplating on whether to go to her new address or not he didn't want to seem desperate or obsessed but in actual fact he was....He sighed and took a large sip of his drink put the glass down and he paid for his drinks got up and he walked out.

Kgosi went to check who was at the gate when the intercom went off.

Kgosi: who is it?

Collins frowned cause he didn't expect a man to answer the intercom.

Collins: ummm this is Collins im here for Dineo

Kgosi felt extreme anger take over his body.

Kgosi: what did you say your name is again?

Collins: Collins im here for Dineo

He said with an annoyed voice and Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: yah neh you have the nerve I'll give you that.....after killing Richard you still have the rotten balls to come and look for his woman who's pregnant with his child!

Collins froze for a bit.

Collins: who...who's this....where is Dineo?

Kgosi: tsamaya o mo lebelela ka motase ga onoroko ya mmaago mosono! (go and look for her under your mother's skirt you cunt!).....you have less than a minute to get the fuck

away from my gate or mmaago o tile go utwa ka stichi sa kgale sa gae sa lebadi la operation se kgaoga jou muur!....fokofa mo gating ya me jou fokon bastard! (or your mother will feel the stitch from her old operation wound tear you bastard..... fuck off from my gate you fucken bastard!) He said with an angry voice.

Kgosi: I better not find you there when I come out nxa!
He dropped the intercom door-phone slamming it hard and he clicked his tongue then he went upstairs and came back down with his loaded gun on his hand and he went out.....as soon as Collins saw Kgosi with a gun on his hand coming out of the house he quickly got inside his car and started it then he drove away in total speed and Kgosi clicked his tongue.....he went back inside after putting his gun safely on his back.

Kgosi: hi

He said to Dineo who was coming down with a small traveling bag clearly ready to leave to Marang's home town.

Dineo: hi...ummm im ready to go

Kgosi: isn't it too early to leave?

Dineo: we wanna make sure the house is clean cause Marang's mother ke mmadichilana nyana (she's untidy) and plus we wanna pass by the supermarket to buy things for tomorrow

He nodded and sighed....last night he stayed up all night feeling like shit with how he told Dineo about Richard possibly being killed by Collins and the hurtful words he said to her earlier before.....he realized the stress she's going through which is not good for the baby and now he's worried and feeling guilty cause if anything happens to Gauta he will never forgive himself....He cleared his throat.

Kgosi: im sorry Mmabontle....i fucked up I know

Dineo: its ok Prince Kgosi but just so you know you apologizing won't take back what you said to me or erase it from my mind....you and I live together because of Gauta so bear with me until I give birth so I'll get out of your hair
assomblief

He frowned.

Kgosi: Look i...

She interrupted him.

Dineo: with all due respect Prince Kgosi I don't wanna discuss this any further all I ask is we respect each other's privacy and never cross each other's forbidden boundaries again

Kgosi clenched his jaws a bit looking at her.

Dineo: please my prince

She pleaded with him.

Kgosi: you don't have to call me that

Dineo: you are a prince and I'll prefer it if you call me Dineo and not Mmabontle please

He sighed looking down a bit shaking his head then back at her again.

Kgosi: is that what you want

Dineo: yes

Kgosi: ok and I hope one day you forgive me for the hurtful words I said to you

Dineo: someday maybe but not now

He nodded then he picked her bag and went towards the door with it with his mind all over.....he didn't think things will turn out this way.

ON THEIR WAY

Dineo: le setse le tlogile? (have you guys left already)

Marang: yeah and ra fitlha e sekgale but Cole a re ro fitlhela ko BnB e baileng go robala ko yona pele (yeah and we are almost there but Cole said we will first go to the BnB they'll sleep at first)

Dineo: ok and don't stress akere....o nale Jet Lee by your side so sa wara....mamagao ko mmetha ka di crouching tiger and drunken master kung fu a tsena mo laineng (you have Jet Lee by your side so don't worry....i'll beat your mother with crouching tiger and drunken master kung fu and she'll stay in line)

Marang laughed out loud over the phone and Kgosi chuckled shaking his head.

Marang: kao tshepa skeem (I trust you my friend)

They both laughed.

Dineo: ok I'll see you ge re fitlha ok (when we arrive ok)

Marang: ok my person....kao rata wautlwa (I love you)

Dineo: o rata ke nna my person (you're loved by me my person)

Then they dropped the call and Kgosi looked at her for a bit then back on the road.

Kgosi: you two are pretty close neh

Dineo: mmmh

She said busy on her phone.

Kgosi: how long have you two been friends?

Dineo: a long time...ummm Prince Kgosi not to sound rude neh but can we stop with all these small talks they are making me uncomfortable

Kgosi looked at her for a bit surprised and shocked at the same time then he frowned looking back at the road.

Kgosi: ok im...sorry for making you uncomfortable

She nodded then she went back to her phone and sends Marang a message.

Dineo: “ o satlo nnyela oo...this nobody as he called me o sa tlo mo jesa ka di pipe....wa ntshamekela o im sure o nagana gore ke ngwana wa le premature” (he’s gonna shit himself...this nobody as he called me will make him sweat....he doesn’t know me im sure he thinks that I was born a premature)

Marang: “who are you talking about now?”

Dineo: “ ramarete nyana o mongwe wa go nnyatsa” (some dickhead who’s thinks he’s better than me)

Marang: “ shame I already feel sorry for him”

She send laughing emogis.

Dineo: “ o biditse nna ka a nobody....hehe batho ba bangwe ba nnyela ko dipitseng while rena re nnyela ko di toileteng waitsi mara go monate go ba bona ” (he called me a nobody....hehe some people take a shit inside pots while some of us take a shit inside a toilet...it’s nice to be them shame)

Marang send back laughing emogis.

Marang: “ kemang yena oo wa go latella noga ko mokoting wa yona” (who’s that person that follows a snake inside its hole)

Dineo: “ ramarete nyana o mongwe so....sa wara ka yena he’s not that important” (some dickhead don’t worry he’s not that important)

Marang: “ o sa mo utlwisa bothoko thata clearly he doesn’t know you” (don’t hurt him too bad clearly he doesn’t know

you)

Dineo: “ he deserves it....ke batla gore next time a re ‘Ashee ausi Dineo’ ge a ntumedisa” (he deserves it.... next time he sees me I want him to say ‘hello sister Dineo’ when he greets)

Marang send many laughing emogis and Dineo giggled....Kgosi looked at her briefly then he sighed....he wasn’t used to a “ mute” and distant Dineo he wished he handled things better....he looked over at his rearview mirror and the car behind theirs has been following them for quite a while now....he looked at the number plate and it looked new but the car was old....he took his phone and dialed Cole.

Cole: King

Kgosi: ons word gevolg (we are being followed)

Cole: wat? (what)

Kgosi: moenie bekommerd wees nie ek het alles onder beheer.....ek het n plan en ek sal alles daaroor vertel as ek by jou kom (don’t worry I got everything under control.....i have a plan and I’ll tell you all about it when I get to you)

Cole: ok wees veilig (ok be safe)

Kgosi: altyd man (always man)

Then they ended the call then he called another number.

Voice: heita

Kgosi: Javas ke King

Jabu: hebanna....the mighty Igwe

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: listen my bra bloma o le vaker ke tlo go tlhoka after bo ma hour(a) nyana (listen bro stay vigilant Im gonna need you after an hour or so)

Jabu: everything e grand Igwe? (is everything ok Igwe?)

Kgosi: no ke shaiwa mosela blaine and ke nale itsi nyana mo

transing so ke tlogo belela later re over shapo (no im being followed and I have someone in the car with me so I'll call you later and we will talk freely)

Jabu: ok I'll wait for your call then nja yam

Kgosi: tops

Jabu: sho

They ended the call and Dineo was surprised that Kgosi could speak tsotsi taal (thug language) like that.

38

They finally arrived and before Kgosi drove inside after the gate was opened for him he saw the car parking two houses away from the BnB...They got out and Kgosi called Cole who came out with Marang who went to hug Dineo.

Cole: they are here?

Kgosi: yeah but don't worry I'll deal with them

Cole: how

Kgosi: let me call Javas

He dialed his numbers and he answered then Kgosi put it on loudspeaker.

Jabu: Igweeeeeee

Cole laughed and Kgosi shook his head smiling.

Kgosi: im with Cole

Jabu: aw Khaphela le ntjebe (Khaphela with a beard) what's cooking before baking

Kgosi laughed.

Cole: fotsek its Qophelo jou muur (piss off its Qophelo you

ass)

Jabu laughed.

Jabu: ka dlala....howzit nja yami (im kiddinghow are you my dog)

Cole: hai grand mfowethu wena kuhambani (good bro... what's happening)

Jabu: hai nex....ke no phusha phusha wa bona (nothing....im just hustling you see)

Cole: that's our life foza....ukphusha pusha (hustling)

They all laughed.

Javas: so Igwe o vaile byang (Igwe how was your drive)

Kgosi: they are waiting outside.....im gonna take them to Atteridgeville and that's where you come in

Javas: o lucky ke mo magriza so ereng plane? (you're lucky im at my granny's place so what's the plan)

Kgosi: I want them alive....when I arrive there I want them hijacked and taken to that warehouse ya gago gona mo Atteridgeville...ke batla go ba botsisa something nyana fela wa bona (of yours that's in Atteridgeville..... I want to ask them something)

Jabu laughed.

Jabu: sho Igwe sa wara ke metsi a mannyane ao (don't worry that's an easy thing to do)

Cole: they might be armed so be careful foza

Jabu: that's my territory nja yami....net fela mo ba tlo stopang mo teng close to boma 20 of my boys ba batsena (that's my territory my dog..... the moment they stop close to 20 of my boys will deal with them)

Cole chuckled.

Cole: sho

Kgosi: so ke tla go tshwara ka line ge ke fitlha mo Corner

House Butcher (so I'll call you when I arrive at Corner House Butcher)

Jabu: sho...shap fozas....ere ke tshware bo sibi baka ka line (ok bros....let me call my puppies)

They laughed.

Cole: hola hola

They ended the call.

Cole: are you ok King?

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: had a fight with Mmabontle and it wasn't pretty at all

Cole: damn....i hope she didn't swear at you man

He said chuckling.

Kgosi: all you have to know is I put her in her place

Cole chuckled stealing a glance at Dineo who was busy laughing with Marang.

Cole: just take it easy on her man.....she needs discipline I agree and most of the time she's disrespectful as fuck but remember who she is to you and who she's carrying that should make you punish her the right way

Kgosi cleared his throat when he thought about what he said to her....he didn't want to tell Cole what really happened Dineo bruised his ego and also disrespected him to the core so talking about that was a no no especially to Cole cause he knows he won't hear the end of it.

Kgosi: let me get going wena take the ladies to a supermarket apparently Marang's mother ke mmadichilana nyana(is untidy) so they need to buy some things

Cole laughed.

Cole: well ntokazi already told me about the supermarket but the mmadichilana part is the first time im hearing about it

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: only one person can say that

Cole: Queen Dee

They both laughed.

Kgosi: let me get going.....I'll see you later

Cole: be careful man

Kgosi: always....ooh kane thaima le uncle batile go fitha nako mang (when will your father and uncle arrive)

Cole chuckled shaking his head.

Cole: dude choose which Setswana you want to speak...the "tl" Setswana or the "th" Setswana....you're confusing us man

Kgosi chuckled pushing him.

Kgosi: tsek

Cole laughed.

Cole: anyway they'll be here later on around 7

Kgosi: ok shap...keep them safe

He said looking at the ladies then he went to his car got in and started it then he reversed out....Dineo's heart broke a bit when she saw Kgosi leave just like that without saying anything to her.

Things have been bad for Vuyiswa she had to sell some of her clothes and expensive jewelries to be able to sponsor her daughter's coming birthday....she called Zakhele but each time he heard that it's her he'll just drop the call... it got to a point where he ended up blocking her numbers..... and now they are worse cause Zakhele served her with divorce papers...she couldn't believe it even now she's still in denial that Zakhele served her with divorce papers cause she never

thought he had it in him.....she called her mother for advice cause she was losing it and her mother made her realize that Zakhele's mother might be behind this so now she's busy calling Zakhele's numbers using another simcard hoping he doesn't drop the call on her this time around.....the phone rang and it was answered.

Zakhele: hello

He said with low tone.

Vuyi: so vele undi blocking Zakhele (so its true you blocked me Zakhele)

He sighed.

Zakhele: ufunani Vuyiswa (what do you want Vuyiswa)

Vuyi: uthi ndifunantoni Zakhele....uthi

ndifunantoni....ndingumfazi wakho sdidi ndini (you're asking me what do I want Zakhele.....you're asking me what do I want....im you're wife you fool)....your wife.... what sort of stupid question is that!

She shouted at him and he sighed....he didn't have time for her or her disrespectful rants....he was going through the most so he didn't need all this.

Vuyi: your daughter's birthday is coming up and it's like you don't care and worse part is I know you won't even contribute a cent to her party...what kind of a father are you heh....i didn't fuck myself to pregnancy so I will not struggle to care for you daughter alone while you're there sucking on your mother's tits uyandiva (you hear me)

Zakhele laughed a bit.

Zakhele: I already called her and I promised her I'll send her some money to go spoil herself...anything else

He said with a cool tone and she clicked her tongue.

Vuyi: how can you send her the money when im her mother

Zakhele: Vuyiswa ufunani (Vuyiswa what do you want).....i want to rest so say your piece then drop the fucken call
She chuckled bitterly.

Vuyi: you send me divorce papers Zakhele....after everything you did to me you still have the nerve to send me divorce papers....you froze your accounts even though you know im a house wife....ucinga ndizoyifumana phi imali yokondla umntwana wakho heh (where do you think I will get the money to feed your child)

Zakhele: exactly...i froze my accounts... when you sighed that pre-nup contract you thought you'll use umuthi kimi(witchcraft on me) so I do as you say until Jesus comes angithi...you thought I'll be your puppet until I die...well guess what my eyes are opened now so reap what you sow mthakathi (witch).....from now on we communicate through our lawyers

Vuyi: UYINJA ZAKHELE....UYINJA

ENGENAMSEBENZI....SDENGE SENDODA (you are a dog Zakhele....a useless dog....a fool of a man)YOU ARE USELESS AND LET ME TELL YOU THAT EVIL MOTHER OF YOU WILL LEAD YOU STRAIGHT TO HELL NDIYAKUXELELA (im telling you)....ONE OF THESE DAYS YOU'LL COME BEGGING ME TO TAKE YOU BACK

Zakhele: EVEN QOPHELO NEVER BEGGED YOU TO TAKE HIM BACK WHAT MAKES YOU THINK I WILL....YOU HAD ME ARRESTED FOR SOMETHING I DIDN'T DO AND NOW IM PARALYZED AND ON TOP OF IT ALL YOU MADE ME RAISE A CHILD THAT IS NOT MINE....

Vuyi: excuse me?

She interrupted him.

Zakhele: I FUCKEN KNOW ABOUT VUYELWA YOU

BITCH.....AND TO THINK I THOUGHT MAZWI IS THE ONE THAT'S NOT MINE....UYINJA VUYISWA (you're a dog Vuyiswa).....A WITCH!

He laughed bitterly he was now angry even the pains he felt on his body subsided as the anger he felt overshadowed them.

Zakhele: YOU BETTER SIGN THOSE PAPERS OR I'LL DRAG YOUR NAME IN THE MUD IN COURT....EVERYONE WILL KNOW THE KIND OF WHORE YOU ARE THAT SLEPT WITH BROTHERS AND PINNED ME WITH A PREGNANCY THAT ISN'T MINE.....I NEGLECTED MY FLESH AND BLOOD TWINS FOR YOUR USELESS ASS AND YOU BETRAYED ME YOU BITCH.....COLE WAS RIGHT ABOUT YOU....HE WAS FUCKEN RIGHT AND I SHOULD'VE BELIEVED HIM!

He roared over the phone and Vuyiswa gasped and the line went quiet a bit.

Zakhele: yes I know about Vuyelwa not being mine.....

Then he chuckled.

Zakhele: I love that little girl and I don't have it in me to hate her or even neglect her

Vuyi: Zak look i...

Zakhele: voetsek....never call me again nxa

Then he dropped the call and she threw her phone on top of the bed with her shaking hands.

Vuyi: ooh God....ooh God

Then her phone beeped indicating that she received a message...she took it and opened it and it read;

“ you have until Monday to sign those divorce papers or I'll fucken destroy you”

The message was from Zakhele....she swallowed hard and

took her phone then she made a call.

Voice: hello

Vuyi: I need your help its urgent

Voice: who's this

Vuyi: its Vuyiswa Asa

Voice: ooh its you..... so you just call me out of the blue after a long time to say you need my help....uphambene Vuyiswa! (you are crazy Vuyiswa)

Vuyi: its...its about your daughter Asavela torho

He kept quiet a bit.

Asa: ooh so now she's my daughter

Vuyi: I did you a favor Asa so don't start with me....you are also married and you know how crazy that ass-less bitch you are married to is.....now help me or I'll let her know you have a daughter younger than your last born and let's see how you'll explain that to her heartless father

Asavela breathed out.

Asa: uyinja Vuyiswa rha!!!!(you're a dog Vuyiswa)

Vuyi: voetsek nguwe inja (you're the one who's a dog)....now what is it gonna be?

Asa: fine.....I'll come to Joburg ngomso (tomorrow)

Vuyi: that's more like it...shap

Asa: mxm

He dropped the call and she breathed out.

Kgosi walked inside the room the guys were held in whistling and found Jabu's boys (only four of them....the rest Jabu told them to go back to work) tying them upside down from the

roof..... he stood there watching as the guys finished tying them then Jabu walked in holding something and Kgosi laughed.

Jabu: mfeng wa peke for Igwe (a wooden plank for Igwe)

Kgosi continued to laugh.

Kgosi: you know me too well

Jabu: gape was tsamaya ka die deng....o roba kgopo motho a kake diphio le dibete (you're dangerous with this thing....you break people's ribs to a point that they shit out kidneys and livers?)

Laughter!.

Jabu: ka le chaela masoja....die man o kotsi ka die deng (im telling you soldiers....this guy is dangerous with this thing)

Guy1: ong gopotsa Sdumo le Laqhasha..... Laqhasha a le busy a re "khokhela sbali" (he reminds me of Sdumo and Raitlhwana... Raitlhwana busy saying "pay up bro")

More laughter.

Jabu: aah mxm kneecap es fokol mo yena....one hit o utlwe e re kgotlho tsosi e goelle e re mma yoooooh (a kneecap is nothing to him....one hit you hear a thug screaming out loud busy saying mama yoooooh)

More laughter and Kgosi just shook his head....he almost forgot how crazy Jabu is.

Tibi: please don't kill me magrootman ka le fraiza assomblief (im begging you please)

He said crying and they looked at him then busted out with loud laughter.

Jabu: a reng o le dikgopo ekare mpya ke gonnye ke tlala (what is this guy saying with visible ribs as if he's a starving dog)

Laughter.

Lebby: you don't know who you're messing with.....he's gonna hunt you all down and kill you in the most painful way One of the guys punched him on his gut and he gasped for air for some time then he coughed repeatedly.

Kgosi: its ok man...I'll take it from here

The guys moved away from the three guys and stood at a distance watching.....Kgosi went to the weakest amongst them and poked him with a round hard wooden plank.

Kgosi: who are you and why are you following me?

Lebby: voetsek.... msunu ka nyoko! (piss off.... your mother's cunt)

Kgosi looked at him as his face changed to a bone chilling look that even frightened Jabu's boys while Jabu frowned.....Kgosi went to Lebby.

Kgosi: o reng? (what did you just say)

Lebby: ke re mo...so...no wa...mmao (I said your mother's cunt)

Then he laughed then out of the blue Kgosi swung the wooden plank and it hit Lebby on his left side of his face so hard that even two of his back teeth flew out of his mouth accompanied by blood and he passed out immediately.

Guys: fuck!

Jabu laughed looking at Lebby passed out with blood coming out of his mouth....then Kgosi went back to Tibi who was now shaking and crying.

Tibi: please don't hurt me boss...please I have an 18 months old baby and im a single parent....im begging you

He begged Kgosi with his polished English.

Kgosi: now answer my question

Tibi: my...my name is Donald Tebello Mokgoshi and I only know him as Lebby and the other guy is Mrekza I also don't

know his real name

He said with a shaky voice.

Kgosi: who send you?

He asked him walking around him while he held the plank with his right hand and the other end of it was resting on his right shoulder.

Tibi: Sca....Scarface send us to tail you for three weeks then....

He cried and Kgosi stopped walking.

Kgosi: then what?

Tibi: please im sorry....i didn't wanna do this but I needed the money to feed my mother and my daughter.....im...im a graduate but I can't find decent work and I don't have the capital to start my own business so I joined his gang to make some money so I can support my mother and daughter and also start a business....i swear I didn't wanna do this I've never even held a gun or killed someone before

He spoke fast and Kgosi poked him with the wooden plank.

Kgosi: hey hey answer my fucken question and stop giving me your life struggles....VOETSEK!

Tibi cried.

Tibi: Lebby told me after the tailing we...we gonna kill the lady you were with and shoot you but we shouldn't kill you cause some royal princess and Scar have a plan for you

Jabu: hai yah neh

He shook his head.

Tibi: please grootman please don't kill me...im sorry I got involved in this please

He pleaded and Kgosi walked around swinging the plank around with a serious look on his face...the next thing the plank landed on Tibi's back and he screamed out loud....

Kgosi kept on hitting him hard all over his body for some time while Tibi screamed feeling extreme pain....the last swing landed on Tibi face and he passed out immediately.

Kgosi: take him down

He ordered the guys as he wiped blood from the plank on Tibi's jeans and the four guys quickly took Tibi down looking scared....the sound they heard as the plank got in contact with Tibi's body still rang in their heads and it was some traumatizing shit I tell you.

Kgosi: and why is this motherfucker still out

He said poking Mrekza.

Guy2: i... o kreile marago a sthunya mo morago ga mghibana (he got hit by the back of a gun on the back of his head)

Jabu: mokolobetse ka metsi moo (pour him with water)

One of the guys went outside and came back with a bucket full of water and he poured it on his face and Mrekza woke up gasping for air.

Cole parked outside the yard and he got out....Marang and Dineo followed and Cole opened the boot of his car and took the groceries out and he went inside the yard and put them by the locked door.

Dineo: o ready? (are you ready?)

Marang shook her head no.

Dineo: well you should be ngwanapapa cause we are already here

Marang sighed.

Marang: eish

Cole came back and Marang's mother walked to the front yard from the backyard when he heard voices in the front yard and she stood there with her hands on her waist with a displeased look on her face.....Marang looked at her then she swallowed hard then Cole pulled her closer and kissed her forehead.

Cole: its just until tomorrow and you'll never set foot here ok
She nodded and he hugged her tight then he whispered to her ear.

Cole: I love you Ntokazi and come rain or sunshine you'll be mine tomorrow.....take care of yourself and my son ok
She nodded then they broke the hug and he kissed her forehead again then he went to Dineo and hugged her too then he whispered to her ear too.

Cole: take care of yourself and my niece ok
She nodded and he broke the hug and kissed her forehead too.

Cole: don't let her get to you and call if things gets too much

Dineo: sa wara re tlo ba shap (don't worry we will be fine)

Cole: and nothing better happen to my son and niece

He got inside his car and drove off.

Sarah: hei wena Marang a se pleke ya bo gosha eo.....oska tlisa bofebe ba gao mo pele ga jarata ya ka nx (hei Marang this is not a place you do your prostitution at....don't bring your whoring ways in front of my yard nx)

She shouted.

Marang: and the insults starts

She sighed.

Dineo: she better respects herself or else ko ntshetsa stress mo yena shem nx (or else I'll take out my stress on her)

They walked inside the yard.

Marang: let me go and open the front door

Dineo nodded and she went to stand next to the plastics full of groceries and Marang went to where her mother was.

Marang: mama o kae? (how are you ma)

Sarah: GE ONTEBELLETSE KE TSHWANNA KE GO NNA MMAO NNA....NX NYANYA MO NNA.... VOETSEK! (when you look at me do I look like your mother....nx busy saying nyanya to me....piss off)

She then looked up and down at Marang with a disgusted look on her face and she clicked her tongue again.

Dineo: heh sfebe se sa di chubaba tsentsho o nteka tumelo ka mmao (this bitch with black patches on her face is testing me)

She said to herself getting angry..... as for Marang she swallowed hard with tears in her eyes and she walked passed her making sure her mother doesn't see her when they run down her cheeks.... as soon as she walked inside the house they fell and she wiped them fast and she did breathe ins and out trying to calm down....she made a face when the smell of rat shit and pee filled her nostrils....she looked over at the sink and it was full of dirty dishes and she sighed....this was embarrassing for her....she took a step forward and she saw a rat running from one steel cupboard to another one that didn't have a door and she jumped a bit....she held her chest trying to calm down then she quickly proceeded to the dining room....before she left this place there were no rats in the house and it was always clean but now judging by the horrible smell inside the rats owned the house.

AT THE HOSPITAL

Zakhele opened his eyes when he felt that someone was standing next to his hospital bed and who he saw made his heart stop beating for a second.

Zakhele: no....no....you're dead...you're dead

He said with almost a whisper looking shit scared.

.
. .
.

TO BE CONTINUED!!!!

39

Dineo: yho molapo o mo kana mara (yho im tired)

Marang: im sorry you're going through all this because of me Dee

Dineo: sorry ya eng Marang.....why is it like you're forgetting gore we're sisters

Marang: even at that Dineo did you see dichila tse di tswileng ka mo and magotlo a a leng kamo (did you see the filth that came out of this house and the rats that are inside this house)

Dineo: let's just hope those rats will behave tomorrow

Marang: let's hope so...lets go and eat

They went to the sitting room and sat down then they ate their food.....after some time Marang's mother walked inside

the house and she looked at Dineo and Marang with a disgusted look on her face.

Sarah: you know I feel sorry for those men you strapped with those babies

Dineo: Sarah weeh assomblief not now

Sarah: o reng wena le go omella ekare o mogwapa wa tonki...this is my house wankutlwa(what are you saying with being so skinny like a donkey's biltong....this is my house you hear me)....my house nx

Dineo: waitsi I'll just keep quiet cause if I open my mouth and insult you o tlabe wa ngala biri kao botsa (you'll even stop drinking beer)

She got up and went towards the kitchen and Marang looked at her mother.

Marang: can you just tolerate us until tomorrow please

Sarah: tolerate ya masepa nxa

The door opened and a tall older man walked in as Dineo was coming back from the kitchen.... he greeted and he sat down.

Sarah: papa o boile (daddy you're back)

Man: yah... eish nketsetse tee mo before o tlisa dijo (yeah make me tea before you bring my food)

Sarah looked at Marang and Dineo.

Sarah: was shenama Marang...tsa mo etsetsa papa tee o futhumatse le dijo tsa gae!! (why are you just sitting there Marang....go and make daddy tea and also warm his food!!)

Man: Marang?

Marang: pa

She said out of respect.

Man: ke wena Marang (you are Marang)

Marang: eeh (yes)

Man: mmmmh.....ke thabela go go itsi nna ke ntate

Mogorosi (nice meeting you im Mr Mogorosi)

Marang: ke thabela go le itsi le nna.... o ke Dineo my best friend (its nice meeting you too...this is Dineo my best friend)

Man: mmmmh....ke thabela go go itsi Dinny (its nice meeting you Dinny)

Dineo gave him a fake smile.... she could sense something creepy about him.

Man: Sarah ke emetse tee (Sarah im waiting for my tea)

Sarah: Marang!!

Man: Marang ke yena mosadi waka? (is Marang my woman?)

Sarah kept quiet a bit.

Sarah: mxm

She said then got up and went towards the kitchen and the man shook his head.

Man: don't mind her

The girls kept quiet.

Man: it smells good in here im sure you two cleaned this house cause Sarah yena ke fail pop (is dirty)

Dineo cleared her throat.

Dineo: eya (yes)

Man: mmmmh

He said smiling at Dineo who gave him a straight face in return.

Man: so are you ready for tomorrow my girl

He asked Marang.

Marang: eeh (yes)

She said not even smiling cause she didn't like the way the man looked at Dineo.

Dineo: mntase lets go and sleep gape tomorrow we have to

wake up vroeg (early)

Marang: mmmmh

Then she looked at the man.

Marang: le tla robala pila pa (sleep well pa)

Man: le robale pila le lona (sleep well too)

He then looked at Dineo.

Man: Dinny....o robale pila (Dinny sleep well)

Dineo: eeh

They quickly walked away...they went to rinse the dishes and put them away with Sarah busy clicking her tongue as she waited for the water to boil.

Man: Sarah!! Nare wa e epolla tee eo!! (are you digging out that tea!!)

He shouted and the girls went to the bedroom giggling.

AN HOUR LATER

Both Marang and Dineo's phone rang at the same time and they answered.

Dineo: hi

Kgosi: hey...you good?

Dineo: Gauta is fine

Kgosi: that's not what I asked Mmabontle

Dineo: the name is Dineo prince Kgosi and you have no business with caring about my well-being....your princess is fine

She said with an attitude.

Kgosi: you're annoying Dineo and with that attitude you'll forever remain a side dish for men cause no man want a disrespectful woman to wife!!

He snapped at her with an annoyed voice and then dropped

the call and Dineo swallowed as she put the phone down slowly.

COLE AND MARANG'S PHONE CONVERSATION

Marang: im trying to grow a thick skin

He huffed feeling pissed off.

Cole: maybe we should come and pick you two up....i don't want you two stressed Ntokazi

Marang: we will be fine baby don't worry...it's already night time

He sighed.

Cole: you sure you're ok

Marang: yes baby im ok

Cole: ngiyakthanda yezwa

She smiled shyly....whenever he says it like that it melts her heart.

Marang: I love you too baby

Cole: ok get some sleep I'll see you tomorrow

Marang: ok good night

Cole: night ntokazi wam omuhle

She blushed and they ended the call.

Dineo: im happy for you Mara....you deserve to be happy after everything you've been through

She said with a faint smile and Marang got closer to her and she rested her head on her shoulder.

Marang: your own happily ever and after will come too
Dee....

Dineo: I doubt it Mara

She said feeling emotional.

Marang: believe meyou will meet a guy that will sweep

you of your feet like Richie did....it may not be now or next week or even next year but believe me when I say you will....
She then sighed.

Marang: you know I didn't like the way mama's boyfriend was looking at you

Dineo: why do you think I came with this knife in here

Marang raised her head and looked at her.

Marang: ummm I thought you brought that to eat the apple you brought with

Dineo: askere mmadichubaba was in the kitchen so I had to make it seem like that's what im gonna with the knife

Marang laughed.

Marang: mmadichubaba Dee

Dineo laughed too.

Dineo: yah mmadichubaba.....mxm I can't believe she said ke omelletse ekare mogwapa wa tonki (im as skinny as a donkey's biltong)

Marang busted out with laughter and soon Dineo joined.

Marang: eeh gape mola o phositse leswika (she dealt with you)

They continued to laugh.

Sarah: hei aska mo taverneng kamo la rasa julle bleksem!! (hey this is not a tavern you're making noise you bastards)

The girls giggled.

THE FOLLOWING MORNING

The girls woke up early in the morning they cleaned then

they heard a voice chanting Marang's clan names by the gate....Dineo went to peak through the window and found two older good looking men and Kgosi by the gate....she looked at Kgosi and he looked good in his three piece tight fit suit....she swallowed and closed the curtain and went to the kitchen where Marang was busy peeling vegetables.

Marang: ba fitlhile? (are they here)

Dineo: yeah

Marang breathed in and out feeling nervous all of a sudden Dineo went to tell Ntate Mogorosi and his friends in the backyard that the Zulu's have arrived and they just said ok and Dineo went back inside..... The Zulu's were left to stand outside the gate for a while and that made Marang freak out thinking they are trying to sabotage her lobola negotiation.....after Dineo called Cole cause Marang was freaking her out by crying nonstop he explained that that's how things are done she calmed down and after what felt like forever the Zulu's were allowed in and the negotiations took place....everything went well and the Zulu's paid all the dowry money including damages.....they asked to see their bride and when Dineo's eyes landed on Kgosi's she quickly looked down as she found him staring at her.....

The Zulu's were given food and drinks and later on Cole joined them.....Sarah felt jealous and angry to the fact that Marang was now a bride to a rich family more over to the fact that they didn't even flinch or negotiate the bride price they just paid in full.....they even paid extra which made Sarah angrier and Ntate Mogorosi happier.....after a while they asked to leave and they left with their bride.
Sarah: mxm she thinks she's better just because o jisitse

some rich guy gore a mo nyale nxa (he fed a rich guy love potion so he marries her nxa)

She said drinking her beer looking angry.

Sarah: nx... she thinks she's better than me just because she managed to trap a man with a baby and I failed....o nagana gore o better nxa (she thinks she's better nxa)

Mogorosi: keng o balabala o le one (why are you mumbling alone)

He said sitting next to her and he took the bottle and took a large gulp from it.

Sarah: mxm....why ne o le nice to those people...ne o le busy o ba tjenetse e kare ke bo father Christmas (you were busy smiling at them as if they are father Christmas)

Mogorosi: o santhoma Sarah....a se nna ke itseng o tlhoye ngwana wa gao (don't start with me Sarah...im not the one who said you should hate your daughter)

Sarah: o bolela masepa now (you're talking shit now)

Mogorosi: o reng? (what did you just say)

Sarah: hai voetsek nx

A hard slap landed on her face and she fell from the chair to the ground with her back.

Sarah: o etsang....o clapa nna Jonas...o clapa nna!! (what are you doing....you slapped me Jonas....you slapped me)

Mogorosi clicked his tongue and went inside.

Sarah: o tla ka bakinyana ya go nkg a moroto mo ntlung ya ka then wanclapa heh...o nagana gore o somang wena!!! (you come into my house with a jacket that smells like pee then you slap me.... who the hell do you think you are)

She said following him inside the house.

AT KGOSI'S HOUSE

Kgosi: im about to leave....im going back home for an important meeting but I'll be back later tomorrow or Monday

Dineo: ok...drive safely

She took her bottled water and walked out of the kitchen then Kgosi sighed rubbing his eyes....he took out his phone and called Mr Kabongo.

AT COLE'S HOUSE

They were lying in bed after having a steamy session....Cole couldn't believe Marang was officially his and on top of it she was carrying his baby.....he was happy genuinely happy.....he rubbed her belly and kissed her neck as she slept peacefully.

Cole: I love you ntokazi kakhulu futhi (and a lot)

He kissed her neck again then his phone rang and he answered it.

Cole: King

Kgosi: I left so please you and Marang should check on Mmabontle until I get back

Cole: ofcourse.....uright?

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: I keep fucking things up with Mmabontle

Cole got off the bed naked and he grabbed his dick as it got hard when his eyes landed on Marang's bare naked

body....he cleared his throat trying to concentrate on Kgosi.

Cole: what happened?

Kgosi: I said things I can't take back

Cole sighed.

Cole: you need to fix things man because if you keep pushing her away it will be almost impossible to win her over

Kgosi: I know but eish this girl keeps pressing my wrong buttons and I just lose it

Cole: that's your chosen wife King....you need to accept the way she is but also find a way to mould her into the woman and queen you want her to be...there's no Dineo without that loud mouth of hers wena you need to find the right way to deal with that part of her

Kgosi: eish with that loud mouth of hers it will take a miracle for me not to strangle her out of rage

Cole chuckled.

Cole: ke segafi sa gao (she's you crazy person) so you need to learn to control her cause she's bound to you for life man

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: eish

They talked some more then they ended the call.

BAKWENENG KINGDOM THE FOLLOWING DAY

They were now sitting in the lounge as the meeting was about to start....Mmabatho was looking nervous and also angry that Scarface failed to stop Kgosi from making it to the

meeting....her palms kept on sweating and her heart was beating fast.

TheKing: I called this meeting here with regards to your daughter Kgabo

Batho's father frowned and Queen Bahumi raised her eyebrows looking at King Kwena.

Batho's father: we are listening Kwena

Kgosi: father im sorry to interrupt you but I have something I would like to say before you start

He said respectfully and his father nodded and Mmabatho swallowed.

Kgosi: I want the King here to explain to us why he lied and said Mmabatho is sealed when her arranged marriage to Tirelo was planned while he knows she has an 8 year old daughter older with another man

Them: eng? (what)

Mmabatho started shaking and Queen Bahumi looked down and she sighed.

Kgosi: and I have proof

He put a brown envelope on top of the table.

Kgosi: those are the DNA test result done and they show that that little girl your daughter here said she adopted is actually hers biologically

The room became quiet and Mmabatho's father slowly took the brown envelop and he looked over at Mmabatho who looked frightened.

Batho'sfather: Mmabatho what is he talking about?

The king's other wife Queen Seriti laughed clapping her hands once.

Kgosi: my question is how did you all pull it off....and why would you make a fool out of my father and our kingdom like

this?

He said with a serious tone.

Batho's father: I don't know what you're talking about.....your son did confirm that she was sealed after he slept with her for the first time

Motlalepula: then why does she have an eight year old child or is he lying!!!

TheKing: Mmabatho!

She looked at the king with tears in her eyes.

Batho: my....my King

TheKing: what is Kgosi talking about?

He asked sounding angry.

QueenBahumi: he's lying against my daughter!!

Mmabatho: he...he's lying

Kgosi: does Scarface or better yet Modiri rings a bell

Mmabatho's eyes popped out.

Kgosi: your baby daddy

QueenBahumi: ooh Modimo.....look here I don't know where this boy got all these lies about my daughter but he will pay for accusing my daughter like this !!

She shouted and Motlalepula got up.

Motlalepula: so you lied to me Mmabatho..... you and your mother lied to me

Mmabatho: i...i didn't...he...he's lying

Motlalepula: I let you marry my son you evil witch....i

welcomed you into my house and you lied and betrayed me and my son!!

QueenBahumi: hei hei

She warned Queen Motlalepula.

Motlalepula: HEI YA ENG WENA YOU LYING AND CONNIVING BITCH!!!

TheKing: THAT'S ENOUGH!!

The room went quiet.

TheKing: Boitumelo call the seer!!

Then he looked at Mmabatho's father.

TheKing: I hope you don't mind...we can call your seer here too if you don't feel comfortable with ours

Mmabatho and her mother were praying silently that the king refuses.

Batho'sfather: do what you have to do Kwena....i have always had my suspicions but now I want to hear the truth

He always wondered why the girl looked like Mmabatho so much but she said she adopted her.....he consulted with his royal seer and he told her the child is not Mmabatho's but deep down he still had doubts.

Bahumi: I knew you wouldn't protect your own daughter...i knew it!!

Batho'sfather: just call the seer Kwena

He said ignoring her.

Bahumi: I won't stand for this nonsense

She got up and pulled Mmabatho up.

Bahumi: let's go baby

They walked out and Mmabatho's step mother clapped her hands twice dramatically.

Motlalepula: you gonna let them leave just like that!!

Batho'sfather: they know the truth but I don'tonce I know the truth I'll deal with them as I see fit

Motlalepula: but they....

The King: THAT'S ENOUGH MOTLALEPULA WHY IS IT ALWAYS YOU FORGET YOUR PLACE IN THIS KINGDOM!!

She kept quiet and King looked at Kgosi.

TheKing: you have some explaining to do

Kgosi: yes my King

He bowed a little showing respect.

TheKing: Medupi go and call the seer

Medupi: yes my King

The guard bowed and walked out.

Boitumelo: yho yah metlholo ga e fele (wonders shall never end)

She clapped her hands once.

QueenSeriti: im not even shocked.....i always suspected gore those two are lying about nnana's paternity....le ge bareng an adopted child a tshwane tlwi le her adopted mother....ba re tsere ekare re dimatla mxm (it's not possible for an adopted child to look like her adopted mother like that...they took us for fool mxm)

Motlalepula: no one lies to Motlalepula and also plays her son and gets away with it...no one!!

She said with an angry voice.

TheKing: Motlalepula ga o ke o iketle man (Motlalepula clam down)....let's wait for the seer and hear what he has to say
Mmabatho's father just shook his head looking down...he was embarrassed by everything and more over hurt and angry for being lied to by his wife and daughter like that.

TO BE CONTINUED.....

KWENENG KINGDOM

Seer: there is no need for me to throw the bones to tell you that prince Kgosi is telling the truth my king
Motlalepula laughed angrily already imagining what she will do to Mmabatho and her mother.

Seer: I knew about this the day I was told about the arranged marriage of the late prince Tirelo and princess Mmabatho

Everyone: what?

Seer: my king you know how the ancestors work....they told me to let everything unfold because I did warn you about getting a wife for either one of the princes but none of you listened.....there was a reason why the ancestors wanted the princes to find their own wives

He then looked over at Motlalepula then back at the King and Kgosi read between the lines then he sighed and sat back.

Batho's father: so my daughter did give birth to that child

Seer: eeh Kgabo (yes Kgabo)

Batho's father: then why did our royal seer say something different

Seer: some people can be bought Kgabo that is why you should always listen to your instinct and to your ancestors when they communicate with you in your dreams.....you were not chosen by mistake Kgabo

Batho's father nodded then he looked at King Kwena

Batho's father: Kwena excuse me my wife and I we need to deal with this accordingly as a family first....I'll keep in touch

King: go siame Kgabo (its ok Kgabo)

Batho's father: Kgosana (prince)

Kgosi: Kgabo Mokgatlha

He bowed a little and the King stood up so did his wife and they walked out followed by their guards....no one even walked them out the way things were tense.

Motlalepula: mxm

She got up and walked out and Queen Boitumelo rolled her eyes then she stood up.

Boitumelo: let me go prepare something for you

Kgosi: ma let one of the maids to go pick morogo for ntate Kabongo kwa tshimong (wild spinach for Mr Kabongo in the vegetable garden)

Boitumelo: ok my son

She walked out too.

Seer: I see you didn't call the elders

King: you can now sit on the chair wise one

Seer: ke a leboga Kwena (thank you Kwena)

He got up from the floor and sat next to Kgosi on couch.

King: I didn't want drama...i just wanted to deal with that disrespectful girl and get it over and done with....they would have dragged this unnecessarily while it's just a small matter I wanted done quickly

The seer nodded.

Seer: but once they find out about the meeting they'll cause a ruckus

King: I'll handle it when that happens

The seer nodded again...then the King looked at Kgosi.

King: explain Kgosi

He said with a serious tone and Kgosi cleared his throat.

Kgosi: I did background check on her before I left for Egypt....i was gonna tell you all about it when I came back after a week

but things happened

The King sighed.

King: why did you do a background check on her

Kgosi: I just didn't trust her my King and I didn't understand why Tirelo was forced to marry that girl specifically cause they are good princesses from other kingdoms that he liked

King: mmmh

He said staring into space with a serious frown on his face.

Seer: he's not the heir to the throne by mistake my King....he has an eye for certain things

Then he sighed.

Seer: but he fails at keeping a special woman happy and stress free....and just so you know your brother is not happy with you my prince

Kgosi frowned and the seer raised his eyebrow at him and Kgosi looked down with a clenched jaw.

King: what special woman

Seer: his chosen and the one his heart longs for

Kgosi: my heart don't long for anyone

He said defensively.

Seer: are you calling me a liar my prince

Kgosi kept quiet.

King: what did you do Kgosi?

Kgosi: nothing I can't fix my King

King: you better fix it whatever it is you did

He said with a firm tone and Kgosi nodded.

Seer: come to my house later at night you need to be cleansed again

He gave him a "you know what you did" look and Kgosi nodded.

King: I don't even want to know

He said as Queen Boitumelo walked in carrying a tray with their food while a maid walked in holding a basin filled with water for them to wash their hands.

Kgabo: BAHUMI....MOTLALEPULA!!!

He roared as he walked inside his royal house then a royal maid walked to where the King is and she knelt not far from him looking scared because she could tell he was angry.

Maid: my king

Kgabo: where is Queen Bahumi and princess Mmabatho!!

He asked looking angry.

Maid: they haven't gotten back since they left with you my king

The king clicked his tongue and started walking away.

Kgabo: CALL THE ROYAL SEER HERE NOW!!

He shouted and they all jumped with fear.

QueenSeriti: go call the guards!!

The maid got up and rushed to call the guards.

QueenSeriti: Bahumi never learns hai nxa

QueenBahumi: we can't go back Mmabatho

She said pacing up and down.

Mmabatho: but ma we can convince dad to consult with the seer and he will tell him what he told him years back

QueenBahumi: sometimes I wonder if you're really my daughter wena....im sure the seer from Kweneng Kingdom

already told him something different Mmabatho and not to forget that useless things called Kgosi already planted a seed of doubt in his mind

Mmabatho sighed....they booked into a BnB in Brits.

QueenBahumi: and it's your entire fault....you said you will take care of that boy Kgosi

She said angrily.

Mmabatho: let me call Modiri and hear what happened

She dialed Scarface's numbers and he answered.

Scar: Batho

Mmabatho: what happened Modiri....you promised to take care of that fool Kgosi and now our daughter's paternity is out in the open!!

She said sounding angry.

Scar: eng? (what?)

Mmabatho: YOU PROMISED MODIRI AND I TRUSTED YOU

She said standing up.

Scar: bona man Batho my guys the ones I send to take care of that bitch and that fool Kgosi are missing...i can't get hold of them

Mmabatho: ooh Modimo wa mosa (ooh God of mercy)

She said feeling defeated.

Scar: I don't know what happened baby but I'll fix it I promise...i send some of my guys to go search for them

Mmabatho: o useless Modiri...fokon useless nxa aaah (you are useless Modiri...fucken useless)

She screamed then she dropped the call and started pacing around....then Queen Bahumi laughed clapping her hands.

QueenBahumi: nywe nywe I got this nxa...o useless le wena....fucken useless nxa..o useless go tshwana fela le papao wa lerete le le nnyane nxa (you are also

useless....fucken useless....you're as useless as your father with his small dick nxa)

Mmabatho: mama

QueenBahumi: fotseke....how can you trust that thug Mmabatho...bona nou....bona fela....im sure your father already hanged the seer after he confessed and we are next after he learns of all we did Mmabatho...of all I did!!!

She shouted.

Mmabatho: papa would never hurt me

QueenBahumi: you clearly don't know your father wena.....yena ba ganne go mo fa mo pele but pelo empe ba mofile shem....yho ka tla disappointiwa ke ngwana ke mmelege...yho (he wasn't bless below his belt but he was blessed with a cold heart...yho I've just been disappointed by a child I gave birth to)

She said with her hands on top of her head....Mmabatho sighed feeling scared.

AROUND 8 AT NIGHT

Kgosi: is it done?

Jabu: yeah they are about to drop the boxes at his place

Kgosi smiled.

Kgosi: ok

Jabu: I can't believe you did that to those bodies man

Kgosi: that's nothing compared to what I'll do to the fuckers that killed my brother

Jabu: yah neh...anyway e re ko bona mamasita waka ko tsey

one nyana go fokotsa stress (let me go see my lady and take one round to lower my stress)

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: Cole told me about mamzalwane gore o chunneng (Cole told me about your church lover about what she did)

Jabu sighed.

Jabu: sanchaela ka selo seo (don't tell me about that thing).....i can't believe she did that to me mara a go na flopo a ka se lokele ke nex kao chaela (but its ok nothing good will come her way im telling you)

Kgosi: she should be dead in a ditch somewhere nxa

Jabu: that would hurt my kids so mo tlogele o satlong gopola (so let her be she's gonna miss me)

Kgosi: hai women

Jabu: we can't live with them but at the same time we also can't live without them

Kgosi chuckled....they spoke some more then they ended the call and Kgosi called Cole and they also spoke for some time then they also ended the call....He sighed and called Dineo's numbers and she answered after some time.

Dineo: hello

Kgosi: hey

Dineo: prince Kgosi

He clenched his jaws.

Kgosi: ok enough Mmabontle...can we be ok now

Dineo: askies

Kgosi: can we go back to the way things were...please

Dineo chuckled.

Dineo: just like that

Kgosi: yeah just like that

Dineo: waitsi Kgosi I don't need this in my life....im pregnant

and wena o busy ongfakela stress (stressing me out).....you called me a home wrecker with daddy issues so ntlogele (leave me) with my daddy issues....we're not friends so stay in your lane and I'll stay in mine...have a good night She dropped the call.... he rubbed his eyes sighing then he called her numbers again...she answered but didn't say anything.

Kgosi: im sorry for all the hurtful things I said to you....you have a sharp tongue and respect means a lot to me...can we be civil towards one another for sake of peace and Gauta She didn't say anything.

Kgosi: I know I can be too much Mmabontle but I care about you....alot

He sighed.

Kgosi: can we do it for our princess please

She sighed.

Dineo: yeah whatever

Kgosi: Mmabontle

She sighed.

Dineo: you hurt me Kgosi and im hardly shaken by people's opinions about me but wena you had to hit where it hurts the most

She said with a breaking voice.

Kgosi: and im sorry

She sniffed and Kgosi clenched his jaw.

Kgosi: let me make it up to you

She sniffed again.

Dineo: you hurt me Kgosi....it's not my fault that my father ran away I didn't ask to be born and I sure as hell didn't know your brother was married and when I did I broke things off with him but he wouldn't let me be

He sighed....he felt like shit now.

Kgosi: im sorry Mmabontle....

Tu tu tu she dropped the call.....he tried to call her but it would ring once and get dropped.....he quickly accessed the cctv cameras planted inside the house and outside and he saw her crying sitting on the couch....he swallowed hard and he typed a message for her and send it to her and it said;

“ I know I crossed the line and im sorry im not used to a woman challenging me or even talking back at me...you’re a different breed altogether and I’ll learn to accept that you’re nothing like all the women im used to...im sorry Mmabontle”
He then went back to watching her and he saw her reading the sms and he sighed.

Kgosi: I’ll fix things I promise

He heard a knock on the door he was busy in the kitchen while his girlfriend was having a bath in the bathroom....he wiped his hands and went to check who was knocking while holding his gun since it was late at night and the gate was locked and he only found two boxes by the door....he quickly closed the door and walked around the house with his gun ready hoping to find whoever dropped those boxes but nothing....he went back to the front door and scanned the boxes he thought it might be bombs but the foul smell that came from the boxes made him doubtful....he slowly opened the first box and what he found inside turned his stomach and he vomited to the ground....he moved away from them closing his nostrils.

Scar: fuck!!

He cursed.

He then went inside the house and came back with his phone and he called one of his guys and told him to come to his house immediately....he dropped the call and went back to the boxes and he opened another once and it was another chopped up body with what looked like his intestines put inside a transparent plastic bag....his stomach turned again and he threw up again....he saw an envelope attached inside the second box and he took it and slowly opened it and it read;

“ your little puppets you send after me....i made them pretty for you I hope you like what I did to them
Ps... King Kong ”

He swallowed hard and he quickly closed the boxes and he started pacing up and down.... he then dialed Lebbys numbers praying that he answers and he heard the phone ringing inside one of the boxes and sighed looking down.
Scar: fuck!!!

THE FOLLOWING DAY

Tibi's mother was worried about him I hope you like what I did to them
Ps... King Kong ”

He swallowed hard and he quickly closed the boxes and he started pacing up and down.... he then dialed Lebby's numbers praying that he answers and he heard the phone ringing inside one of the boxes and sighed looking down.
Scar: fuck!!!

THE FOLLOWING DAY

Tibi's mother was worried about him she has been calling him nonstop and his phone just rings without being answered and it didn't help that his daughter has been off since yesterday running a fever and crying nonstop....she prayed for him almost all night hoping he's ok wherever he is....Anyway she was now sitting outside under a shadow made by her shack eating porridge when she saw a woman and a man walking inside her yard....she put the bowl of porridge down and she waited for them to get to her....they greeted her respectfully and she returned the greeting and went inside and came back with chairs and they sat down.

Woman: mama my name is Amanda and this is Sydney...we came here with regards to Tebello

Her heart started beating fast as she looked at them.

Tibi's mom: what...what happened to my son....where is he?
The guy took out his phone and pressed on it then after some time someone spoke...he turned the screen to Tibi's mother and she saw her son.

Tibi: ma....mama

He could hardly speak...he looked horrible his face was bruised badly...Tibi's mother started crying when she saw her son in that state.

Tibi'smom: Tebello...ooh ngwanaaka.....ooh Modimo waka....go diragetseng ka wena Tebello (Tebello....ooh my child....ooh my God... what happened to you Tebello)

Tibi: mama I...i need you so please come with that woman and man to Pretoria....im badly hurt so I need you
He said slowly.

Tibi'smom: what happened to you Tebello?

She said crying.

Tebello: Mama please take all the important papers like my certificates nana's birth certificate and our IDs and pack a bag too and come with them please

Tibi'smom: where are you?

Tibi: at a hospital in Pretoria...they'll bring you to me

The guy then dropped the video call and Tibi's mother wiped her tears off.

Woman: you should go pack ma

She got up and went inside crying silently her son's bruised face was stuck on her mind.

Man: im glad King said we should approach her this way....we would find it hard to take her by force with how close this shacks are and how crowded the streets are...look at that old bitch peeking through the window

The woman laughed.

Cole: yeses you're trending man....I've been getting calls all morning about your resurrection

He laughed and Kgosi just chuckled.

Kgosi: yeah my siblings have been getting calls too...these vultures are a little too late though

Cole: yeah fuck them nx but you sound offish what's up

Kgosi sighed and rubbed his eyes.

Kgosi: it's this issue with Mmabontle....im tired of all this shit man

Cole: look I know it's too early for what im about to say but im gonna say it anyway....Fuck taking things slow and giving her time to heal just fuck her brains out and she will forgive you

Kgosi: what?

Cole laughed.

Cole: give it to her pretty good and she'll forgive and respect you...use your dick as a whip to discipline her its as easy as that....who said she cant use your dick to heal Marang did and today she's my wife

Kgosi laughed.

Kgosi: you're crazy

He continued to laugh.

Cole: im telling you

Kgosi just shook his head.

Cole: and about that Tibi boy

Kgosi: he works for us now

Cole: what made you give him a second chance at life...you don't give second chances man

Kgosi: he's a single father and he's a desk job employee not a field one which is a mistake that fool Scar did....he should've used his brains instead but retarded small time thugs thinks

using their small balls instead of their small brains

Cole chuckled.

Cole: yeah but can we trust him

Kgosi: no but we gonna make sure he earns our trust.....and his mother and child are leverage he'll be forced to be loyal to us cause we will protect and provide for them....don't worry I have a plan for him

Cole: mmmmh

Kgosi: yeah let me go get ready for the council meeting...I'll see you later

Cole: sure...remember fuck her no more Mr nice guy.....you should learn from me man

Kgosi: tsek

Cole laughed and they ended the call.

LATER IN THE EVENING

The door opened and he walked in....he heard music playing in the kitchen and he put his bag and car keys on top of the table and he walked there slowly....he stood by the entrance with his hands inside his pockets and watched her as she moved around cooking...he cleared his throat and she jumped quickly turning and as soon as her eyes landed on Kgosi she breathed out holding her chest.

Dineo: jeez man...don't ever do that...don't scare me like that!!

She half shouted at him then turned and held on to the kitchen counter to calm her nerves down....she didn't hear

him come in so when he cleared his throat she nearly peed on herself cause according to her knowledge she was alone in the house cause their house help asked for special leave to go assist her sister who just lost her husband in Ga-Rankuwa.... she then went back to chopping vegetables and all of a sudden she felt hands on her waist and she froze....his hands moved to her baby bump and he rubbed it slowly.

Dineo: what are you doing?

Kgosi: fixing things between us

She swallowed...and he closed the space between them.

Dineo: Kgosi...

Kgosi: I messed up Mmabontle please let me fix us

Dineo: we agreed to be civil to each other so there's no need for all this

She said with a low tone and he slowly turned her around.....her heart was beating fast.

Kgosi: I want us to be more than civil

Dineo: huh?

She asked confused....he moved closer to a point that his face was an inch to hers and she took in his intoxicating fragrance which made her a little dizzy cause he smelled good.

Kgosi: I miss Mmabontle wa me....not this cold and distant

Dineo I don't like

She tried to say something but he stopped her.

Kgosi: shhh

He cupped her face and she swallowed hard and her body gave her up....she felt herself getting wet down there.

Dineo: Kgosi...

Kgosi: im gonna fix things between us Mmabontle.....Gauta needs to be born into a healthy and warm home

She swallowed and looked away.

Kgosi: im a hard man to live with Mmabontle I can be cold and hard when I feel disrespected or pushed to my limits...i know you always have to defend yourself but that doesn't mean you have to be disrespectful while doing that

Dineo: you burned my dildo Kgosi and I need it

Kgosi: you don't need it you have my dick to satisfy you

She gasped looking at him like he's crazy.

Dineo: you're Richard's brother Kgosi for God's sake

Kgosi: so

Dineo: it's wrong Kgosi in so many levels

Kgosi: why is it wrong?

She tried to push him away but he didn't move.

Dineo: Kgosi...

Kgosi: if you were Tirelo's wife I'll be forced to take over his household more especially because you're pregnant that's how our tradition works so me wanting to satisfy you sexually isn't an abomination Mmabontle

Dineo: im not his wife

Kgosi: more reason why it shouldn't be a problem for me to give you what you long for

Dineo: I don't even know why we're talking about this cause its so wrong

Kgosi: and I asked you why it is wrong and don't tell me about Tirelo being my brother

She frowned at him.

Dineo: Kgosi just....stop please

Kgosi: do you want me to be more convincing cause I can see you think im playing

He said moving his face closer.

Dineo: kg...Kgosi

He quickly perked her lips and she stood there frozen.....he moved back with a slight smirk on his face and his hands inside his pockets.

Kgosi: im done playing it safe with you Mmabontle...im not one to beat around the bush and im done giving you time to heal....from now on you'll heal with my head between your legs and my dick buried deep inside you....im gonna fix things between us and you need to meet me half way

Her eyes popped out she couldn't believe he just said that to her.

Kgosi: add a plate for me too....let me go freshen up

He then walked away leaving Dineo with her eyes still popped out....she was shocked and also confused at the same time by what just happened...she then blinked fast trying to take in what just happened.

Dineo: what the.....what just happened....did he just say.....

She said to herself with her heart still beating fast.

Dineo: ooh Richard o swelang mara (ooh Richard why did you die)

She shook her head and turned then she continued with what she was doing with her mind all over the place....she's supposed to still be angry at Kgosi but now she's feeling somehow and that feeling isn't anger.

TO BE CONTINUED.....

41

The door bust opened and Trey walked in not looking happy and Collins quickly ended the call looking angry.

Collins: don't you know how to knock!!

He said with an angry voice.

Trey: did you do it?

He asked breathing heavily.

Collins: do what?

He said not interested....he got up and went to pour himself a drink.

Trey: did you send those fuckers to do that to her!!

Collins: mxm ooh that

He said dismissively.

Trey: did you just say ooh that?

Collins: why are you so worked up by this.....she's my wife not yours... why do you care huh

Trey chuckled shaking his head.

Trey: you need help wena nx

He then clicked his tongue and walked out leaving Collins surprised by his outburst....he shook his head he then decided to call Dineo.....he breathed out and he dialed her numbers using a new simcard he bought and she answered on the third ring.

Dineo: hello

He kept quiet...he missed her voice and hearing it soothed his heart.

Dineo: helloooo?

He quickly dropped the call and sighed with his heart beating fast...after some time he calmed down then he called her

numbers again.

Dineo: hello

She said with an annoyed voice.

Collins: hi...please don't drop the call

Dineo kept quiet.

Collins: i....i didn't know who to call...i

Dineo: did you kill Richard Collins?

She interrupted him.

Collins: what?

He asked shocked....he didn't expect her to ask him that question.

Dineo: did you have Richard killed yes or no

Collins: no....how can you even ask me that.....i called because my wife was almost killed in a hijacking and I needed someone to talk to

Dineo: I really hope you didn't kill my Richie Collins cause I would hate you....you're someone I once loved and i still care a lot about you so I hope you didn't kill my Richie....i hope you don't have my Richie's blood on your hands

Then she dropped the call and Collins clenched his jaws.

Collins: my Richie this...my Richie that nx....she needs to forget about him....HE'S FUCKEN DEAD FOR FUCKS SAKES!!

He then threw the glass he was holding to the wall screaming.

Dineo sniffed and she wiped her tears off.

Kgosi: what's wrong?

He startled her which made her jump a bit.

Dineo: Kgosi man!!

She said holding her chest.

Kgosi: sorry for startling you...now answer me....why are you crying...who needs their heads chopped off

He said with a serious tone and she looked at him with a frown she then sighed and she looked down.

Dineo: Collins called me

Kgosi: what?

He said moving closer to her and he stood in front of her with a frown on his face.

Dineo: he used a different simcard

Kgosi: what did he want?

He sounded angry even though he was trying to hide it.

Dineo: he said his wife was hijacked blah blah blah

She rolled her eyes and breathed out.

Dineo: did....

She breathed out again.

Dineo: did he really have Richie killed

She asked looking up at him with teary eyes and he sighed and pulled her to his chest and she just rested her head on his hard chest as tears streamed down her cheeks.

Kgosi: I don't want you to worry yourself about that

Mmabontle....once we have solid proof you'll know so for now don't stress yourself for Gauta's sake please

She sniffed.

Kgosi: can you do that for me?

She nodded.

Kgosi: and I would like for you to stay away from him and his lap dog ok

She nodded.

Kgosi: sit down and let me finish making this sandwich for you

She sniffed and wiped her tears off moving from him but he held her in place and he cupped her face.

Kgosi: I got this ok

She nodded she found herself feeling needy and emotional and her hormones were showing her flames...all she wanted now was to be held as she cried her pain away she hated this side of her that she hardly displays but this time she couldn't help it.....out of the blue he perked her lips which caught her off guard and left her frozen.

Kgosi: you better get used to this

He said with his face an inch closer to hers .

Kgosi: I told you no more beating around the bush and this is me putting all my cards on the table

He kissed her forehead and instructed her to sit down and she did slowly...she was still trying to wrap her head around what Kgosi just did.

AT THE HOSPITAL

He walked inside the ICU ward and he slowly went to her bed and swallowed hard looking at her bruised face....tears ran down his cheeks and he wiped them sitting down....he held her hand then he brought it to his lips and he kissed it.

Trey: you need to make it Cleo....you need to fight for your child please

He sniffed.

Trey: and for me too....i made a mistake my African queen....i shouldn't have befriended him....he's not loyal and he's obsessed with that Dineo chick...he doesn't care about me you and even your child all he cares about is that Dineo chick so please wake up babe please

He swallowed hard and he looked down with his jaws clenched....right at this moment he hated Collins....he knew it was him he remembered seeing him talking to a hitman one time he thought the meeting was about getting rid of Kgosì and Cole but now it makes sense that it wasn't about that....he was taking out a hit for his own wife.....she was kidnapped outside her church premises and taken into the forest she was beaten up raped and stabbed twice then left for dead...she was found by rabbit hunters and the police were called luckily she was still holding on.

Trey: I'll...i'll make him pay I swear I will....he should've divorced you instead.....he should've just divorced you
He said with a shaky voice.

Sarah: ke mo go tlo nyaka thuso ntate(im here to ask for your help sir)

Man: ke utlwelletse (im listening)

Sarah: ke batla lenyalo la ngwanyana o le ke mo godisitseng le fele (I want the marriage of that girl I raised to collapse)

The man looked at her.

Sarah: ke batla monna gae a mo abuse and ge a fetsa ka ena a motlhale a nne le mosadi o mongwe (I want that man to abuse her and when he's done with her I want him to leave her for another woman)

Man: mmmmh....o sure? (are you sure?)

Sarah: yah.... a ka se enjoy(e) life while nna ke suffe(rile) because of yena (yes...she will never enjoy her life while I suffered because of her)

Man: e re ke botsise badimo gore ba reng (let me throw the bones and see what the ancestors are saying)

Sarah: ga ke batle go utlwa gore badimo ba reng wena mphe setlhare fela (I don't want to hear from the ancestors just give me the muthi)

The man shook his head looking at her then he told her the amount she'd need to pay and she didn't have a problem with it.....The sangoma got up and mixed some muthi for her and he put it down on the floor then she put R3000 next to the muthi and she picked the muthi.....then the sangoma told Sarah what to do with the muthi when she get home.....she got up smiling.

Sarah: ga ke laele

She walked out and the sangoma took his ancestral bones
blew inside the bag and threw them on the goat skin....then
read them and he shook his head.

Man: moipolai ga a llelwe

AT THE BNB

Queen Bahumi was pacing up and down looking
frustrated...Her husband froze all their accounts luckily she
and Mmabatho has other accounts the King don't know
about but still she was worried cause her reputation was at
stake now...right at this moment she wished she told
Mmabatho to give the baby up for adoption or to let Scarface
take the baby after she gave birth when she found out she
was pregnantthe door opened and Mmabatho walked in
she didn't look happy at all.

Bahumi: what is it?

Batho: there's trouble mama

Bahumi: what could be worse than being stripped off my
queen ship Mmabatho!!

She said with an angry voice.

Batho: Scarface a re Kgosi killed his boys...the ones he send

to kill that pregnant bitch

Bahumi: what?

Mmabatho sighed and she sat down.

Batho: he said he send him their bodies chopped up and put inside a box mama

Bahumi: how does he know it's Kgosi

Batho: cause he left him a note with the bodies

The queen breathed out.

Batho: he said one the guys is missing his body wasn't send to him...he's freaking out ma and that freaks me out

Bahumi: this is his fight Mmabatho o tsena kae wena (where do you fit in)....we have our own shit we are dealing with so focus and stop telling me ka that thug

Batho: mama Scarface has so much dirt on us....what if his guys spoke when Kgosi captured them he said one of his trusted was amongst the guys he send after Kgosi and that bitch meaning he most probably told that guy about our involvement mama

Bahumi's eyes popped out.

Bahumi: what?

Batho: what if Kgosi knows that we were involved in the killing of Tirelo and that I asked Modiri to kill Tirelo's bitch and the baby and have him wounded

Bahumi sat down defeated.

Bahumi: yho it's true when they say.... when it rains it pours

Batho: im scared mama

Bahumi: hei fotsek....nyam scared....nyam scared....if you kept your legs closed none of this would be happening to us nxa

She got up and walked out.

AT ZAKHELE AND VUYISWA'S HOUSE

There was a knock on the door and Vuyiswa fixed her cleavage and short skirt and She opened the door....Asavela scanned her body and he bit his lower lip.

Vuyi: stop drooling and come in

Asavela chuckled and he walked in and when he turned Vuyiswa grabbed his dick and he gasped...she stood on her toes and kissed him....he kissed her back and one thing led to another.

Vuyi: gosh that was amazing

She said resting her head on his chest....they were laying on the carpet that is in the lounge they moved the table so they can fuck on the fluffy carpet in the lounge.

Asa: I almost forgot how wild you can get

He said running his fingers on her naked body and she laughed lightly.

Vuyi: Xhosa men are Gods when it comes to sex....sometimes I wonder what I was thinking getting married to a Zulu lazy man nxa

Asavela laughed.

Asa: I wonder too

Vuyiswa rolled her eyes then she sat up straight.

Vuyi: we need to talk

Asa: mmmmh

He said as he put his left lower arm under his head while his right hand was brushing her bare thigh as he looked at her.

Vuyi: I would sign the divorce papers but he has so much dirt on me and im afraid he'll use it to make sure I don't get a cent from the divorce

Asa: so what are you gonna do

She breathed out.

Vuyi: I want him dead while we still married

Asavela raised an eyebrow looking at her.

AT SOME RESTAURANT

Voice: hello Malindi

She froze cause she knew who that voice belonged to then she turned slowly and yep it was him....she swallowed hard looking at him....he went around the table and sat in front of her.

QopheloSenior: you have changed...you now look fat old and unattractive...what happened to you

She frowned.

Lindiwe: don't insult me Qophelo

He chuckled....she admitted to herself that he looked good for a man his age.....the gray hair and gray beard looked good

on him.

Lindiwe: so how did you do it?

She was acting unbothered by his resurrection but deep down she was freaking out.

Senior: that's not importantso did he leave his wife for you like he claimed he would

She looked down and he laughed.

Senior: so you "killed" me for absolutely nothing

Lindiwe: you are alive Qophelo so stop being dramatic

She saw the ring on his finger and it wasn't the one he wore when they were married.

Senior: im a married man to a sexy and beautiful woman with two wonderful kids

She swallowed hard.

Lindiwe: how can you be married while still married to me

Senior laughed.

Senior: Qophelo is dead Lindiwe so as far as im concerned you are a widow

Lindiwe: I wonder how the authorities will feel when they learn that you faked your own death

Senior: I wonder how they will feel when they get their hands on some incriminating information about you and your boyfriend how you two plotted to have me killed

Her eyes popped out.

Senior: im going to bury you and your boyfriend Lindiwe....by the time im done with you even your precious son Zakhele will want nothing to do with you

Lindiwe: you don't scare me Qophelo

He smirked.

Senior: you should be scared Malindi....you should be scared

She swallowed.

Lindiwe: did Cole know about you being alive

He smirked.

Senior: im alive today because of him and his friend

She chuckled bitterly.

Lindiwe: I should have known

He got up.

Senior: do you remember Cynthia?

Her eyes popped out.

Senior: her soul is restless....she wants justice and guess what....im gonna give it to her

Lindiwe: how...how do you even know about her

She asked with her heart beating fast.

Senior: does your boyfriend know you got his other side dish killed

She tried to keep her face emotionless but he saw right through her.

Senior: the dead are everywhere and they see things.... I suggest you go and say your goodbyes to your precious son cause the authorities are on their way to the shallow grave you buried her in

Her breath hinged as she looked at him shocked....he winked at her and he walked away wearing his sunglasses.....she quickly got up and put some money on top of the table and she rushed out.

Senior: gotcha yah

He said inside his car as he saw her rushing to her car and as soon as she drove off he followed her.

AT COLE AND MARANG'S HOUSE

A WEEK LATER.....

It's been a week and Marang has been worried about Cole's behavior.... he gets ticked off easily he comes home late and he even shouts at her for no apparent reason....all she does is walk on egg shells around him and cries herself to sleep....she gets startled when the door opens and gets slammed shut again....she sits on her butt on top of the bed facing him looking scared.

Cole: why aren't you answering my calls Marang!!

He asked looking angry and she kept quiet looking down.

Cole: ANSWER MY DAMN QUESTION DAMN IT!!

She jumped with her heart beating fast....now she regretted ignoring his calls she just didn't want to talk to him because all he does is shout at her.

Marang: im sorry I...i was sleeping

Cole: you're lying to me now Marang heh.....i watched you look at your phone as it rang and you just looked at it.....why are you lying to me?

He said moving closer to her and her heart pounded hard against her chest..... she wondered what he means when he said he saw her ignoring his phone calls....the next thing he

grabbed her by her hair and he pulled her off the bed roughly.

Cole: ANSWER MY FUCKEN QUESTION....WHY ARE YOU LYING TO ME

He said tightening his grip around her hair and she cried begging him to let her go.

Marang: you're hurting me Cole....let go of me please

Cole: you even have a mouth to talk back at me

Marang....you think just because I married you now you think we are equals

Marang: Cole please...im sorry...im sorry please

She pleaded she was even shaking....she has never seen him this angry.

Cole: voetsek shut up!!

He said slapping her hard on her face....as she was trying to make sense of what just happened she felt another slap and a punch landing on her right side near her eye and she felt herself hit the floor hard and she blacked out.

TO BE CONTINUED.....

A WEEK LATER

AT THE HOSPITAL ZAKHELE IS ADMITTED IN.....

Zakhele connected the usb to his laptop and two folders which read “LINDIWE’S VIDEO AND AUDIO” and another one which read “ VUYISWA’S VIDEO AND AUDIO” appeared on the screen he wondered who send that usb and what it contained....he braced himself and he played the first video from the folder that has his wife’s name on it and it was of Vuyiswa and Asavela when they had sex in the lounge...he saw the time and date on the bottom as the video played and his heart broke a bit more....even though he was ready to divorce her he still loved her very much and he was even having second thoughts about the divorce....he stopped the video as tears ran down his cheeks after some time he calmed down and wiped his face then he played another video and this time his heart nearly stopped....the video was of his mother and his father’s best friend kissing and when they started taking off their clothes off he quickly paused the video with his eyes popped out.

Zakhele: what the fuck!!

The date and time on that video is what got to him it was

days before his father “died” in a car accident....he then went to the audios and played the first one and he recognized Vuyi’s voice....he listened to their conversation as they planned to have him killed...his eyes popped out and he clenched his jaws as his hands started shaking....he listened to the whole conversation then it stopped and he played another one and he also recognized the voices it was his mother’s voice and the voice of his father’s friend....they were also planning to have his father killed.....he started breathing heavily then the door opened and Qophelo senior walked in.

Senior: good you’re busy with the usb

Zakhele quickly wiped his tears off with his shaking hands.

Zakhele: I swear I didn’t know baba

He said sincerely.

Senior: I know why do you think I had that delivered to you Zakhele looked down feeling a wave of emotions take over. He then cried.

Zakhele: why....why would mama do that...why would she have you.....

He couldn’t even finish what he wanted to say.

Senior: you were part of the people that had Richard killed and your own brother was next so don’t act like you’re a saint!

He snapped and Zakhele’s eyes popped out....now he realized that senior knew a lot.

Zakhele: they weren’t supposed to kill him...they said they just wanted to shake him and Qophelo a bit since they wanted their territory

Senior: and like the dumb fuck you are you believed them He shook his head....and he took out a gun and Zakhele

raised his hands up in surrender looking scared.

Zakhele: please don't kill me baba....im sorry I was just angry at Qophelo I didn't mean any extreme harm towards him

He said with tears running down his cheeks as he shook and senior chuckled shaking his head.....he then put the loaded gun on top of the hospital bed covers.

Senior: hide it closer where you can reach it quickly before a nurse walks in

Zakhele took the gun with shaking hands and he hid it under the pillow as he looked at senior.

Senior: that bitch you married will strike anytime from now....remember don't trust anyone more especially the nurses and doctors....remember they can pay anyone to do their dirty job and these foolish nurses will gladly do it cause we all need money to survive

Zakhele nodded.

Zakhele: why...why are you helping me

Senior: I knew you were not mine the day you were born but I never let your mother know I knew....i loved you regardless Zakhele....i never treated you badly or showed you less love cause you are not mine biologically but you.....you wanted to.....

He shook his head as words failed him.....Zakhele looked down as tears welled up in his eyes.

Senior: now heal quickly and do everything the physiotherapist says you should do....i still need to whip that ass of yours until it bleeds for conniving against your brother He said as he walked to the door.

Senior: you better buy a house for the twins and their grandmother and move them this side permanently.... they need you as their father and not just your stupid money

nxa....you boys will surely make me bald before my time with your stupid nonsense nxa

He walked out leaving Zakhele shocked at how things happened....he was overwhelmed by everything that was happening and not in a good way....he swallowed hard looking up trying to fight back his tears.

Zakhele: fuck!!!

He whispered to himself then he broke down.....The following day as he was sleeping he felt something being put on his face and it was pressed down on his face hard....he tried to fight the person that was doing all this to him since he couldn't breathe but the person was strong....he then tried to reach under his pillow for the gun when he heard a woman's voice screaming then a gun shot was heard....he quickly reached for the gun as the force of the pillow that's being pressed down on his face was a bit loose and then he pointed it on the person's body and quickly pulled the triggeras the pillow became more loose on his face and he heard a man groan with pain he pushed the pillow off his face and he opened his eyes as blurry as his eye sight was he managed to shoot the man on his chest three times and as soon as the man fell on the floor Zakhele started feeling dizzy and the grip on the gun became loose and the gun fell on the floor as he passed out.

AT THE HOSPITAL MARANG IS ADMITTED IN.....

She opened her eyes slowly and all she could see was a bright light....she closed her eyes again and she opened them again and blinked multiple times and her sight came back and she could see clearly now...she scanned the room and she could see she was in the hospital....she tried to swallow but her mouth and throat felt dry....she cleared her throat and tried to move her arm but it felt heavy...her heart started beating fast as she panicked cause she couldn't lift her arm....The nurses heard her machines beeping and they rushed there and was glad to see her awake.

AT KGOSI'S HOUSE

Kgosi: tell me you found him

Fingers: im sorry man...it's like he disappeared from the face of earth...you know im good so for me not to find him should tell you how low key he's keeping himself

Kgosi groaned with frustration.

Finger: kyk ek sal aanhou soek na hom man..... ek sal nie opgee nie (look I'll keep on searching for him man....i won't give up)

Kgosi: thanks man

Fingers: sho

They ended the call and he gulped down his entire drink.....he looked and felt like shit ever since Cole disappeared he hasn't been himself....it's like a piece of him is missing.....he brushed his head roughly and he rubbed his eyes.....he continued to look for any clues on his laptop that might give him an idea of where he might be....his fear was that he killed himself.....the day he rushed Marang to the hospital after she passed out and started bleeding he called Kgosi sounding hysteric he told Kgosi were he was and that he brought Marang there... Kgosi rushed there with Dineo and they found him crying covered in blood on his shirt hands and arms.....he told them what he did and Dineo lost it they had to sedate her with the way she was angry and shouting.....Cole told Kgosi what happened he couldn't even explain why he was that angry....he told Kgosi that all he saw was red whenever he looked at Marang all he felt was extreme anger he couldn't explain or control.....for almost a week he managed to kind of control the anger but that day he failed.....

Anyway they waited for the doctor to come and give them feedback...when they saw her coming towards them they knew it wasn't good news and when he told them that the baby didn't make it something died inside Cole so he ran out of the hospital and no one has seen him since....he left his

bank cards cars and he only took money from his private safe and his gun and he disappeared....Kgosi and Fingers have been looking for him all over and it's like he vanished from the face of earth.

Dineo walked inside the kitchen looking like a zombie her eyes were red from crying....ever since Marang was admitted she hasn't been herself Kgosi is trying by all means to be there for her and thankfully she doesn't push him away she lets him and they have grown closer.

Kgosi: come here

She went to him and he wrapped his arms around her and she rested her head on his chest.

Kgosi: I have good news for you....i just got a call from the hospital

She quickly looked up at him.

Dineo: she's awake

He smiled nodding and she breathed out.

Dineo: ooh my God she's awake.....she's awake

Kgosi: yes now stop stressing so much please

Dineo: why are we still here Kgosi...lets go

Kgosi: we're not leaving this house until you eat

She gave him a deadly look.

Kgosi: don't even try that ish with me...sit down and eat so we get the hell out of here

She sighed and sat down.

Kgosi: good girl

She gave him a deadly look and he chuckled....he was glad Marang is now awake but he was worried of Cole's whereabouts....he prayed that he's alive wherever he is.

AT THE HOSPITAL MARANG IS ADMITTED IN....

Kgosi walked out of the ward when he couldn't take it anymore....Marang doesn't talk or even acknowledge anyone's presence all she does is say "my baby" after some time while she stared into space....he wondered how she will overcome this how their marriage will survive this....the doctor strongly suggested she be admitted into a psychiatric hospital so she can get all the help she needs and Dineo was fine with that they even called her therapist and she suggested a good psychiatrist for her.....they have already signed the necessary documents and she's gonna be moved to a private psychiatric hospital once she's cleared by her doctor.....anyway he took out his phone and dialed a number and after three rings it got answered.

Senior: ndodana

Kgosi: baba....how are you?

Senior sighed.

Senior: I'll be fine..wena unjani (how are you)

Kgosi: I'll be fine too baba

Senior: mmmmh

Kgosi: she's awake...

He sighed.

Kgosi: but....

Senior: but what

Kgosi: she's gonna be send to a psychiatric hospital....she's not herself she doesn't speak or acknowledge anyone's presence

Senior sighed.

Senior: once she starts being herself again book her into a retreat where they help with stress and shit like that....i don't want her in that crazy people shitty hospital but I'll tolerate it for now

Kgosi chuckled shaking his head.

Senior: once she starts speaking or shows signs that she's making progress move her to one of those retreats where she will be treated like a queen

Kgosi: ok baba

Senior: good just know I also found him

Kgosi's eyes popped out.

Kgosi: what...where...is he ok

Senior: at one of my ranches in the NorthWest....the ranch caretakers who comes in twice a week found him passed out they called an ambulance then they called me since they don't know that im declared dead in this country

Kgosi: is he ok

He asked with a low tone and Senior sighed.

Senior: the doctor just left now and he said he suffered alcohol poisoning and some bruises on his back and hands....its like he bruised himself....the caretakers found a sjambok covered with blood in the room he was in and his fists were covered in blood too and bruised badly

Kgosi: fuck....

He said brushing his head.

Senior: I'll make sure he pulls through you make sure his wife pulls through too

Kgosi: ok....have you found out something about what happened...something is fishy here....Cole would never do what he did to Marang consciously someone or something has a hand in it

Senior: yeah it wasn't him but don't worry once I find the fucker that did this I'll let you know

Kgosi: ok

Senior: mh

Then he ended the call and Kgosi breathed out....he was glad and thankful he's found and he's gonna get the help he needs.

AT ANOTHER HOSPITAL....

Collins was busy shouting at nurses he just came to check on his wife....he was here to tell the doctor to switch off the machines but he got here and found out that he signed documents to take his wife away for better treatment...a nurse showed him his signature and its true it was his signature but he didn't sign that.....after some time they took him to the security room and they showed him the footage of the man that walked in and claimed to be him and he couldn't recognize him the man dressed like him and even had the same posture as him but he knew it wasn't

him.....after some time he left the hospital to deal with all this his own way....on his way back he called Trey and the call didn't go through it didn't ring or even take him to voicemail meaning the simcard didn't exist anymore.....he continued to try and call Trey but to no avail....he hit the steering wheel a couple of times looking angry he wondered who took Cleo and why they took her.

Collins: where the fuck are you Trey nxa!

He shouted alone in the car then he rubbed his face.

A MONTH LATER....

Mmabatho and his mother have been staying at the house she shared with Richard and things haven't been going well for them....they are constantly looking over their shoulders the worst thing is they left Mmabatho's daughter back home and now they can't even go and take her cause that would mean facing the king's wrath....as for Mmabatho she was banned from Kweneng Kingdom...she has been stressed out and her mother constantly blaming her for their predicament is making things worse.....on another hand she has been trying to contact Scarface but he can't be reached his phone

doesn't go through anymore.

Bahumi: I'll be back

She said walking down the stairs and Mmabatho sighed looking at her.

Mmabatho: o ya kae mama (where are you going mama)

Bahumi: to fix this stupid mess you created

Mmabatho rolled her eyes.

Mmabatho: fix it how?

Bahumi: don't worry that tiny brain of yours about that wena cook something nice for dinner

Then she walked away fixing herself....she walked out and got inside Mmabatho's car and drove out.....Mmabatho sighed and she went upstairs to her room and she decided to lay down a bit....she has been having a bad feeling lately and she was also feeling down....

LATER.....

Bahumi came back from her meeting and her heart nearly stopped as soon as she drove closer to Mmabatho's house.... fire fighters were busy fighting to defuse the blazing hot flames eating away Mmabatho's house....they were trying hard to put off the flames but the more they poured water on the flames it will recharge and become stronger....it was a strange thing to see.....Bahumi got out of the car as soon as she parked with her eyes popped out and her heart beating out of her chest.....she put her hands on top of her head and she screamed out loud as everything around her suddenly started moving slowly.....she ran around the crowd of people

that were watching screaming out Mmabatho's name searching for her amongst the crowd but she didn't find her....she then ran towards the burning house screaming Mmabatho's name and the fire fighters caught her pulling her back.

Bahumi: MY DAUGHTER...MY DAUGHTER IS IN THERE.....
That's what she kept on saying as she cried out loud....

He stopped playing the video as Scarface's tears ran down his cheeks.

Mfumu: I wish I was there watching the house burn down to the ground myself

He chuckled.

Scar: you are evil!

He said crying and Mfumu chuckled.....Scarface was tied to a chair beaten to a pulp with his right eye swollen shut....he was naked and covered in blood.

Mfumu: when you and your co-accomplices killed Richard it wasn't evil?

Scar: he deserved to die his mother killed my unborn child.....a life for a life

Mfumu smirked looking at him.

Mfumi: you say....mmmh ok

He took out his phone and made a call then he put it on loud speaker.

Voice: boss

Mfumu: let her speak...his son wants to say hi to her
Scarface's eye popped out then his mother cried on the other side of the call begging for the guys that kidnapped her to not hurt her....Scarface started shaking as more tears gushed out.

Scarface: m....ma

His mother: ka le rapela leseke la mpolaya....kea
lerapela....leska mpolaya (im begging you please don't kill me....im begging you....don't kill me)

She begged them crying not even aware that her son was on the other side of the call calling out to her then Mfumu dropped the call with a smirk on his face.

Mfumu: you don't have a brother so your mother was the second option...i thought about taking your kids or that woman of yours but nah.....i wanted the one I knew can't be replaced if you know what I mean

He said with his creepy smile on his face.

Scar: please man...im sorry for killing your brother....im sorry I was just angry I didn't mean to please forgive me please
He pleaded crying.

Mfumu: a life for a life...that's what you said right

Scar: im sorry...sorry please I didn't mean it

He said crying and Mfumu chuckled shaking his head.

Scar: kill me then and leave my mother out of this please she's innocent in all this she doesn't know I killed your brother

Mfumu: ooh is it

He dialed his phone again and put it on loud speaker after they answered it.

Voice: boss

Mfumu: ask her about the prince that his son killed the one

his mother forced Mmabatho to abort
Scar was crying.....they heard the guy asking the woman and
the woman said she doesn't know what he's talking about
then a slap was heard and she screamed....Scar screamed too
when he heard what sounded like a slap.

Scar: STOP....STOP IT OK...SHE DOESN'T KNOW ANYTHING!!

Voice: im not gonna ask you again...now tell the fucken truth
before I blow your brain apart

A scary voice said and the woman cried.

Voice: TALK!!

Woman: she made Mmabatho abort so he killed her son as
revenge.....she was carrying my grandson and that evil queen
forced her to abort...she deserved to mourn for her precious
son too like mine did

Mfumumu laughed while scar just cried then Mfumumu dropped
the call and looked at Scar.

Mfumumu: im sure the community of where she stays will be
thrilled that she's dead....i mean she sells nyaope(drugs) to
their children...she's also an evil loan shark who goes around
beating people who owe her money with those two now
dead puppies she called bodyguards

Scar: please don't....don't kill her im begging you

He whispered and Mfumumu smirked looking at him.

Mfumumu: a life for a life remember

Scar: please I'll do anything but please don't kill her man

Then he went to a closed steel bucket by the corner and he
went closer to Scar with it still smiling.

Mfumumu: say hi to lucifer for me

He said with his scary voice and an evil look on his face then
he opened the bucket and he rushed out and closed the door
shut locking it from outside.....he then heard screams from

inside until they died down.....then he made another call.

Voice: boss

Mfumumu: proceed with the plan....i want that old bitch in jail for a very long time

Voice: consider it done

Mfumumu: good

Then he dropped the call and he went to take fumigation prays whistling he wore a fumigation breathing mask...he opened one of them and shook it then he opened the door and quickly threw the spray tin inside and closed the door but then he jumped as he saw that one of the man-eating wild ants was on his boot...he shook it off quickly and stepped on it squashing it then he waited for some minutes to pass and he opened another spray and opened the door and threw it inside and quickly closed the door again.

43

Dineo: where were you?

She said as soon as Kgosi walked in the lounge and he frowned.

Kgosi: askies?

Dineo: you heard me Kgosi where were you?....why are you coming back this late

Kgosi: what are you my wife?

He asked with an annoyed voice and Dineo raised her eyebrow then she chuckled getting up.

Dineo: ok

She then walked away and Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: wait...look im sorry Mmabontle

Dineo: piss off Kgosi nxa

She went up the stairs and went to her bedroom and locked the door.

Kgosi: damn it Mfumu....what the fuck is wrong with you nx!!!

He sighed and sat down then he brushed his head...he knows how Dineo can be and the fact that he spoke to her like that will mean the next couple of days will be hell for him.

Mfumu: “just sex her and she will forgive you”

Kgosi: shut up....shut the fuck up or I’ll drink the stronger pills and you’ll be locked in there with no way out...Mmabontle is off limit damn it!!!

He said with an angry voice.

Mfumu: fine im shut

He chuckled with a creepy tone then..... silence.

Kgosi: nx

He got up and went upstairs he got to her bedroom and tried to open the door and it was locked....he sighed and went to his bedroom where he went to take a shower....For the last couple of weeks he studied Dineo and now he can say he knows her a bit better....after the shower he wore his pajamas and walked out of his bedroom with his phone on his hand..... He went to check if the doors are closed and switched off the lights and he went back upstairs.....

Dineo woke up in the middle of the night with the need to pee and he felt a strong arm wrapped around her body she sighed when she smelled his accent and before she could

even see him....she tried to move his arm off her but he tightened the grip.

Dineo: I want to pee man Kgosi

Kgosi: be quick

He pulled his arm off her and she got off the bed and quickly went to the bathroom....she wasn't even shocked as to how he managed to get inside her bedroom even though she locked the door cause this isn't the first time he does this....Anyway she wiped herself and flushed then she pulled her pajama bottom up and she washed her hands and wiped it and she went back to the bedroom and got back into the covers.....he then grabbed her and pulled her closer and kissed her neck.

Kgosi: im sorry....please don't give me the silent treatment that shit is hell on earth for me mama

She didn't say anything she just closed her eyes.

Kgosi: I had a really bad day that's why I lashed out like that....im sorry mama never again

She kept her silence.

Dineo: I can't deal with your change of moods Kgosi....im the one who's pregnant here and not you

She said after some time and he sighed.

Kgosi: I'll keep myself in check I promise

She didn't say anything else and soon he heard her snoring lightly and he kissed the back of her head and rubbed her belly.

THE FOLLOWING MORNING.....

Kgosi woke up when he felt Dineo's hand inside his pajama pants she was holding his erected huge dick rubbing the tip with her thumb slowly with her head resting on his chest...his breathing changed and he kissed her forehead.....he was used to waking up to her putting her hand on top of his pants where his dick will be laying but now she moved to another level cause her hand is inside and she's rubbing it so smoothly.

Kgosi: mama?

He said with his deep voice and she didn't say anything.

Kgosi: Mmabontle?

Dineo: mmh

Kgosi: you're killing me

He said in a whisper and she moved her index finger from the tip going down to his balls and he flinched tightening his grip around her...she massaged his balls and his body tightened.

Kgosi: fuck....

He whispered and he moved trying to get on top of her but she pulled her hand out and she pushed him back then she got out of bed.

Kgosi: where are you going?

Dineo: im hungry so im going to make myself something to eat

He frowned.

Kgosi: so you're going to leave me like this

Dineo: am I your wife Kgosi?

He huffed resting his head back on the pillow and he grabbed his hard dick...it was painful as hell.

Kgosi: don't do this Mmabontle im begging you

She went to the bathroom.

Kgosi: Mmabontle!!

He called after her and she ignored him.

Kgosi: damn it...fuck you Mfumu nx

Matlhabe: good morning aus'Dee

Dineo: hey love o monate? (are you good)

She nodded smiling a bit then she became serious turning to Kgosi.

Matlhabe: my prince

She said bowing a bit towards Kgosi.

Kgosi: Matlhabe

He said with a straight face on.

Matlhabe: i...i didn't know I needed to wake up early...im sorry

Dineo: sa wara man (don't worry)...i was hungry so I woke up early

She breathed out.

Matlhabe: ok I'll go clean up then

Kgosi: make me another cup of coffee!

He said pushing his empty cup towards Matlhabe as he focused on his laptop and she bowed and took the cup to the kitchen.

Kgosi: how long will this punishment go on like

He said looking at her with an intense look on his face.

Dineo: what punishment

He just gave her “the look” and she rolled her eyes.

Dineo: im not punishing you Kgosi I just realized that you’re Richie’s elder brother and its inappropriate for us to reach that level

Kgosi: so us kissing and me finger fucking you isn’t inappropriate?

Dineo: hebanna why do you sound angry

Kgosi: don’t fuck with me Dineo im not in a fucken mood
She raised an eyebrow looking at him....she has never head him using swear words like this before towards her.....he even looked angry...she got up.

Dineo: sorry for speaking out of turn neh but my prince remember that I also know how to swear and Im good at it
Then she walked away pissing him off some more when she called him “my prince”.

Kgosi: nx

Matlhabe brought his coffee and she quickly walked away to avoid his wrath because of the look on his face.

Senior: how are you feeling today ndodana

He sighed.

Cole: how is she?

He ignored his father’s question.

Senior: her doctor said she's opening up now

Cole nodded and continued to look outside.

Cole: do you think she'll forgive me?

Senior sighed.

Senior: she has to

Cole: I broke her baba

Senior: you're also broken

Cole swallowed hard as his eyes filled with tears.

Cole: she was raped and almost burned alive by Mazwi and now I beat her up and kill.....killed our baby

Senior: don't do this to yourself Qophelo...don't

Cole: I don't deserve her

Senior: yes you do...you two deserve each other....you're a good man son and all this shit that happened is not your fault and don't worry I'll deal with the culprit myself

Cole sniffed and he wiped his tears off.

Cole: you think I was bewitched?

Senior: I know it...i can feel it in my bones....you chose her over your own blood you helped her get over the trauma she went through and you wifed her and planted your seed in her....i know how much you want to be father...how much you couldn't wait to hold your son in your arms so for you to do this to her means something is not right

Cole clenched his jaws getting emotional.

Senior: so there's no way you would do what you did consciously and in your right state of mind....there's foul play here and I'll get to the bottom of it...wena concentrate on getting better so you can go fix things with your wife

Cole didn't say anything else he just continued to look outside broken inside....all he thought about is Marang and how she's doing now...how broken she is and if she'll ever

forgive him.

Senior: take

He handed him a usb stick.

Senior: watch what is inside...maybe it will motivate you to toughen up and fight for your marriage and also seek help yourself

Then he walked away.

King: WHY ARE YOU CRYING YOU EVIL WOMAN....SHE'S DEAD BECAUSE OF YOU...YOU HAD HER KILLED....YOU LURED HER INTO YOUR SCHEMES AND TURNED HER INTO A MANIPULATIVE CONNIVING AND LYING WOMAN SHE WAS NOW WHY ARE YOU CRYING!!!

He shouted at Queen Bahumi who was crying....after what happened to Mmabatho she went back to the kingdom and the King (her husband) kicked her out like a dog he had already found out about what happened to Mmabatho so when Bahumi rocked up at the Kingdom the king lost it....he dragged her out like she's a nobody....but Bahumi kept going back but luckily this time around the elders managed to convince the king to allow her in cause people started talking about why the first Queen is been treated like this and making their own assumptions as to what the reason might be.

Bahumi: im so...sorry my husband...i messed up....i....

King: YOU'RE SORRY....O RE YOU'RE SORRY AND YOU MESSED UP....MY DAUGHTER IS DEAD BAHUMI...DEAD AND SHE'S

NEVER COMING BACK AND IS ALL YOUR FAULT!!!

She cried louder and the elders just shook their heads looking down while her son just clenched his jaws looking at his mother with hate plastered on his face.

King: SHUT UP...SHUT UP!!!

She muffed her cried.

Elder1: calm down Kgabo....calm down...you know when you're this angry the ancestors also get angry

King: they should also get angry....in fact they should strike her dead....she's the one that deserves to die and not my daughter

He was even sweating.....Bahumi was sitting on the cold floor crying.

King: I called her....i called and told her she should come back with Mmabatho so they can answer to the family about their conniving deeds and she said to me to go to hell...selo se se mpoletse gore ke ye diheleng (this thing told me to go to hell) then she killed my daughter

He picked his cane and rushed to Bahumi and raised it to hit her and she hid her face but he stopped midway while biting his lower lip hard.

King: ke tla go bolaya Bahumi wankutlwa....ke tla go bolaya!! (I'll kill you Bahumi you hear me....I'll kill you!!)

Bahumi: intshwarele monna wa me....ke kopa maitshwarelo (forgive me my husband....please forgive me)

She said crying and he clicked his tongue.

Elder2: matshwafo fatshe Kgabo....matshwafo fatshe (calm down Kgabo...calm down)

He pleaded with him.

King: guards!!!.....get her out of my sight before I kill her with my bare hands....make sure she sit in the middle of the

yard on the ground until I say otherwise...no one should give her food or water let the sun drain out the evil that fills her heart nx

The guards grabbed her and pulled her up with her crying asking for forgiveness...she looked at her son hoping he'll have mercy on her but he just looked away and they walked with her outside and the King sat down defeated.

King: if only she answered my calls....im sure Bahumi told her not to.....i should've send the guards to drag them back here...i should've handled all this like a father and not an angry king and my daughter would still be alive

Elder3: don't blame yourself my King....you didn't tell them to do all the things they did

King: the burned flesh I kept smelling everywhere was a sign....i should've known

Elder1: we were still dealing with the seer Kgabo.... we were all angry and humiliated by what they did.....right now we are a laughing stock to other kingdoms.... which kingdom will want to marry any of our daughters after what Mmabatho and Bahumi did....they will think there are no virgins in our kingdom and that we take them to doctors to reinstate their virginity to fool potential suitors

Elder4: a suitor in the Bahurutse kingdom in Zeerust postponed magadi for Bopaki Mogabe's second daughter....already our kingdom is suffering because of what the seer the Queen and the princess did and we need to find a solution fast!!

The King sighed shaking his head while looking down.

Psychiatrist: lets pick up from where we left of from our last session.....did you think about my question

Marang cleared her throat and she nodded.

Psychiatrist: good now give me an answer.... do you think your husband's friend or brother was right when he said your husband was not in his right state of mind when he did what he did to you....that something is wrong with him

She kept quiet for some time.

Psychiatrist: its ok take your time

After some time she spoke.

Marang: I think....

She sighed playing with her fingers.

Marang: he wasn't himself

The psychiatrist wrote something down.

Psychiatrist: what makes you say that?

Marang: he....

She sighed.

Marang: he woke up one night from a nightmare....he....he was sweating really bad and...and when he saw me his face changed....he....he didn't look at me in a loving way...ii tried to touch him and he pushed my hand away roughly then he got out of bed and since then he...he changed....he became an angry person

Psychiatrist: before you both went to sleep how was he?

Marang: a loving and caring husband....he even massaged my feet....we...we even made...love and he held me throughout the night until he woke up from what I thought was a nightmare

The Psychiatrist wrote down something then she fixed her glasses looking at Marang.

Psychiatrist: what do you think happened to make him change like that?

She shrugs.

Psychiatrist: ok...let's talk about your ex the one that raped and nearly killed you....did what your husband did to you trigger the trauma you went through with your ex

She nodded slowly and she started crying then Cole closed his laptop as his own tears ran down his cheeks.

Voice: continue watching Qophelo

It was his father...he didn't even know he was standing behind him.

Cole: I can't

He said with tears running down his face.

Cole: I broke her baba

Senior: I said continue watching!

He said sternly and Cole wiped his tears off and he opened the laptop cause he knows how serious Senior is when he uses that tone...he forwarded to where he stopped then let it play.

Psychiatrist: if I were to say your husband and your ex are what society calls 'birds of the same feathers' would you agree

She shook her head no slowly and the psychiatrist wrote something down.

Psychiatrist: why do you disagree?

She kept quiet a bit.

Marang: cause he has showed me multiple times that he loves me.....he...he has been there for me even when I broke up with him back then....he....he chose me over his own blood and stood by his decision....i saw a nobody a broken girl when I looked in the mirror but he saw someone to love

and protect and he also saw a wife and a mother
to....his.....chil.....

Then she cried.

Marang: so I don't....i don't know why he did what he
did....he even named him and he...couldn't wait to see and
hold him.... he....he hit me....he hit me...i begged him to stop
and I apologized but he didn't stop

She cried painfully.

Marang: I don't know why....i....i

She continued to cry.

Psychiatrist: but you do know abusers most of the time they
don't have a valid and solid reason as to why they are being
abusive and sometimes they even just take out their
frustrations out on their partners cause they can't deal with
what's eating them up....others enjoy abusing their victims
while others aren't strong enough to face their demons so
they use their partners and children as punching bags....so I
don't want you to blame yourself for his doings....it's not
your fault you hear me I don't want you blaming
yourself....he's the one that failed to deal with what's eating
him up and not you

She just continued to cry and the video stopped playing.

Cole: uyanya lodokotela womlungu (fuck this white
doctor)...msoon wakhe (her cunt)....uyanyaim not an
abuser antlek golo lakhe man (her cunt man)....msoono ka
nyoko nxa

He said tossing the laptop next to him on the bed and he got
out of the bed feeling worked up.

Cole: she's trying to make her leave me that's what she's
trying to do...uyangijwaela lo doti (she doesn't know me this
rubbish)

Senior: why are you getting worked up

Cole: she's trying to make Marang leave me!!

Senior: maybe she should

Cole stopped pacing and he looked at his father with a deadly frown on his face.

Cole: angizwanga? (repeat what you just said)

Senior: I mean you're out here throwing yourself a pity party moping around like a bitch instead of finding out what the fuck made you act like that....nywe nywe nywe I broke her.....yes you did now fucken fix her like you did when Mazwi broke her....uyakwazi ukulungisa inkinga na masimba ayenzwe ngaamanye amadoda but yohluleka ukulungiza akho amasimba....unjani Qophelo heh(you know how to fix shit done by other men but you fail to fix your own shit....why are you like this Qophelo).....since when have you become this weak....

Cole swallowed looking down.

Senior: when was the last time you went to uDladla kuyovuselela (to Dladla so he can strengthen you again)

Cole didn't answer him.

Senior: you fucken know your lifestyle Qophelo and you decide ukuphila nje (to live just) like a fucken normal person....even normal people these days take precautions ngemphilo zabo and wena uyahlala nje (with their lives and you just live just like that)....is that what I taught you

Cole: qha (no)

Senior: KHULUMA MAN!!!

Cole: qh...qha

Senior: qha ya masimba

Cole kept quiet.

Senior: I should be in Mozambique fucking my wife in peace

but no im here fixing all your messes...shit you can do yourselves if you stopped acting like pussies!!!

He continued to shout at Cole.

Senior: you are acting like a coconut cheese boy now wannabe witches are using you as a test ground

Cole clenched his jaws.

Cole: im not a cheese boy mina baba

Senior: well you smell like one...nxa

He walked to the door.

Senior: wena no Zakhele nifuna induku nje (you want a beating).....now pick yourself up and go fix your marriage before you piss me off

He walked out and Cole sighed.

Cole: im no cheese boy mina

He said to himself sulking then he smelled himself.

Cole: I smell like a fucken real man futhi nxa

44

Dineo is on her way to the mall with her driver on the driver seat while she sat on the backseat she left after Kgosi left for a meeting he had with Fingers and Beast....she missed Marang so much it hurt but she understood that she'll only get to talk to her once they allow her to make a call once she starts making progress.....she does call her Psychiatrist to find out about her progress and she's happy she's making one....she talks now and she's also opening up to the Psychiatrist which is good....She sighed looking outside the window and her mind went to Kgosi she didn't want to admit it but she was falling for him and hard and it hurt to know

that soon he will get married to a royal princesses and she'll be left heartbroken....even the guilt she felt every time he hugged or brushed her belly has disappeared they now even kiss and he does other intimate things to her which drives her insane..... she even wishes she let him fuck her brains out in the morning but her stubbornness and revengeful heart made her miss all that....

Dineo: aarg!!

She clicked her tongue wishing she let him...she sighed and bit her lower lip....after some time they arrived at the mall and the driver went to park in the underground parking lot then he got out and opened the door for Dineo and she got out holding her handbag.

Dineo: thanks Mr Hunk

The driver smiled shaking his head lightly and he closed the door and he walked behind Dineo as they went towards the entrance which was a bit of a walk since there weren't parking spaces closer to the entrance.....then all of the sudden she heard something heavy falling from behind her and she quickly turned and she saw her driver on the floor bleeding... she was about to scream when she felt something being put on her nose and mouth and her mind acted quickly.....she held her breath and elbowed whoever was behind her hard and they person loosened his grip on her mouth....then he let Dineo go with his eyes popped out he looked like he just seen a ghost he even started shaking.....He was brought back to reality when Dineo quickly turned and kicked him between his legs and he groaned bending and holding his privates... she pushed him with force and the guy fell back and she screamed as she began running.

Voice: ei tshwara sfebe seo!! (grab that bitch)

A voice from a car said as the passenger door and the back door opened....Dineo screamed for help as she ran towards the entrance....a white man and woman just got out of their car saw a black woman being chased by two men and another one limping coming behind them and the white man shouted.

Man: EY WHAT THE FUCK ARE YOU DOING...WHY ARE YOU CHASING HER!!

Dineo changed her course and ran towards the white man and woman crying.

Man: HONEY CALL THE POLICE!!

The men who were chasing Dineo saw more people walking out of the mall and they stopped chasing her and ran back to the car they got in and two cars drove away in a hurry....Dineo got to the couple and she ran to the guy while the woman was busy talking to the police on the phone.

Man: are you ok...did they hurt you

Dineo cried pointing towards where she ran from.

Dineo: he...he

Man: what...who's he

The woman got to them.

Woman: its ok breathe....breathe....

She said rubbing Dineo's back gently and Dineo started doing breathing exercises.

Dineo: they shot him...he's...he's bleeding

The man quickly ran towards where Dineo was pointing and they followed him....at this moment Dineo even forgot that she's pregnant....they found the driver laying there not moving with his eyes opened and he wasn't blinking.....the white man felt the driver's pulse and it wasn't there he was

gone....he sighed looking down and he looked back at his wife and Dineo and he shook his head and Dineo cried out loud.

Dineo: Mr hunk...ooh my God....Mr Hunk nooo

She cried and the white woman hugged her but she felt the bump and pushed Dineo back a bit.

Woman: ooh my God you're pregnant

Dineo nodded and she quickly dragged her away from the dead body telling Dee to calm down for the baby's sake.

Beast: so how much did you charge the fool

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: a lump sum of money.... that's all you need to know

Beast shook his head with a smirk on his face.

Fingers: dus gaan ons belastingbetalers geld eet (so we're going to eat tax payers money)

Kgosi chuckled.

Kgosi: we all know that he's not gonna use his own money to pay for this party

Beast: I fucken hate greedy bastards like him but money is money right

Kgosi nodded and he took a sip of his drink.

Fingers: tax payers money or not im gonna chow it...my pa ran away when I was still inside my ma's maag (stomach) and I know he's working out there so in my defense im gonna chow his part of his money not everyone else's

They laughed.

Kgosi: you're crazy

Fingers: no im a realist

Beast just shook his head chuckling.

Kgosi: so you're good with the payment

Beast: yeah and there won't be a contract between us I don't want shit coming back to me you know how this kinda shit gets exposed at the end so I don't want my name or my company's name associated with shit...i work with the military so I need to be above board

Kgosi: no need to explain man I understand

Beast: good

He got up and Kgosi did too and they shook on it that was their contract (the handshake).

Beast: send me all the details

Kgosi: will do

Beast nodded and he walked away they were inside his boardroom at his private security company.

Kgosi: I wonder where he got this dark and strong aura around him...it's like he walks alongside a real beast

He chuckled shaking his head.

Fingers: he's not called Beast for nothing....maybe he does walk alongside it or its within him

Then he got up and Kgosi gave him the "yeah right" look.

Fingers: ek sal môre oor die ding kom (I'll come see you tomorrow about that thing)

Kgosi: aweh

They fist bumped and Kgosi's phone rang as Finger was walking to the door.

Kgosi: hello

Dineo: they shot him Kgosi...they shot him and i...he... they tried but i...he....

She said hysterically crying.

Kgosi: Dineo what's wrong...where are you....

He said panicking and Fingers stopped and went back to Kgosi.

Woman: hello this is Mrs van DykDeeneo was almost abducted but my husband disturbed them and they drove off but unfortunately a man she was with was shot and killed and the police just discovered two more men killed inside a white Audi....the ambulance is here and they are taking her to the hospital since she's in shock and she's pregnant She told him the name of the hospital they are taking her to...he told her he's on his way and he dropped the call and told Fingers what he's just been told and he ran out with Fingers behind him.

Fingers: I'll go to the crime scene

Kgosi: thanks man

They both got inside their cars and drove out.

Dineo: hey

She said opening her eyes when she felt someone holding her hand and she saw Kgosi.

He kissed her hand multiple times.

Kgosi: don't ever scare me like that you hear me

Her eyes got filled with tear and she let them fall.

Kgosi: shhh...its ok...its ok

He said kissing her forehead.

Kgosi: im here now

Dineo: they killed him...they...they shot him Kgosi...he's dead
She said crying and Kgosi held her as she cried.

Kgosi: its ok mama....you need to calm down for Gauta's sake
please

She held on to him tight as she sobbed softly.

Kgosi: its ok...im here now...its ok

He said as he stared onto space then he clenched his jaws.

LATER.....

Dineo was now in a private room at the hospital sleeping while Kgosi was sitting on a recliner chair watching her.....He thought of how things could've turned out she could've been kidnapped if she didn't fight them or worst part she could've been killed.....he swallowed hard as his chest tightened at the thought of her missing or worse killed with Gauta still inside of her right then he realized that he has fallen for her and life without her seemed pointless... right then he made a decision a decision to stop with the games and to stop treating her like he's doing her a favor by living with her and also protecting her and Gauta....its high time he took the bull by its horns.....His phone rang stopping him from thinking too much and he quickly answered.

Kgosi: Fingers

Finger: its bad

Kgosi: how bad

Fingers: her two other guards are also dead

Kgosi: damn it!

He said getting up.

Fingers: the fact that they knew that she had other guards following her from a distant it shows that she has been tail for some time now

Kgosi went out of the room and he stood outside.

Kgosi: have those two fuckers reacted to their money disappearing

Fingers: no but wherever they are they are feeling the heat....wait you think they're the ones responsible for this

Kgosi: them or uncle and his son

Fingers: damn...anyway pay uncle dearest a visit or better yet kidnap that useless son of his...he's a weak ass pussy pretending to be strong im sure he'll spill the beans and I'll continue searching for the two fuckers

Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: thanks man

Fingers: don't even go there man...what I did that time almost got me killed by Beast if he found out....i put the lives of everyone in danger because of pussy and you coming through for me was....

Kgosi: let's not go there man.... we've got each other's backs and that's all that it is

Fingers sighed.

Fingers: ayt let me go..... talk later

Kgosi: sho

They ended the call and Kgosi breathed out looking up then he looked at his phone's screen when it rang again.

Kgosi: hello

Cole: King

Kgosi: you stupid fuck...

Cole chuckled.

Kgosi: do you know how fucken worried I was

Cole: chill will yah

Kgosi: fotseke..chill ya masepa

Cole chuckled again and Kgosi rubbed his eyes.

Kgosi: you good

Cole: I am getting there

Kgosi: that's good...that's good

Cole: you sound stressed what's up

Kgosi: Dineo was almost kidnapped today

Cole: WHAT? BY WHO...IS SHE OK...WHAT ABOUT GAUTA IS SHE OK TOO?

Kgosi: she fought them man....my girl fought...she didn't want to go down without a fight...she fought them

He said with low voice getting angry again.

Cole: im coming back....I'll be there later...i need to pass by somewhere first but I'll be there and we will find the people involved

Then he dropped the call and Kgosi sighed.

Kgosi: fuck!

He couldn't believe Dineo fought them and got away.....he then thought of the white couple and he knew he had to compensate them for what they did.

KWENENG KINGDOM.....

Motlalepula was in the kitchen making tea she was edgy and it started a few days after the reading of Richard's will she

has been receiving calls and she would go and answer them in private she looks stressed and she keeps on checking her phone every second.....she even lashes at anyone who dared to ask her what's eating her up...she looks horrible with eye bags under her eyes the king even went to consult with the seer and the seer just told him to let her be that the ancestors are dealing with her.....She has been having dreams well more like nightmares of Richards standing in front of her drenching with blood without saying anything.....the nightmares started few days after the reading of the will and she thought it's just dreams but now they are getting worse cause now he looks angry like he's ready to attack her or something so she sleeps at the main house cause she feels scared sleeping in her own house alone since the king doesn't bed her these days.

Voice: you walk around in pyjamas even at this time
Motlalepula?

She frowned getting disgusted by his presence she poured hot water into her cup and turned to face the King.....Queen Boitumelo saw her walking around in her pajamas in the royal house and when she advised her against it she lashed out at her so she went to tell the King to go talk to her cause many dignitaries from around the country and even outside the country come to the kingdom to see the king so imagine them finding the first Queen walking in pajamas at 2pm looking like she was hit by a train.

Motlalepula: not today Letukile please
She said with an annoyed voice.

King: what's going on with you Motlalepula...why are you acting like this these days

He asked with a concerned voice...even though the seer told

him the reason for her sudden weird behavior he was still concerned about her she's his wife after all..... all he wants is for Motlalepula to confess so that she can ask for forgiveness from the ancestors so there's peace.

Motlalepula: can you just let me mourn my son in peace Letukile Tirelo didn't mean anything to you that's why you just moved on just like that but with that bigheaded son of yours you looked like a hobo after he disappeared which shows who's your favorite so let me mourn my son tuu...just leave me alone to mourn my son in peace!!

King: how dare you say I don't care about Tirelo and the fact that he's gone!

Motlalepula: nyaw dare you...nyaw dare you nxa...ofcourse you don't!!!!

She took her tea and walked out.

King: MOTLALEPULA!!

She ignored him and went to the bedroom she uses in the main royal house....as soon as she got in she closed the door and locked it for just in case the King is following her.....when she turned she froze on the spot with her eyes popped out...the cup slipped through her hand and fell to the floor breaking with the tea spilling all over....she tried to speak but her voice refused to come out.

Voice: why???

It came out as a whisper and her eyeballs rolled back and she fell on the floor and it was lights out.

AT THE HOSPITAL....

Dineo woke up screaming and Kgosi quickly got up and rushed to the bed as she sat up breathing heavily.

Kgosi: its ok you were just dreaming

Dineo: they killed her Kgosi...they killed Mr Hunk in cold blood

She cried shaking and he frowned at the “Mr Hunk” statement but brushed it off.

Kgosi: its ok..i need you to calm down

He said taking off his sneakers and he joined her in bed she rested her head on his chest and she listened to his heartbeat as it calmed her down while he held her in a protective manner....he kissed her forehead and they kept quiet for some time.

Kgosi: mama

Dineo: mmmmh

Kgosi: who is Mr Hunk

She frowned then she rolled her eyes.

Dineo: my driv....my late driver

She sniffed as her eyes got filled with tears again when she thought of him.

Kgosi: you called him that?

Dineo: yeah he was a hunk moes

He kept quiet a bit.

Kgosi: mama

Dineo: mmh

She said wiping her tears off.

Kgosi: it should be the first and last time you call another man a hunk rautlwana (do we understand each other?)

She tried to raise her head to look at him but he stopped her.

Kgosi: I said rautlwana?

He said sternly and she sighed.

Dineo: why?

Kgosi: Dineo!!

He said firmly.

Dineo: ohk geez I hear you

She sniffed again.

Dineo:mara why?

Kgosi: ota swaba Mmabontle!! (you'll regret it Mmabontle)

He warned her and she giggled.....she was amused by a

jealous Kgosi she turned and Kgosi held her from behind and he rubbed her belly gently and Gauta moved which made him smile.

Kgosi: my heart melts every time she does that

Dineo: mine too

Then he sighed.

Kgosi: you know I went temporary insane when I receive your call

She swallowed.

Kgosi: im glad you're both ok

Dineo: will you be here when the police come to take my statement tomorrow?

Kgosi: I wouldn't be anywhere else mama....I'll be here with you

Dineo: thank you

Then they kept quiet a bit....Dineo couldn't believe she was witnessing the gentle part of Kgosi she preferred it to that macho and egoistic part.

Kgosi: you should've heard Matlhabe crying over the phone when I told her you were almost kidnapped and that you're

admitted....you would've sworn I said you were dead or something....hai women

Dineo: ncooo....she's a sweet heart that one

Kgosi: mmmmh you should pray that if she gets married she marries a man that will be fine with staying back at the kingdom and a man who will allow her to remain your personal maid

Dineo: huh?

Kgosi: mmh

Dineo: my what?

Kgosi: shhh go back to sleep....Gauta needs to rest

Dineo: but....

Kgosi: Dineo!!!

Dineo: mxm

Kgosi: askies?

He said with a serious tone.

Dineo: ummm.....something is stuck between my teeth...i was mxm mxming it out

Kgosi laughed and Dineo elbowed him gently.

AT THE PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITAL.....

Marang was sleeping but her mind was wide awake thinking about the following day her doctor told her during her

session that she's now permitted to make one phone call per day from tomorrow and she slept excited to speak to Dineo....she has missed her so much and she couldn't wait to hear her voice.....She heard the door open then she turned cause night duty nurses have already passed and she has even drank her medication.....who she saw made her freeze on the spot.

Cole: don't scream Ntokazi....please im not here to hurt you She looked at him with her eyes popped out....she sat up quickly and moved to up the bed looking scared.

Cole: I love you so much Marang....i love you so much it hurts....you mean the world to me Ntokazi

Marang looked at the cctv inside her room hoping the security are watching this and Cole saw her.

Cole: I paid them to take a break and it's switched off She swallowed hard.

Cole: you're getting out of here in three days' time to a retreat in Cape Town for a month...i want you to use that time to find yourself again and to.....heal Ntokazi

She swallowed hard.

Cole: I know i....i know I hurt you and im sorry Ntokazi....im sorry i.... I killed our baby

Tears ran down her cheeks as his did too.

Cole: I know evil forces are what forced me to do what I did but I don't care....i did that...my hands are the ones that hit you and I killed...

Marang: stop...

She said with her eyes closed and Cole wiped his tears off.

Cole: but there's one think you should know.....im never giving up on you.....im not losing you.....i'll fix us Ntokazi or I'll die trying

He moved towards the bed and she curled into a ball hugging her legs as she looked at him scared she was scared of him and that broke his heart..... he just kissed her forehead putting a phone next to her and he whispered to her.

Cole: call Dee she needs to hear your voice

She quickly raised her face with a frown on her face.

Cole: she was almost kidnapped today but she's ok

Her eyes popped out.

Cole: she's ok but a little shaken and make sure you make that call tomorrow cause she's resting now and make it in the bathroom because of...

He pointed to the cctv with his head.

Cole: hide it and make sure they don't find it

He then perked her lips then he quickly stepped back with his hands raised up in surrender.

Cole: I love you and I'll see you after a month

Then he walked out..... she quickly turned giving her back to where the cctv camera was wiping her tears off then she received a message on the phone and the number was saved as hubby....she opened it and it read " or not....i love you Ntokazi kaQophelo" She closed the message quickly and she sighed....her heart was still beating fast and she still felt scared.